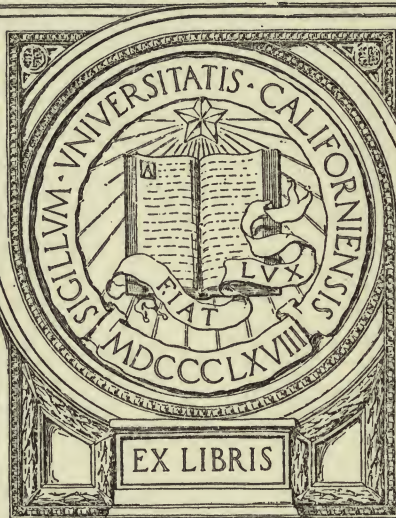


GIFT OF

Publishers



EX LIBRIS

Edw. Dept.

760
P 361
1915



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2008 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation

Morris and Morgan's Latin Series

EDITED FOR USE IN SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES

UNDER THE SUPERVISION OF

EDWARD P. MORRIS, L.H.D.,

PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN YALE UNIVERSITY

AND

MORRIS H. MORGAN, PH.D.,

PROFESSOR OF CLASSICAL PHILOLOGY IN HARVARD UNIVERSITY

VOLUMES OF THE SERIES

Essentials of Latin for Beginners. Henry C. Pearson, Teachers College, New York.

A School Latin Grammar. Morris H. Morgan, Harvard University.

A First Latin Writer. M. A. Abbott, Groton School.

Connected Passages for Latin Prose Writing. Maurice W. Mather, formerly of Harvard University, and Arthur L. Wheeler, Bryn Mawr College.

Caesar. Episodes from the Gallic and Civil Wars. Maurice W. Mather, formerly of Harvard University.

Cicero. Ten Orations and Selected Letters. J. Remsen Bishop, Eastern High School, Detroit, Frederick A. King, Hughes High School, Cincinnati, and Wilbur Helm, Evanston Academy of Northwestern University.

Six Orations.

Selections from Latin Prose Authors for Sight Reading. Susan Braley Franklin and Ella Catherine Greene, Miss Baldwin's School, Bryn

Cicero. Cato Maior. Frank G. Moore, Columbia University.

Cicero. Laelius de Amicitia. Clifton Price, University of California.

Selections from Livy. Harry E. Burton, Dartmouth College.

Horace. Odes and Epodes. Clifford H. Moore, Harvard University.

Horace. Satires. Edward P. Morris, Yale University.

Horace. Satires and Epistles. Edward P. Morris, Yale University.

Horace. Odes, Epodes, and Carmen Saeculare, Moore. Satires and Epistles, Morris. In one volume.

Tibullus. Kirby F. Smith, Johns Hopkins University.

Lucretius. William A. Merrill, University of California.

Latin Literature of the Empire. Alfred Gudeman, formerly of the University of Pennsylvania.

Vol. I. Prose: Velleius to Boethius

Vol. II. Poetry: Pseudo-Vergiliana to Claudianus.

Selections from the Public and Private Law of the Romans. James J. Robinson, Hotchkiss School.

Others to be announced later.



VIEW OF THE COLISEUM, AS ONE LOOKS FROM THE FORUM NORTHEAST-
WARD THROUGH THE ARCH OF TITUS

(From a water-color drawing made in Rome)

ESSENTIALS OF LATIN

FOR BEGINNERS

BY

HENRY CARR PEARSON

PRINCIPAL OF THE HORACE MANN SCHOOL, TEACHERS COLLEGE,
COLUMBIA UNIVERSITY

REVISED



AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

NEW YORK

CINCINNATI

CHICAGO

COPYRIGHT, 1905, BY
EDWARD P. MORRIS AND MORRIS H. MORGAN.

ENTERED AT STATIONERS' HALL, LONDON.

COPYRIGHT, 1911, 1912, 1915, BY

HENRY CARR PEARSON.

PEARSON. ESSENTIALS OF LATIN.

W. P. 32

PREFACE

THIS book is designed primarily to prepare pupils in a thorough fashion to read Caesar's *Gallic War*. It contains seventy lessons, including ten that are devoted exclusively to reading, and six supplementary lessons. The first seventy lessons contain the minimum of what a pupil should know before he is ready to read Latin with any degree of intelligence and satisfaction. The supplementary lessons deal largely with certain principles of syntax that some teachers may not wish to present to their pupils during the first year's work. They are independent of one another and of the rest of the book, and may, therefore, be taken up in any order that the teacher wishes, or any number of them may be omitted.

It is hoped that the following features will commend themselves to teachers of first year Latin :

1. Carefully selected vocabularies, containing with a very few exceptions only those words that occur with the greatest frequency in Caesar's *Gallic War*. About five hundred words are presented in the first seventy lessons.

2. The constant comparison of English and Latin usage. Not much knowledge of English grammar on the part of the pupil is taken for granted. The more difficult constructions are first considered from the English point of view.

3. A more logical and consecutive treatment of topics. Nouns, adjectives, pronouns, and verbs are not treated in a piecemeal fashion, but four or five consecutive lessons are devoted to a topic before passing on to another. Sufficient change, however, is introduced to avoid monotony.

4. A brief preparatory course. Allowing ample time for reviews, the first seventy lessons should be thoroughly mastered in about twenty-five weeks.

5. The Review Exercises under each lesson. These employ the vocabulary and constructions of the preceding lessons, and afford additional practice for those who wish it. They may be omitted, however, if desired, as the regular Exercises also review preceding constructions.

6. Carefully graded material for reading. There are stories for rapid reading, based on the vocabulary and constructions already studied, and selections from *Viri Romae* and the first twenty chapters of Caesar's *Gallic War*, Book II, in simplified form. This material should prepare a pupil to begin to read the regular text of Caesar at the beginning of the second year.

I wish to express my grateful acknowledgments to the following well-known teachers of Latin who have read the manuscript of this book, and have rendered valuable assistance by their suggestions and criticisms: Mr. H. F. Towle, Curtis High School, New York City; Mr. A. L. Hodges, Wadleigh High School, New York City; Mr. A. J. Inglis, Horace Mann High School, New York City; Mr. Herbert T. Rich, Boston Latin School. This book has had the benefit of the criticism of Professor M. H. Morgan of Harvard University, one of the editors of the series, who has carefully read both the manuscript and the proof.

HENRY CARR PEARSON.

NEW YORK CITY, January, 1905.

PREFACE TO THE REVISED EDITION

THE present revision embodies some of the suggestions received from time to time from teachers who have used the Essentials. It has been undertaken, not to change the character or plan of the work, but solely to introduce such simplifications and amplifications as will make it still more helpful to the beginner. The statement of rules has in a number of instances been modified; a different

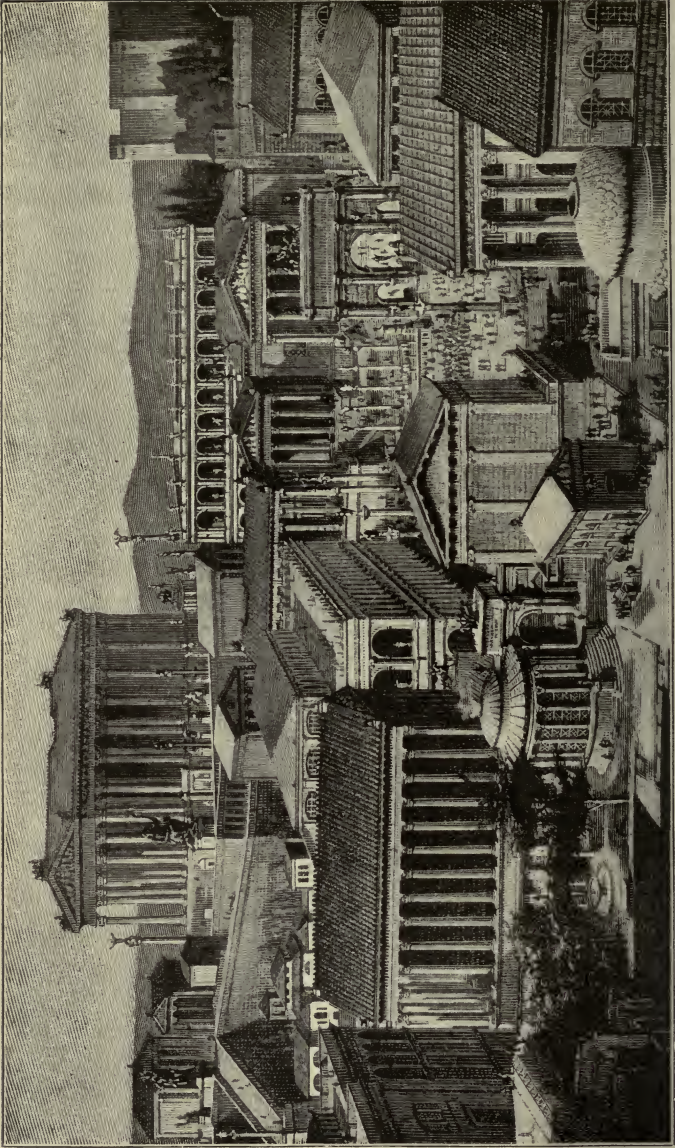
arrangement has been given to the conjugations in the appendix ; the introduction has been made somewhat fuller ; and the order of Lessons 38 and 39 has been changed. In other respects the changes are internal and do not affect the method or scope of the work.

Many full-page illustrations have been added, together with several new cuts of smaller size and a double-page map of the western portion of the Roman empire at the time of Caesar.

All the changes made in this edition have been scrutinized and approved by Professor Charles Knapp of Columbia University, to whose keen scholarship and valuable aid the author is deeply indebted.

March, 1915.

H. C. P.



The Roman Forum and its Surroundings (300 A.D.) (Restoration)

CONTENTS

LESSON	PAGE
INTRODUCTION	11
1. First Declension or Stems in <i>-ā-</i> . Feminine Nouns	16
2. First Declension or Stems in <i>-ā-</i> (continued). Feminine Adjectives	18
3. First Declension or Stems in <i>-ā-</i> (continued). Limiting Genitive. Present Indicative of <i>Sum</i>	20
4. First Conjugation. Present Indicative. Direct Object	22
5. Second Declension or Stems in <i>-o</i> . Masculine Nouns in <i>-us</i> . Mas- culine of Adjectives	25
6. Second Declension (continued). Neuters in <i>-um</i> . Appositive. In- direct Object	28
7. Declension of Adjectives in <i>-us, -a, -um</i> . Agreement	30
8. Second Declension (continued). Masculines in <i>-er</i> and <i>-ir</i>	33
9. Second Declension (continued). Nouns in <i>-ius</i> and <i>-ium</i> . Ad- jectives in <i>-er, -(e)ra, -(e)rum</i>	36
10. Imperfect and Future Indicative of <i>Sum</i> . Order of Words. Review	40
11. First Conjugation. Principal Parts. Formation and Conjugation of the Imperfect and Future Indicative Active	42
12. First Conjugation (continued). Perfect Indicative Active. Ablative of Means	45
13. First Conjugation (continued). Pluperfect and Future Perfect Indicative Active. Review	48
14. Second Conjugation. Characteristics. Formation and Conjugation of the Indicative Active	51
15. Third Declension. Consonant Stems	54
16. Third Declension (continued). Consonant Stems. Ablative of Cause	57
17. Third Declension (continued). Stems in <i>-i-</i>	60
18. Review of Third Declension. Rules of Gender. Ablative of Time When	63
19. Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter I, Book I, Gallic War. Hints for Translation	65
20. Present Indicative Passive of the First and Second Conjugations. Ablative of Agent	68

LESSON	PAGE
21. Imperfect and Future Passive of the First and Second Conjugations. Ablative of Manner	72
22. Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Passive of the First and Second Conjugations	75
23. Adjectives of the Third Declension. Three Terminations. Ablative of Specification	78
24. Adjectives of the Third Declension (continued). Two and One Terminations. Dative with Adjectives	81
25. Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter II	84
26. Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect of <i>Sum</i> . Review of the First and Second Conjugations	85
27. Third Conjugation. Present, Imperfect, and Future, Active and Passive	87
28. Third Conjugation (completed). Verbs in <i>iō</i>	89
29. Present Infinitive, Active and Passive. The Infinitive used as in English	92
30. Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter III	94
31. <i>Is, Idem</i>	95
32. The Relative Pronoun	98
33. <i>Hic and Ille</i> . Adjectives used as Substantives	101
34. <i>Ipse, Iste</i> . Irregular Adjectives. Ablative of Separation	104
35. Fourth Conjugation. The Interrogative <i>Quis</i>	107
36. Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter IV	110
37. Fourth Declension	111
38. Review of the Four Conjugations. Dative of Possession	114
39. Irregular Verb <i>Ēō</i> . Place Where, Whence, Whither	116
40. Numerals. Accusative of Extent of Time and Space	120
41. Fifth Declension. Partitive Genitive	122
42. Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter V	125
43. Comparison of Adjectives. Ablative of Comparison	125
44. Comparison of Adjectives (continued). Ablative of the Measure of Difference	128
45. Irregular Comparison of Adjectives. <i>Possum</i>	131
46. Review of Comparison of Adjectives. Formation and Comparison of Adverbs	134
47. Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter VI	137
48. Personal and Reflexive Pronouns	137
49. Possessive Adjectives. Dative of Service	141
50. Indefinite Pronouns. Descriptive Ablative and Genitive	144
51. Participles. Forms, Declension, and Meanings	147
52. Participles (continued). Ablative Absolute	151

LESSON	PAGE
53. Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter VII	154
54. Infinitives. Formation and Meanings	155
55. Indirect Discourse. Simple Statements	157
56. Deponent Verbs. Ablative with <i>Ūtor, Iruor</i> , etc.	161
57. <i>Ferō</i> and <i>Piō</i> . Dative with Intransitives	163
58. Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter VIII	165
59. The Subjunctive Mood. Present Tense. Clauses of Purpose	166
60. The Subjunctive (continued). Imperfect Tense. Result Clauses	169
61. <i>Volō, Nōlō, Mālō</i> . Relative Clause of Purpose	172
62. Indirect Questions. Sequence of Tenses	174
63. Substantive Clauses	179
64. Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter IX	181
65. Object Clauses with Verbs of Fearing. <i>Cum</i> Temporal, Causal, and Concessive	182
66. Compounds of <i>Sum</i> . Dative with Compound Verbs	185
67. The Imperative. Commands and Exhortations	187
68. Gerund and Gerundive	190
69. Complete Review of Verb Forms	193
70. Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter X	194

SUPPLEMENTARY LESSONS

71. Conditional Sentences. Present and Past Time	196
72. Conditional Sentences (continued). Future Time	198
73. Wishes	200
74. Indirect Discourse. Complex Sentences	202
75. Impersonal Use of Verbs. Supine. Different Ways of expressing Purpose	204
76. Periphrastic Conjugations	206
SELECTIONS FOR RAPID READING	209
SELECTIONS FOR READING :	
Selections from Roman History	227
Caesar. Gallic War, Book II, Chapters 1-20	236
APPENDIX. Tables of Declension, Conjugation, etc., Summary of Rules of Syntax	248
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY	289
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY	321
INDEX	337

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

	PAGE
View of the Coliseum, as one looks from the Forum northeastward through the Arch of Titus. From a water-color drawing made in Rome <i>Frontispiece</i>	
The Roman Forum and its Surroundings (300 A.D.) (Restoration)	6
Map of Italy, Gaul, and Other Parts of the Roman Empire at the Time of Caesar (double page)	22-23
<i>Hortus</i>	27
Roman Soldiers in Camp. Roman Soldiers on the March <i>facing</i>	31
A Roman School	35
Roman Books	38
English Guardsmen as Roman Soldiers in 'tortoise'-formation. English Guardsmen as Roman Soldiers discharging the Catapult <i>facing</i>	46
<i>Pilum</i>	47
<i>Gladius</i>	53
<i>Equites Rōmānī</i>	56
Coin of Caesar, struck by M. Mettius	59
Julius Caesar. From the marble bust in the British Museum <i>facing</i>	65
Silver Coins of Caesar, showing Gallic Trophies	66
Recent Views in the Roman Forum <i>facing</i>	74
<i>Civēs Rōmānī</i>	77
Sarcophagus of one of the Scipios	80
Graffito, or Drawing, from the Palatine Walls, Rome	91
<i>Rōmānī cum Germānīs pugnāt</i> <i>facing</i>	97
Interior of a Roman House (Restoration). Plan of the House of Pansa at Pompeii <i>facing</i>	111
Roman Theater (Restoration)	112
Streets of Pompeii <i>facing</i>	123
Gallic Swords, Signal Horn, and Shields	136
Ruined Arches of the Claudian Aqueduct, near Rome. Roman Baths at Bath, England <i>facing</i>	143
A Siege	150
Porta Maggiore, Rome: Gate, and Part of Frieze on Bread Contractor's Tomb <i>facing</i>	164
<i>Pontem in flūmine faciunt</i>	178
Arch of Constantine, Rome. The Forum at Pompeii <i>facing</i>	183
The Romans attacked by the Gauls at the Siege of Alesia "	192
Roman Harbor and Ships (Restoration)	195
<i>Mūcius Scaevola dextram manum in ignī pōnit</i> <i>facing</i>	223
<i>Rōmānī in Britanniam ēgrediuntur</i> "	224
A Roman Camp "	240

INTRODUCTION

1. These introductory sections should be read by the pupils and used for reference. Pupils learn pronunciation quickly by imitation. It is suggested that the teacher pronounce slowly the words in sections 9 and 21, and that the pupils repeat them after the teacher. Reference may be made to the rules as mistakes are made.

ALPHABET

2. The Latin alphabet is the same as the English, except that it has no *j* or *w*. *I* is used both as a vowel and as a consonant. It is a consonant when it stands before a vowel in the same syllable, as in *iūnior*.

3. The vowels are **a, e, i, o, u**. The other letters are consonants.

4. Diphthongs are combinations of two vowels that are pronounced as one syllable. They are

ae oe au eu ui

PRONUNCIATION

5. The long vowels are pronounced as follows :

ā like <i>a</i> in <i>father</i> .	ī like <i>i</i> in <i>machine</i> .
ē like <i>e</i> in <i>prey</i> .	ō like <i>o</i> in <i>note</i> .
ū like <i>oo</i> in <i>root</i> .	

6. The short vowels are pronounced as follows :

a like the first <i>a</i> in <i>ahá</i> .	i like <i>i</i> in <i>pit</i> .
e like <i>e</i> in <i>step</i> .	o like <i>o</i> in <i>or</i> .
u like <i>u</i> in <i>pull</i> .	

7. Most of the consonants are pronounced as in English. But note the following points:

c and g are always hard, as in <i>come</i> and <i>go</i> .	s is a hissing sound, as in <i>sin</i> ; never like <i>z</i> as in <i>ease</i> .
i consonant is like <i>y</i> in <i>yes</i> .	ch is like <i>ch</i> in <i>chorus</i> .
t is always hard, as in <i>tin</i> .	ph is like <i>ph</i> in <i>alphabet</i> .
v is like <i>w</i> in <i>wine</i> .	qu is almost like <i>kw</i> .

8. The diphthongs are pronounced as follows:

ae like <i>ai</i> in <i>aisle</i> .	au like <i>ou</i> in <i>house</i> .
oe like <i>oi</i> in <i>toil</i> .	eu (rare) like <i>éh-oo</i> .
ui is almost like <i>we</i> .	ei (rare) like <i>ei</i> in <i>eight</i> .

9. Pronounce carefully the following words:

hī	iam	tot	mē	genus	-que	cui
ad	vis	sic	quia	coepit	vir	aeger
ita	quis	haec	causa	rēgnō	mēnsae	

SYLLABLES

10. A syllable consists of a vowel or diphthong alone or with one or more consonants, preceding or following. Therefore a word has as many syllables as it has separate vowels or diphthongs: **ae-dí-fi-cō**, *I build*.

11. Except in compound words (see 13), a single consonant between vowels or diphthongs should be joined with the second vowel: **a-mí-cus**, *friend*, **dí-xit**, *he said*.

12. If two or more consonants occur between vowels or diphthongs, the division is before the last consonant, except that **l** or **r** with the consonant immediately preceding is joined to the second vowel: **hós-pes**, *guest*, **díc-tus**, *said*, **sānc-tus**, *holy*, **cás-tra**, *camp*, **dē-móns-trō**, *I point out*, **cōg-nōs-cō**, *I recognize*, **pú-bli-cus**, *public*.

13. Compound words are divided into their component parts: **ád-est** (*ad, near; est, he is*), *he is present*.

14. Doubled consonants are separated: **pu-él-la**, *girl*.

15. The last syllable of a word is called the *ultima*; the next to the last, the *penult*; the one before the penult, the *antepenult*.

QUANTITY

16. Vowels are long (-) or short (˘). The long vowels are marked in this book; unmarked vowels must be considered short. Diphthongs are long.

17. The following are a few general rules for determining the quantity of vowels:

1. A vowel is short before another vowel or **h**: **có-pi-a**, *abundance*.
2. Vowels resulting from contraction are long: **có-gō** (**cōāgō**), *I collect*.
3. Vowels are long before **nf**, **ns**, **nct**, **ncs**: **īnferō**, *I bring in*; **īnsānus**, *mad*.
4. Diphthongs are long: **cāusa**, *cause*.

18. A syllable containing a long vowel or a diphthong is long by nature: **lē-gēs**, *laws*; **ae-dēs**, *temple*.

19. A syllable containing a short vowel followed by two or more consonants, or by **x** or **z**, is long by position. The short vowel, however, is still pronounced short: **vocant**, *they call*; **dux**, *leader*.

ACCENT

20. The following principles determine what syllable of a word receives the stress of the voice (accent):

1. The *ultima*, or last syllable, is never accented.
2. Words of two syllables accent the first, or penult: **téplum**, *temple*.

3. Words of more than two syllables accent the penult when it is long, by nature or position, otherwise the antepenult: *amāre*, to love; *mittere*, to send.
4. Certain words like *-ne*, the sign of a question, and *-que*, *and*, called enclitics, are so closely joined to the preceding word that they are pronounced with it; the last syllable of the first word has an accent: *amātne*, does he love? *hóminésque*, and the men.

EXERCISE

21. Divide into syllables, accent, and pronounce the following words:

inīquus	vincam	aedificium	gladiō
grātiaē	filius	coepērunt	cuius
huic	īdem	filiusque	quae
monēre	vērō	mēnsārum	faciēbam
facere	aegritūdō	pugnābō	laudābimus

INFLECTION

22. **Parts of Speech.**—These are the same in Latin as in English, except that there is no article in Latin: namely, noun, adjective, pronoun, verb, adverb, and the particles.

23. **Inflection.**—This is the change that words undergo to show their grammatical relations to the rest of the sentence. The inflection of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns is called *declension*; that of verbs, *conjugation*.

24. **Declension.**—Nouns, pronouns, and adjectives have the following cases, which are shown by means of case endings:

1. *Nominative*, which is the case of the subject.
2. *Genitive*. It may generally be rendered by the English possessive, or by the objective with *of*.

3. *Dative*. This corresponds sometimes to the English objective with the prepositions *to* or *for*.
4. *Accusative*, the case of the direct object.
5. *Vocative*, the case of direct address.¹
6. *Ablative*. This expresses various adverbial relations corresponding to the English objective with the prepositions *from*, *with*, *in*, *by*, *at*, and *on*.

Nouns in Latin are divided into five declensions, or classes, which are best distinguished from one another by the ending of the genitive singular.

25. Stem and Base. — The stem is the form which gives in a general way the meaning of the word. The final letter of the stem, called the stem characteristic, often disappears or is changed before case endings. It is always found in the genitive plural, except that *o* of *-o*-stems is lengthened. The base (that part of the noun which remains unchanged in inflection, and to which the case endings are added directly) is formed by dropping the stem characteristic or by omitting the ending of the genitive singular.

26. Conjugation. — Verbs in Latin have

1. Three finite moods, Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative; also Infinitives, Participles, Supines, Gerunds, and Gerundives.
2. Six tenses, Present, Imperfect, Future, Perfect, Pluperfect, Future Perfect.
3. Two voices, as in English, Active and Passive.
4. Three persons, as in English, First, Second, Third.
5. Two numbers, as in English, Singular and Plural.

¹ Except in the singular of nouns in *-us* of the second declension, the vocative case is like the nominative. It is therefore not given in the paradigms except in the second declension.

GENDER

27. There are three genders, Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter.

In names of persons only, the gender is based, as in English, on sex (Natural Gender). In all other classes of words the gender is determined by the signification of the noun or by the ending of the nominative (Grammatical Gender).

28. General Rules of Gender.

1. Nouns denoting males, and names of rivers, winds, and months are masculine: *nauta, sailor*; *Tiberis, the Tiber*; *Caesar, Caesar*; *aquilō, north wind*; *Iānuārius, January*.
2. Nouns denoting females, and names of countries, towns, and trees are feminine: *filia, daughter*; *Ītalia, Italy*; *Athēnae, Athens*; *pirus, pear tree*.
3. Indeclinable nouns are neuter: *nihil, nothing*.

LESSON I

FIRST DECLENSION OR STEMS IN -ā-

FEMININE AND MASCULINE NOUNS

29. Nouns of the First Declension are *feminine*, unless they denote males, and are declined like the following example:

Stem¹ *stellā*. Base¹ *stell-*.

	SINGULAR	CASE ENDINGS
NOM.	<i>stella, a star (as subject)</i> ²	-a
GEN.	<i>stellae, of a star, or star's</i>	-ae
DAT.	<i>stellae, to or for a star</i>	-ae
ACC.	<i>stellam, star, or a star (as object)</i>	-am
ABL.	<i>stellā, from, with, by a star</i>	-ā

¹ See 25. ² There is no article in Latin. Consequently *stella* may mean *star, the star, or a star*.

	PLURAL	CASE ENDINGS
NOM.	stellae, <i>stars</i> (as subject)	-ae
GEN.	stellārum, <i>of stars, or stars'</i>	-ārum
DAT.	stellīs, <i>to or for stars</i>	-īs
ACC.	stellās, <i>stars</i> (as object)	-ās
ABL.	stellīs, <i>from, with, by stars</i>	-īs

Note carefully

1. That the genitive and dative singular and nominative plural are alike.
2. That the dative and ablative plural are alike.
3. That the **-a** of the ablative singular is long.

VOCABULARY

30. Learn thoroughly the meanings of the following words, and decline each noun like **stella** :

NOUNS

puella, ae, f., <i>girl.</i>	rosa, ae, f., <i>rose.</i>
rēgina, ae, f., <i>queen.</i>	via, ae, f., <i>road, way, street.</i>
stella, ae, f., <i>star.</i>	silva, ae, f., <i>forest.</i>
porta, ae, f., <i>gate.</i>	lūna, ae, f., <i>moon.</i>

31.

EXERCISES

(Pronounce, give case and number, and translate)

I. 1. Puellārum. 2. Portīs. 3. Viā. 4. Rosīs.
 5. Silvam. 6. Stellīs. 7. Rēginae. 8. Viīs. 9. Portae.
 10. Stellās. 11. Viārum. 12. Rosa rēginae. 13. Viās
 silvārum.

II. 1. To the queen. 2. By a rose. 3. The forests.
 4. The rose of the queen. 5. By the streets. 6. Of
 the stars. 7. For the girls. 8. By the gates. 9. Of the
 girls.

LESSON 2

FIRST DECLENSION OR STEMS IN -ā- (CONTINUED)

FEMININE ADJECTIVES

32. Feminine adjectives of the First Declension are declined like the nouns.

rosa pulchra, *pretty rose*

Stem rosā- pulchrā-

Base ros- pulchr-

SINGULAR

NOM.	rosa pulchra, <i>a pretty rose</i>
GEN.	rosae pulchrae, <i>of a pretty rose</i>
DAT.	rosae pulchrae, <i>to or for a pretty rose</i>
ACC.	rosam pulchram, <i>a pretty rose</i>
ABL.	rosā pulchrā, <i>from, with, by a pretty rose</i>

PLURAL

NOM.	rosae pulchrae, <i>pretty roses</i>
GEN.	rosārum pulchrārum, <i>of pretty roses</i>
DAT.	rosīs pulchrīs, <i>to or for pretty roses</i>
ACC.	rosās pulchrās, <i>pretty roses</i>
ABL.	rosīs pulchrīs, <i>from, with, by pretty roses</i>

Observe that the adjective and the noun are in the same case. Notice the position of the Latin adjective with reference to its noun. It does not always precede the noun, as in English. See the remarks on the order of words (82).

Decline together : *via lāta, the wide road ; puella parva, the little girl.*

33. Examine the following :

1. *Rosa pulchra est, the rose is pretty.*
2. *Rosae pulchrae sunt, the roses are pretty.*

Note in these sentences

- a. That the subjects (*rosa, rosae*) are in the nominative case.
- b. That the verb is singular, when the subject is singular, and plural, when the subject is plural.
- c. That the predicate adjectives *pulchra* and *pulchrae* agree with the subject in number, gender, and case.

34. RULES OF SYNTAX.

1. **Subject.** — *The subject of a finite verb is always in the nominative case.*

2. **Predicate Agreement.** — *A predicate adjective agrees in number, gender, and case with the word to which it refers. — A predicate noun agrees in case (only) with the word to which it refers.*

35.

VOCABULARY

NOUNS

- fābula, ae, f., story.*
 ✓ *sagitta, ae, f., arrow.*
īnsula, ae, f., island.
terra, ae, f., land, country.

VERBS

- est, (he, she, it) is, there is.*
sunt, (they) are, there are.

ADJECTIVES

- bona, good.*
 ✓ *lāta, broad, wide.*
longa, long.
magna, large, great.
pulchra, beautiful, pretty.

ADVERBS

- ubi, where, when.*
nōn, not.

CONJUNCTION

- et, and.*

36.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Fābulae longae sunt. 2. Terra est lāta et pulchra.
 3. Ubi est pulchra īnsula? 4. Lūna est pulchra. 5. Bonae sagittae sunt longae. 6. Nōn est pulchra. 7. Magnae sunt īnsulae. 8. Lātis terrīs. 9. Lūna et stellae sunt pulchrae. 10. Via est lāta. 11. Ubi sunt īnsulae magnae? 12. Sagittārum longārum.

II. 1. The good queen is beautiful. 2. It¹ is a large island. 3. Where are the long arrows? 4. They are beautiful girls. 5. The land is not wide. 6. It is a good story.

LESSON 3

FIRST DECLENSION OR STEMS IN -ā- (CONTINUED). GENITIVE CASE. PRESENT INDICATIVE OF **sum**

37. Examine the following :

1. Rosa puellae alba est, *the rose of the girl is white, or the girl's rose is white.*
2. Rosae puellārum albae sunt, *the roses of the girls are white, or the girls' roses are white.*

Observe that **puellae** limits **rosa** : not every rose is white, but only the girl's rose is white. In the same way **puellārum** limits **rosae**, because it defines whose roses are meant.

38. RULE. — **The Genitive.** — *The genitive is used to limit or define the meaning of a noun.*

39. PRESENT TENSE, INDICATIVE MOOD, OF THE VERB **sum**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1ST PER.	sum , <i>I am</i>	sumus , <i>we are</i>
2D PER.	es , <i>you are (thou art)</i>	estis , <i>you are</i>
3D PER.	est , <i>(he, she, it) is, there is</i>	sunt , <i>they are, there are</i>

¹ It is, est.

40. Examine the following :

STATEMENT

Fēmina est pulchra, *the woman is beautiful.*

QUESTIONS

1. Estne fēmina pulchra? *is the woman beautiful?* (Answer expected, Yes or No.)
2. Nōnne fēmina pulchra est? *is not the woman beautiful?* (Answer expected, Yes.)
3. Ubi est fēmina? *where is the woman?*

Observe

1. That in simple questions that may be answered by either yes or no, the enclitic *-ne* is added to the emphatic word, which usually stands first.
2. That questions expecting the answer yes, are introduced by *nōnne*.
3. That *-ne* is not used if the question is introduced by an interrogative pronoun or adverb (*quī, who, ubi, where, cūr, why, etc.*).

41.

VOCABULARY

NOUNS

pecūnia, ae, f., *money.*
 vīta, ae, f., *life.*
 cōpia, ae, f., *abundance* (pl., *troops, forces*).
 fēmina, ae, f., *woman.*
 patria, ae, f., *native land, country.*
 Graecia, ae, f., *Greece.*
 Eurōpa, ae, f., *Europe.*
 Gallia, ae, f., *Gaul.*
 filia, ae, f., *daughter.*

ADJECTIVES

nova, *new.*
 parva, *small.*
 mea, *my, mine.*
 tua, *your, yours* (referring to one person only).

ADVERB

semper, *always, ever.*

—
-ne, enclitic, sign of a question, but not separately translated.

42.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Gallia est terra Eurōpae. 2. Estne Gallia tua patria? 3. Nōne sunt parvae filiae? 4. Estne cōpia pecūniae? 5. Nōn longa est vīta fēminae. 6. Est pulchra. 7. Cōpiae rēgīnae nōn sunt magnae. 8. Suntne parvae puellae? 9. Rēgīna tuae patriae pulchra est. 10. Cōpiae patriae meae nōn semper sunt parvae. 11. Rēgīnārum rosae sunt pulchrae. 12. Semperne novae lūnae pulchrae sunt? 13. Ubi sunt rēgīnārum cōpiae? 14. Fēminae Graeciae sunt pulchrae.

II. 1. We are; you (sing.) are; you (plur.) are. 2. Where are we? 3. Of the beautiful women. 4. My country's forces are small. 5. There is not always an abundance of money. 6. Are queens' daughters always beautiful? 7. Is it not a pretty country?

(READING SELECTION 441)

LESSON 4

FIRST CONJUGATION, PRESENT INDICATIVE, DIRECT OBJECT

43. PRESENT INDICATIVE OF THE VERB *amō*

	SINGULAR	PERSONAL ENDINGS ¹
1ST PER.	<i>amō, I love, am loving, do love</i>	<i>-ō (or -m), I</i>
2D PER.	<i>amās, you love, are loving, do love</i>	<i>-s, you (or thou)</i>
3D PER.	<i>amat, he loves, is loving, does love</i>	<i>-t, he, she, it</i>

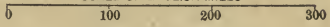
	PLURAL	PERSONAL ENDINGS
1ST PER.	<i>amāmus, we love, are loving, do love</i>	<i>-mus, we</i>
2D PER.	<i>amātis, you love, are loving, do love</i>	<i>-tis, you</i>
3D PER.	<i>amant, they love, are loving, do love</i>	<i>-nt, they</i>

¹ These are the personal endings of all tenses, except the perfect indicative.

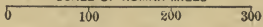


ITALY, GAUL AND OTHER PARTS OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE AT THE TIME OF CAESAR

SCALE OF ENGLISH MILES



SCALE OF ROMAN MILES



1875
1876
1877
1878
1879
1880
1881
1882
1883
1884
1885
1886
1887
1888
1889
1890
1891
1892
1893
1894
1895
1896
1897
1898
1899
1900

Observe

1. That the personal endings are added to the stem **amā-**, the final vowel of which is lost before **-ō** in the first person singular, and is shortened before **-t, -nt**.
2. That the person and number of a Latin verb are indicated clearly by the *ending*, without the use of a pronoun.

44. Like **amō**, conjugate the present indicative of

pugnō, *I fight*

culpō, *I blame*

vocō, *I call*

laudō, *I praise*

45. Carefully examine the following:

1. **Rēgīna nautam laudat**, *the queen praises the sailor.*
2. **Rēgīnae nautam laudant**, *the queens praise the sailor.*
3. **Nautam laudant**, *they praise the sailor.*
4. **Nautam laudāmus**, *we praise the sailor.*

From these sentences you will see

1. That the direct object of the verb, *i.e.* that which the action of the verb affects, is in the accusative case.
2. That, when a noun is the subject, the verb is third person.
3. That, when a noun is not the subject, the subject need not be expressed by a separate word. In English, however, we must use a pronoun.
4. That the verb is in the same *number* and *person* as the subject.

46. RULES OF SYNTAX.

1. **Agreement of Verb.**—*A verb agrees with its subject in number and person.*

2. **Direct Object.**—*The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative case.*

47.

VOCABULARY

agricola, ae, m., ¹ <i>farmer.</i>	amō, <i>I love, I like.</i>
nauta, ae, m., ¹ <i>sailor.</i>	pugnō, <i>I fight.</i>
Ītalia, ae, f., <i>Italy.</i>	vocō, <i>I call.</i>
Rōma, ae, f., <i>Rome.</i>	culpō, <i>I blame.</i>
√inopia, ae, f., <i>lack, want.</i>	laudō, <i>I praise.</i>
√fīda, <i>faithful.</i>	cūr, adv., <i>why?</i>
superba, <i>proud, haughty.</i>	in, prep. with abl., <i>in, on.</i> ²

48.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Graeciae insulae sunt parvae. 2. Pecūniā meā.
3. Suntne³ cōpiae patriae tuae magnae? 4. Fēminae filiae
nōn semper bonae sunt. 5. Est cōpia pecūniae. 6. Pul-
chrae sunt Eurōpae viae. 7. Estne fābula nova?

II. 1. Where are you (plur.)? 2. Are the queen's
daughters beautiful? 3. She is small. 4. (O) queen,
where is your daughter? 5. We are; you are (sing.).

49.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Pugnātis; pugnat; pugnāmus. 2. Vocās; vo-
cantne? vocātisne? 3. Cūr agricolās culpāmus? 4. In
Ītaliā inopia est pecūniae. 5. Laudantne nautās?
6. Superbās fēminās nōn amāmus. 7. Rēginae nautās
nōn laudāmus. 8. Superbae in Galliā sunt puellae.
9. Ubi sunt agricolārum filiae? 10. Cūr nautam cul-
pat? 11. Rosae magnae et pulchrae sunt in meā patriā.
12. Agricolae inopiam pecūniae nōn amant.

¹ A masculine noun of the first declension. Why? See 28, 1.

² In is used with the ablative only when the verb expresses no idea of motion toward a place. **Sunt in Eurōpā, they are in Europe. Pugnāt in silvīs, they are fighting in the forest.**

³ In Latin sentences the verb normally comes last. In questions, however, the verb often comes first.

II. 1. We blame; she praises; you (plur.) are calling.
 2. They are fighting; you (sing.) call; we fight. 3. There¹
 are pretty roses in Italy. 4. Why do you blame the sailor?
 5. The woman is calling the sailor's daughters. 6. Italy is
 a country of Europe.

LESSON 5

SECOND DECLENSION OR STEMS IN -o-. MASCULINE
 NOUNS IN -us. MASCULINE ADJECTIVES

50. dominus, m., *master, lord*

Stem *domino*-²

Base *domin*-

	SINGULAR	CASE ENDINGS
NOM.	<i>dominus, master</i>	-us
GEN.	<i>dominī, of the master</i>	-ī
DAT.	<i>dominō, to or for the master</i>	-ō
ACC.	<i>dominum, master</i>	-um
VOC. ³	<i>domine, (O) master</i>	-e
ABL.	<i>dominō, from, with, by the master</i>	-ō
	PLURAL	
NOM.	<i>dominī, masters</i>	-ī
GEN.	<i>dominōrum, of the masters</i>	-ōrum
DAT.	<i>dominīs, to or for the masters</i>	-īs
ACC.	<i>dominōs, masters</i>	-ōs
VOC.	<i>dominī, (O) masters</i>	-ī
ABL.	<i>dominīs, from, with, by the masters</i>	-īs

51. The masculine of adjectives ending in -us is declined like the nouns of this declension ending in -us.

¹ *There are, sunt*; also *it is, est*. There are no special words in Latin for *there* and *it* used in this way.

² See 25.

³ See 24, 5, footnote.

dominus bonus, good master

SINGULAR

NOM. dominus bonus	<i>good master</i>
GEN. dominī bonī	<i>of the good master</i>
DAT. dominō bonō	<i>to or for the good master</i>
ACC. dominum bonum	<i>good master</i>
VOC. domine bone	<i>(O) good master</i>
ABL. dominō bonō	<i>from, with, by the good master</i>

PLURAL

NOM. dominī bonī	<i>good masters</i>
GEN. dominōrum bonōrum	<i>of the good masters</i>
DAT. dominīs bonīs	<i>to or for the good masters</i>
ACC. dominōs bonōs	<i>good masters</i>
VOC. dominī bonī	<i>(O) good masters</i>
ABL. dominīs bonīs	<i>from, with, by the good masters</i>

52. 1. What case endings of this declension are alike? Which are the same as the first declension endings?

2. The base is obtained by dropping the *-ī* of the genitive singular: genitive, *dominī*, base *domin-*.

3. Conjugate the present indicative of the verbs given in the vocabulary below.

53.

VOCABULARY

amicus, <i>ī</i> , m., <i>friend.</i>	bonus, <i>good.</i>
cibus, <i>ī</i> , m., <i>food.</i>	malus, <i>bad, evil.</i>
dominus, <i>ī</i> , m., <i>master, lord.</i>	parvus, <i>small.</i>
equus, <i>ī</i> , m., <i>horse.</i>	superbus, <i>proud, haughty.</i>
✓ hortus, <i>ī</i> , m., <i>garden.</i>	fidus, <i>faithful.</i>
servus, <i>ī</i> , m., <i>slave.</i>	dēlectō, <i>I delight, I please.</i>
sed, conj., <i>but.</i>	servō, <i>I keep, I preserve, I</i>
magnus, <i>great, large.</i>	<i>save.</i>

54.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Rēgīnae nautās laudās. 2. Amātisne Rōmam?
 3. Ubi nautae pugnant? 4. Nautae in viā pugnant.
 5. Filiam rēgīnae nōn amant. 6. Agricolās nōn semper
 laudant.

II. 1. Is there a lack of money in your native country?
 2. The queen's daughter blames the woman. 3. Where is
 the sailor's money?

55.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Dominō; amīcōrum; equī. 2. Amīcīs; dominī
 superbī; equīs magnīs. 3. Servus est amīcus agricolae.
 4. Equī sunt bonī sed nōn magnī. 5. Rēgīna fidum servum
 laudat. 6. Superbum dominum nōn amant. 7. Rēgīnae
 filia malum servum culpat. 8. Cibum dominō servant.
 9. Culpāsne, amīce,¹ dominum servōrum? 10. Agricolae
 parvōs equōs nōn laudant. 11. Cibus est in hortō. 12. Cūr
 fidī equī dominōs dēlectant?

II. 1. To the masters; of the horse; for the slaves.
 2. The food of the slaves is not good. 3. The master is
 in the garden. 4. He blames his² faithful horse. 5. The
 garden is large, but not good. 6. Good food pleases
 the slaves. 7. Slave, where is the sailor's friend?

¹ The vocative in Latin seldom comes first in the sentence.

² Omit. The possessives 'his' and 'her,' and 'their,' referring back to the subject of the clause or sentence, are frequently omitted in Latin if they are not emphatic or are not needed for the sake of clearness.



Hortus

LESSON 6

SECOND DECLENSION (CONTINUED). NEUTERS IN **-um**.
 APPOSITIVE. INDIRECT OBJECT

56. *dōnum, gift**dōnum grātum, acceptable gift*Stem *dōno-*Base *dōn-*Stem *dōno- grāto-*Base *dōn- grāt-*

SINGULAR

NOM. *dōnum, gift*
 GEN. *dōnī, of the gift*
 DAT. *dōnō, to or for the gift*
 ACC. *dōnum, gift* [*gift*]
 ABL. *dōnō, from, with, by the*

SINGULAR

NOM. *dōnum grātum*
 GEN. *dōnī grātī*
 DAT. *dōnō grātō*
 ACC. *dōnum grātum*
 ABL. *dōnō grātō*

PLURAL

NOM. *dōna, gifts*
 GEN. *dōnōrum, of the gifts*
 DAT. *dōnīs, to or for the gifts*
 ACC. *dōna, gifts* [*gifts*]
 ABL. *dōnīs, from, with, by the*

PLURAL

NOM. *dōna grāta*
 GEN. *dōnōrum grātōrum*
 DAT. *dōnīs grātīs*
 ACC. *dōna grāta*
 ABL. *dōnīs grātīs*

Observe that the nominative and accusative of neuter nouns are alike, and that the nominative and accusative plural end in **-a**. This is true of all neuter nouns of all declensions.

57. Examine the following :

1. *Mārcus agricola filiae equum dat, Marcus, the farmer, gives (his) daughter a horse, OR gives a horse to (his) daughter.*
2. *Mārcō amīcō cibum dō, I give Marcus (my) friend food, OR I give food to Marcus, my friend.*

Observe in these sentences

1. That **agricola** denotes the same person as **Mārcus**, and that it tells something about him, and is in the same case. Such a word is called an appositive. **Amicō** has the same relation to **Mārcō**. Compare with 33, *c*, and note the difference.
2. That **equum** and **cibum**, being directly affected by the action of their respective verbs, are in the accusative, but that **filiae** and **Mārcō** are in the dative case, because they are *indirectly* affected by the verb.

58. RULES OF SYNTAX.

1. **Apposition.** — *An appositive agrees in case with the noun which it limits or explains.*
2. **Indirect Object.** — *The indirect object of a verb is in the dative case.*¹

59.

VOCABULARY

bellum, ī, n., <i>war.</i>	Mārcus , ī, m., <i>Marcus.</i>
dōnum, ī, n., <i>gift.</i>	√ incola , ae, m. and f., <i>inhabitant.</i>
oppidum, ī, n., <i>town.</i>	√ Rōmānus , ī, m., <i>Roman.</i>
frūmentum, ī, n., <i>grain.</i>	√ grātus , a, um, <i>acceptable, pleasing</i> (followed by dat.).
vīnum, ī, n., <i>wine.</i>	dō , <i>I give.</i>
in, prep. with acc., ² <i>into, to, against</i> ; with abl., <i>in, on, over.</i>	portō , <i>I carry.</i>

60.

REVIEW EXERCISES

- I. 1. **Malum servum culpāmus.** 2. **Laudantne dominī superbī servōs fidōs?** 3. **Equī dominī sunt in magnō hortō.**

¹ The indirect object is used especially with verbs of giving, doing, and saying.

² See 47, footnote 2. The accusative is used with **in** when the verb expresses motion into, toward, or against (some place, person, etc.). **Vīnum in oppidum portat**, *he is carrying wine into the town*

4. Ubi servī cibum dominōrum servant? 5. Agricolae fidōs equōs nōn semper laudant. 6. Est cibus in domini hortō. 7. Fēmina amici filiam vocat.

II. 1. She praises my friend's garden. 2. A good horse pleases your daughter. 3. The master praises the friend, but blames the slaves. 4. The sailors' friends are in Greece. 5. Why does the garden please the farmer?

61.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Oppidīs; bella; vīnō. 2. Mārcus nauta est fidus. 3. Incolīs vīnum damus.¹ 4. Bellum Rōmānis grātum est. 5. Cibum in oppidum portāmus. 6. Mārcus, agricolārum amīcus, Rōmānus est. 7. Incolae in oppidum frūmentum portant. 8. Filiae rēgīnae in hortō sunt. 9. Vīnum Mārcō nautae dant. 10. Dōna incolīs oppidī sunt grāta. 11. Cūr vīnum servīs datis? 12. Portantne nautae cibum in Galliam?

II. 1. To Marcus, the farmer; for the good master. 2. Are you giving the horses good grain? 3. Wars delight the haughty Romans. 4. The farmer gives the horse food. 5. The queen gives wine to Marcus, the sailor. 6. They carry grain into the town. 7. There is good grain in the town.

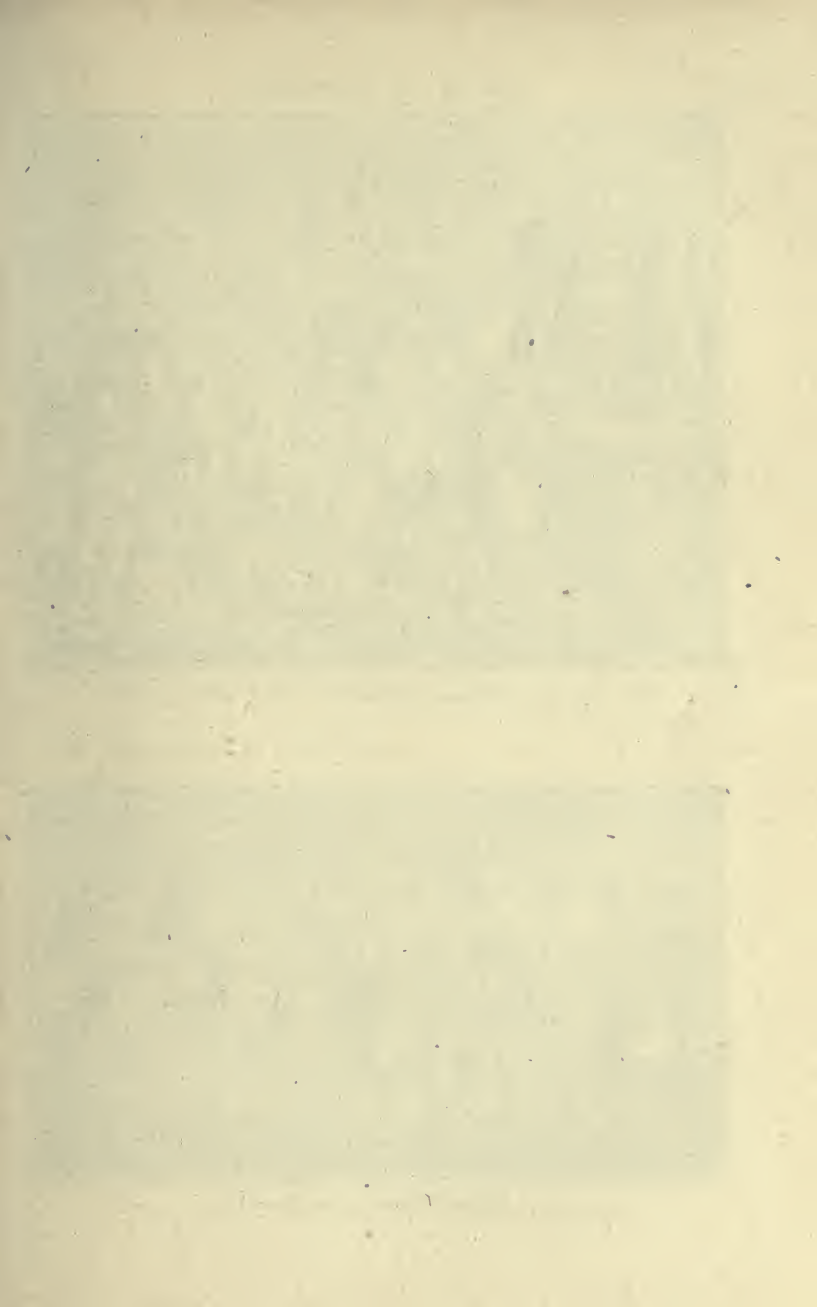
(READING SELECTION 442)

LESSON 7

DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES. AGREEMENT

62. Adjectives of the first and second declension are declined like nouns of those declensions. As has been seen in 51 and 56, the endings of the masculine and neuter of adjectives are the same as the endings of the nouns of the second declension, and the feminine endings are the same as those of nouns of the first declension (32). The complete declension of **bonus**, *good*, is as follows:

¹ In the verb **dō**, **a** is by exception short throughout, save in the forms **dās** (2nd person singular present indicative), **dāns** (the nominative singular of present participle), and **dā** (imperative singular).





Roman Soldiers in Camp



Roman Soldiers on the March

SINGULAR

	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
NOM.	bonus	bona	bonum
GEN.	bonī	bonae	bonī
DAT.	bonō	bonae	bonō
ACC.	bonum	bonam	bonum
✓Voc.	bone	bona	bonum
ABL.	bonō	bonā	bonō

PLURAL

NOM.	bonī	bonae	bona
GEN.	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
DAT.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
ACC.	bonōs	bonās	bona
✓Voc.	bonī	bonae	bona
ABL.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

Decline together *amicus fidus*, *faithful friend*; *puella parva*, *little girl*; *oppidum magnum*, *large town*.

63. Examine the following:

1. *Amicus est fidus*, *the friend is faithful*.
2. *Agricolae sunt validi*, *the farmers are sturdy*.
3. *Puellae sunt parvae*, *the girls are small*.
4. *Nautās superbōs nōn amāmus*, *we do not like proud sailors*.

Compare carefully the endings of the nouns and adjectives in these sentences, and notice

- a. That the adjectives are in the same *number*, *gender*, and *case* as the nouns they modify.
- b. That the endings of the nouns and adjectives are not always the same, for adjectives modifying masculine nouns of the first declension must have the masculine endings, which are second declension endings. Which of the above sentences illustrate this?

64. Decline together *nauta bonus, the good sailor; pōculum magnum, the large cup; agricola validus, the strong farmer.*

65. RULE. — Agreement of Adjectives. — *Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.*

66.

VOCABULARY

malus, a, um, <i>bad, evil, wicked.</i>	lātus, a, um, <i>wide, broad.</i>
magnus, a, um, <i>great, large.</i>	novus, a, um, <i>new.</i>
parvus, a, um, <i>small.</i>	fīdus, a, um, <i>faithful, loyal.</i>
meus, a, um, <i>my, mine.</i>	superbus, a, um, <i>proud,</i>
tuus, a, um, <i>your, yours.</i>	<i>haughty.</i>
grātus, a, um, <i>acceptable,</i>	validus, a, um, <i>strong, sturdy.</i>
<i>pleasing.</i>	convocō, <i>I call together, I</i>
albus, a, um, <i>white.</i>	<i>summon.</i>
cārus, a, um, <i>dear.</i>	✓ hodiē, <i>adv., to-day.</i>
✓ perītus, a, um, <i>skillful.</i>	✓ nunc, <i>adv., now.</i>
longus, a, um, <i>long.</i>	

67.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Fīliae equīs cibum dant. 2. Inopia pecūniae Mārcō agricolae nōn est grāta. 3. Vocātisne incolās Galliae? 4. Ubi Rōmānī pugnāt? 5. Nautae rēgīnae dōna grāta dant. 6. Nauta Mārcō agricolae bonum vīnum dat.

II. 1. The sailor gives acceptable gifts to his daughter. 2. The daughter of Marcus, the farmer, is in the town. 3. They give the women money. 4. He is carrying grain into the town.

68.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Equī albī frūmentum in oppidum portant. 2. Ubi est hodiē nauta perītus? 3. In oppidō nunc est nauta. 4. Dōna meis amīcīs sunt semper grāta. 5. Equum

agricolae validō fēminae dant. 6. Rēgīna superba in magnum oppidum servōs convocat. 7. Dominus servōs fidōs vocat. 8. Mea filia nōn est in hortō. 9. Hodīe perītōs agricolās nōn culpāmus. 10. Dōna rēgīnae incolās fidōs dēlectant. 11. Est nova lūna. 12. Cūr in hortum agricolās validōs convocās?

II. 1. A sailor is not always faithful. 2. They are now praising the skillful farmers. 3. The queen summons the wicked inhabitants into the towns. 4. We are praising your faithful friend to-day. 5. There are loyal inhabitants in the towns. 6. The queen is giving Marcus, the farmer, a slave.

LESSON 8

SECOND DECLENSION (CONTINUED). MASCULINES IN -er AND -ir

49.

Paradigms

puer, *boy*

ager, *field*

vir, *man*

Stem puero-

Stem agro-

Stem viro-

Base puer-

Base agr-

Base vir-

SINGULAR

NOM. puer

ager

vir

GEN. puerī

agrī

virī

DAT. puerō

agrō

virō

ACC. puerum

agrum

virum

ABL. puerō

agrō

virō

PLURAL

NOM. puerī

agrī

virī

GEN. puerōrum

agrōrum

virōrum

DAT. puerīs

agrīs

virīs

ACC. puerōs

agrōs

virōs

ABL. puerīs

agrīs

virīs

1. Are the case endings the same as in 50?
2. Is the base obtained in the same way as in previous nouns?
3. The vocative is like the nominative. See 24, 5, footnote.
4. Compare carefully **puer** and **ager**, and note that the base of **ager** has no e before r.

70. Only a very few nouns are declined like **puer**. Most nouns of this declension in **-er** are declined like **ager**.

Like **ager** decline **liber**, *book*.

Like the plural of **puer** decline **liberī**, *children*.

71.

VOCABULARY

liber, **librī**, m., *book*.

liberī, **liberōrum**, m. (plur.),
children.

magister, **magistrī**, m.,
teacher.

ager, **agrī**, m., *field*.

Gallus, **ī**, m., *a Gaul*.

vir, **virī**, m., *man*.

puer, **puerī**, m., *boy*.

discipulus, **ī**, m., *pupil*.

multus, **a**, **um**, *much*; plur.,
many.

72.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Inopia frūmentī est in Galliā. 2. Incolīs oppidī magnī equōs dant. 3. Servus dōna agricolae in oppidum portat. 4. Estne nunc pecūniae cōpia? 5. Agricolārum vīta Gallōs nōn dēlectat. 6. Cūr in pulchram insulam frūmentum portāmus?

II. 1. The inhabitants like a good story. 2. There are many¹ sturdy farmers in my country. 3. The Romans

¹ *Many sturdy = many and sturdy.*

are summoning large forces into the towns. 4. There are farmers in the forest, and many sailors on the island.

73.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Multī librī sunt in oppidō. 2. Virī puellās et puerōs laudant. 3. Cibum in oppidum portāmus. 4. Liber meō discipulō est grātus. 5. Rēgīna liberōs in oppidum convocat. 6. Discipulī magistrī amīcum laudant. 7. Multi agricolae nunc in agrō sunt. 8. Filia mea liberōs magistrī laudat. 9. Incolārum agrī sunt lātī. 10. Magister discipulōs nōn semper culpat. 11. Ubi nunc sunt filiae meae librī? 12. Equī multōs virōs in silvam portant.



A Roman School

II. 1. The boys are my children's friends. 2. My daughter loves her teacher. 3. The sturdy farmers are calling the slaves into the fields. 4. The teacher gives the man a book. 5. There are not many sailors in the town. 6. The teacher praises his faithful pupils.

LESSON 9

SECOND DECLENSION (CONTINUED). NOUNS IN **-ius** AND **-ium**. ADJECTIVES IN **-er**, **(-e)ra**, **(-e)rum**

74.

filius , <i>son</i>		proelium , <i>battle</i>
Stem filio-		Stem proelio-
Base fili-		Base proeli-
	SINGULAR	
NOM. filius		proelium
GEN. fili (filiī)		proeli (proeliī)
DAT. filiō		proeliō
ACC. filium		proelium
✓ VOC. fili		proelium
ABL. filiō		proeliō
	PLURAL	
NOM. filiī		proelia
GEN. filiōrum		proeliōrum
DAT. filiīs		proeliīs
ACC. filiōs		proelia
✓ VOC. filiī		proelia
ABL. filiīs		proeliīs

1. The genitive singular of nouns in **-ius** and **-ium** generally ends in **-ī** (not **-īī**). The accent remains on the same syllable as in the nominative: **cōnsīlium**, *plan*; (gen.) **cōnsīli**.¹
2. In proper names in **-ius** and **filius**, the vocative singular ends in **-ī**: **fili**, (*O*) *son*; **Mercurius**, (voc.) **Mercūri**,¹ (*O*) *Mercury*. The accent remains on the same syllable as in the nominative.
3. Do these nouns differ in any other way from those in Lesson 5?

¹ In such forms the penult is accented, even though short. Contrast 20, 3.

75.

liber, freeStem **libero-**Base **liber-**

SINGULAR

	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
NOM.	liber	libera	liberum
GEN.	liberī	liberae	liberī
DAT.	liberō	liberae	liberō
		etc.	

pulcher, beautifulStem **pulchro-**Base **pulchr-**

SINGULAR

NOM.	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
GEN.	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī
DAT.	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō
		etc.	

1. Complete the declension of these adjectives.
2. It has been noticed that adjectives in **-us, -a, -um** are declined in the masculine like **dominus** (50). Likewise adjectives in **-er, -era, -erum** are declined in the masculine like **puer** (69), and those in **-er, -ra, -rum** like **ager** (69). The feminine and neuter of these adjectives follow **stella** (29) and **dōnum** (56).
3. Learn the adjectives in the vocabulary that have **e** before the final **r** of the base. Most other adjectives of the first and second declension are declined like **pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum**. See 70.

76. Distinguish carefully

liber, libera, liberum, *free*.

liberī, liberōrum, m. (plur.), *children*.

liber, librī, m., *book*.



Roman Books

77. SUMMARY OF NOUNS OF FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

FIRST DECLENSION

Nom. Sing. Endings

-a

Gender

Feminine

(Except names of males, 27, 28)

SECOND DECLENSION

-us

-ius

-er

-ir

-um

-ium

Masculine

Neuter

REVIEW QUESTIONS

1. How is the base of a noun obtained?
2. In what nouns is the vocative singular not like the nominative?
3. In what nouns is there an irregularity in the formation of the genitive singular? in that of the dative and ablative plural?

4. Enumerate the nouns and adjectives in *-er* that have *e* before the *r* of the base.

78.

VOCABULARY

filius, fili, m., <i>son</i> .	proelium, proeli, n., <i>battle</i> .
nūntius, i, m., <i>messenger</i> .	miser, misera, miserum, <i>wretched, poor</i> .
gladius, i, m., <i>sword</i> .	asper, aspera, asperum, <i>rough,</i> <i>fierce</i> .
pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, <i>beautiful, pretty</i> .	niger, nigra, nigrum, <i>black</i> .
tener, tenera, tenerum, <i>tender,</i> <i>delicate, dainty</i> .	piger, pigra, pigrum, <i>slow,</i> <i>lazy</i> .
aedificium, i, n., <i>building</i> .	

79.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. In agrō Mārci amīci sunt multī equi. 2. Liber, dōnum pulchrum magistri, puerum dēlectat. 3. Multi agricolae magnōs equōs amant. 4. Lātaene sunt viae Italiae? 5. Puerōs fidōs vocātis. 6. Cūr nūntiī liberōs in oppidum convocant?

II. 1. They praise the sons of free men. 2. Many are the inhabitants in the towns of Greece. 3. The Romans are carrying much grain into the towns. 4. I am giving my friend Marcus a large book.

80.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Aedificia in Graeciā pulchra sunt. 2. Ubi tuī, fili, librī sunt? 3. Nūntiōrum sagittae nōn sunt longae. 4. Virī multōs gladiōs in aedificium portant. 5. Rosae multae et tenerae in asperā silvā sunt. 6. Agricolae miserī pigrōs equōs nōn amant. 7. Proelia nautās asperōs dēlectant. 8. Dōna mei amīci multa filiīs grāta sunt. 9. Cūr dominus superbus servōs pigrōs culpat?

10. Nūntī filiō multōs librōs dō. 11. Viae pulchrae Galliae liberōs dēlectant. 12. In magnō aedificiō sunt multae sagittae et multī gladii.

II. 1. The messenger's daughter is pretty. 2. The great buildings please the fierce inhabitants. 3. Marcus,¹ are you carrying my sword? 4. Fierce battles are pleasing to the Romans. 5. You are giving my son a black horse. 6. There are many women and men in the beautiful building.

(READING SELECTION 443)

LESSON 10

IMPERFECT AND FUTURE OF *sum*. REVIEW

81. Review 39. The imperfect and future tenses of *sum* are conjugated as follows:

IMPERFECT	SINGULAR	FUTURE
1. eram, <i>I was</i>	1. erō, <i>I shall be</i>	
2. erās, <i>you were</i>	2. eris, <i>you will be</i>	
3. erat, <i>he was, there was</i>	3. erit, <i>he will be, there will be</i>	
	PLURAL	
1. erāmus, <i>we were</i>	1. erimus, <i>we shall be</i>	
2. erātis, <i>you were</i>	2. eritis, <i>you will be</i>	
3. erant, <i>they were, there were</i>	3. erunt, <i>they will be, there will be</i>	

1. Are the personal endings of these tenses regular?
See 43. Are these endings the same as those of the present of *sum*?

82. **Order of Words.** — In an English sentence the order of the words is very important, because of the comparatively few inflectional endings. A change in the order

¹ Be careful as to the position of this word. See page 27, footnote 1.

may change entirely the meaning of a sentence. For example:

Caesar praises the loyal farmers.

The loyal farmers praise Caesar.

In Latin, a change in the order of the words does not usually change the meaning of the sentence, but merely shows the *emphasis* which the writer wishes to give to a particular word or phrase. For example:

1. *Caesar agricolās fidōs laudat, Caesar praises the loyal farmers.*
2. *Caesar fidōs agricolās laudat, Caesar praises the loyal farmers.*
3. *Agricolās fidōs laudat Caesar, Caesar praises the loyal farmers.*

The first sentence shows the normal¹ order, and implies no special emphasis on any word, but this order is often changed to express the emphasis the writer wishes to show. In the second sentence *fidōs* is more emphatic than in the first. In the third *agricolās fidōs* and *Caesar* are emphatic.

83.

REVIEW LIST OF NOUNS OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

1. Review carefully the meaning, gender, and declension of each noun.
2. Recall any English equivalents that the Latin words suggest, viz., *vīta, vital*; *nauta, nautical*. Also watch for relationship between Latin words, viz., *ager, field*; *agricola, farmer*. *Do this for new words of succeeding vocabularies.*

¹ The normal order of a Latin sentence is (1) subject with modifiers, (2) indirect object with modifiers, (3) direct object with modifiers, (4) adverb, (5) verb. But this normal order very often gives way to considerations of emphasis or clearness.

incola	gladius	agricola	lūna	aedificium
discipulus	vir	patria	porta	frūmentum
vīnum	ager	cōpia	fābula	oppidum
sagitta	fēmina	vīta	īnsula	dōnum
proelium	nūntius	pecūnia	amicus	bellum
puer	hortus	terra	dominus	magister
via	silva	rēgīna	servus	liber
rosa	inopia	stella	filia	
cibus	nauta	eqūus	filius	

84.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Erimus; erāmus; sumus. 2. Erātis; eritis; estis.
 3. Erant; es; eris. 4. Erās; erunt; eris. 5. Fīlī agricolae
 erant parvī. 6. Filia nūntī erat in īnsulā pulchrā.
 7. Rēgīnae cōpiae erunt in tuā patriā. 8. Nautae nōn
 erant pigri. 9. Ubi gladius meī amīcī erat? 10. In
 magnō aedificiō erat.

II. 1. We were; we are; we shall be. 2. They will
 be; you (plur.) will be; she was. 3. You (sing.) were;
 he will be; you (sing.) will be. 4. My friend's horse was
 not lazy. 5. The sailor's sons were small. 6. The fierce
 inhabitants will be slaves of the queen.

LESSON II

FIRST CONJUGATION. PRINCIPAL PARTS. FORMATION
AND CONJUGATION OF THE IMPERFECT AND FUTURE

85. Review 26 and 43. Latin verbs are divided into four
 classes or conjugations. These conjugations are distin-
 guished by the vowel before the **-re** of the present infinitive
 active. Thus:

CONJUGATION	PRESENT ACTIVE INFINITIVE	DISTINGUISHING VOWEL
I.	amāre , <i>to love</i>	ā
II.	monēre , <i>to advise</i>	ē
III.	regere , <i>to rule</i>	e
IV.	audire , <i>to hear</i>	i

86. The principal parts of the verb are (1) the present indicative active, (2) the present infinitive active, (3) the perfect indicative active, (4) the perfect passive participle. These four forms of a verb must be known, because from them are obtained the stems necessary to the formation of all forms of the verb. These stems are called (1) present stem, (2) perfect stem, (3) participial stem, and are obtained from the principal parts as follows :

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	PERF. PART.
amō <i>I love</i>	amā re <i>to love</i>	amāv i <i>I have loved</i>	amāt us <i>loved</i>
	present stem	perfect stem	participial stem

87.

Paradigm

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

SINGULAR

1. **amābam**, *I was loving, I loved, I did love*
2. **amābās**, *you were loving, loved, did love*
3. **amābat**, *he was loving, loved, did love*

PLURAL

1. **amābāmus**, *we were loving, loved, did love*
2. **amābātis**, *you were loving, loved, did love*
3. **amābant**, *they were loving, loved, did love*

FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE

SINGULAR

PLURAL

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. amābō , <i>I shall love</i> | 1. amābimus , <i>we shall love</i> |
| 2. amābis , <i>you will love</i> | 2. amābitis , <i>you will love</i> |
| 3. amābit , <i>he will love</i> | 3. amābunt , <i>they will love</i> |

Observe

1. That the first person of the imperfect is found by adding **-bam** to the present stem, and the first person of the future by adding **-bō** to the present stem. Thus:

amō pres. stem amā- imperf., amā-bam

amō pres. stem amā- fut., amā-bō

2. That the personal endings are the same as those used in the present tense. See 43.

88. Learn the principal parts, and form and conjugate the imperfect and future active of the following verbs:

parō, *prepare*, parāre, parāvī, parātus

laudō, *praise*, laudāre, laudāvī, laudātus

culpō, *blame*, culpāre, culpāvī, culpātus

convocō, *summon*, convocāre, convocāvī, convocātus

89.

VOCABULARY

locus, i, m., plur., loci, m., idōneus, a, um, *fit, suitable*.

and loca, n., *place*.

parō, āre, āvī, ātus, *prepare*.

praemium, i, n., *reward*.

comparō, āre, āvī, ātus, *pro-*

✓pīlum, i, n., *javelin*.

vide, get (bring) together.

✓saxum, i, n., *rock*.

contrā, prep. with acc., *against*.

✓tēlum, i, n., *weapon*.

✓hasta, ae, f., *spear*.

castra, ōrum, n. (plur.), *camp*.

90.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Gallī filiis agricolārum cibum nōn dant. 2. Cūr fidum nautam culpātis? 3. Erant in Graeciā aedificia pulchra. 4. In silvam nūntiōs convocat. 5. Inopia cibī et vinī virōs nōn dēlectat. 6. Multī gladiī semper in oppidō sunt.

II. 1. Son, where is my sword? 2. They are carrying the grain into the large building. 3. You give my daughter many roses. 4. Why does the island please the boys?

91.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Culpābat; laudābant; convocābis. 2. Pugnābāmus; comparābās; dabunt. 3. Portābimus; culpābitis; laudābit. 4. Bellum contrā Gallōs parābant. 5. Praemia idōnea virōs dēlectābunt. 6. Gallī in castra cibum et tēla portant. 7. Idōneane praemia comparābitis? 8. Ubi est locus castrīs idōneus? 9. Filī praemium erit pulchrum pilum. 10. Idōneās hastās virīs dabimus. 11. Multae sagittae et pīla sunt in castrīs. 12. Gallī bellum contrā Rōmānōs parābunt.

II. 1. You (plur.) will give; they gave; she was giving. 2. We praised; he will blame; we are summoning. 3. They will carry; we shall give; you (sing.) were praising. 4. We were preparing a place suitable for a camp. 5. He will give his daughter a reward. 6. The Romans prepared war against the Gauls. 7. The weapons of the Gauls were rocks and arrows.

LESSON 12

FIRST CONJUGATION (CONTINUED). PERFECT. ABLATIVE OF MEANS

92.

Paradigm

PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF *amō, I love*

SINGULAR	PERSONAL ENDINGS WITH CONNECTING VOWEL
1. amāvī, <i>I have loved, I loved, I did love</i>	-ī
2. amāvístī, <i>you have loved, etc.</i>	-ístī
3. amávit, <i>he has loved, etc.</i>	-it
PLURAL	
1. amávimus, <i>we have loved, etc.</i>	-imus
2. amāvístis, <i>you have loved, etc.</i>	-istis
3. amávérunt, <i>they have loved, etc.</i>	-érunt

1. *The personal endings of the perfect tense are the same in all the conjugations.* Notice that these endings differ from those of the present, imperfect, and future tenses.
2. Compare the second and third translations of the perfect with those of the imperfect (87). There is this difference in the use of the two tenses: the perfect denotes an act or state (condition) *completed* by or at the present time, the imperfect an act or state *going on, repeated, or continued* in past time.
3. Conjugate the perfect of the verbs in 88.

93. Examine the following:

1. *Hastis et sagittis pugnābant, they fought with spears and arrows.*
2. *Equīs frūmentum portābimus, we shall bring grain by means-of horses.*

Notice that the ablatives *hastis, sagittis, equīs* express the *means* or *instrument*, the things with or by means of which the action of the verb is accomplished.

94. RULE. — Ablative of Means or Instrument. — *The means or instrument of an action is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.*

95.

VOCABULARY

<i>lēgātus, ī, m., ambassador, lieutenant.</i>	<i>dō, dare, dedī,¹ datus, give.</i>
<i>Graecus, ī, m., a Greek.</i>	<i>oppugnō, āre, āvī, ātus, attack, besiege.</i>
<i>paucī, ae, a, few, a few.</i>	<i>arma, ōrum, n. (plur.), arms, weapons.</i>
<i>superō, āre, āvī, ātus, surpass, conquer, overcome.</i>	<i>hiberna, ōrum, n. (plur.), winter quarters.</i>
<i>armō, āre, āvī, ātus, arm, equip.</i>	<i>Helvētius, ī, m., a Helvetian.</i>

¹ Note the irregular perfect.



English Guardsmen as Roman Soldiers, in 'tortoise'-formation



English Guardsmen as Roman Soldiers discharging the Catapult

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65
66
67
68
69
70
71
72
73
74
75
76
77
78
79
80
81
82
83
84
85
86
87
88
89
90
91
92
93
94
95
96
97
98
99
100

96.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Dominus meus dōna filiīs dabit. 2. Nautae fidi contrā Rōmānōs pugnābant. 3. Tēla idōnea in castra portābunt. 4. Cōpia magna tēlōrum est in locō. 5. Servi pigri multum frūmentum in aedificia nōn portābant. 6. Locus magnō proeliō nōn erit idōneus.

II. 1. The camp of the Romans was large. 2. Why did he give the inhabitants weapons? 3. We shall carry many spears and arrows into the town. 4. He was praising the queen's forces.

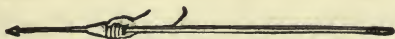
97.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Pugnāvistī; dedistīne? laudāvimus. 2. Incolae oppidī multa arma comparāvērunt. 3. Helvētīi oppidum saxīs et armīs oppugnābant. 4. Equīs in aedificium cibum portāvit. 5. Pauca arma virīs dedimus. 6. Cūr Rōmānī Graecōs superāvērunt? 7. Servi multum frūmentum in hiberna portāvērunt. 8. Rōmānī Helvētīōrum oppida sagittīs et pilīs oppugnābant. 9. Incolās insulae tēlīs armābimus. 10. In hibernīs sunt pauca tēla et multus cibus. 11. Gallōs hastīs et sagittīs superāvit. 12. Locus hibernīs idōneus est.

II. 1. You (plur.) have given; did he blame? 2. We have equipped; they were conquering; she gave. 3. The Gauls fought with spears and arrows. 4. The Romans have attacked the camp of the Greeks. 5. By-means-of rewards he summoned the Helvetians.

(READING SELECTION 444)



Pilum

LESSON 13

FIRST CONJUGATION (CONTINUED). PLUPERFECT AND
FUTURE PERFECT. REVIEW

98. Review 81.

PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF **amō**, *I love*

SINGULAR

1. **amāveram**, *I had loved*
2. **amāverās**, *you had loved*
3. **amāverat**, *he had loved*

PLURAL

1. **amāverāmus**, *we had loved*
2. **amāverātis**, *you had loved*
3. **amāverant**, *they had loved*

FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

SINGULAR

1. **amāverō**, *I shall have loved*
2. **amāveris**, *you will have loved*
3. **amāverit**, *he will have loved*

PLURAL

1. **amāverimus**, *we shall have loved*
2. **amāveritis**, *you will have loved*
3. **amāverint**, *they will have loved*

1. The pluperfect is formed by the combination of the perfect stem **amāv-** and **-eram**; the future perfect by the combination of the same stem and **-erō**. There is an exception in one form of the future perfect. Which?

99. Review carefully 43, 85, 86, 87, 92. Observe that the *present stem* is used in the formation of the present, imperfect, and future tenses, and the *perfect stem* in the formation of the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses.

TABLE FOR THE FORMATION OF THE INDICATIVE ACTIVE

Present Tense,	First one of the principal parts.
Imperfect Tense,	Present stem + bam .
Future Tense,	Present stem + bō .
Perfect Tense,	Third one of the principal parts.
Pluperfect Tense,	Perfect stem + eram .
Future Perfect Tense,	Perfect stem + erō .

100. Give the principal parts, and form the first person singular of all tenses of the indicative, adding the English meanings, of the following verbs that have occurred in the previous vocabularies:

laudō	vocō	parō	oppugnō	servō
culpō	convocō	dō	portō	superō

1. Give the complete conjugation of all tenses of the indicative of at least three verbs in this list.

101.

VOCABULARY

mātūrō, āre, āvī, ātum, ¹	✓ferus, a, um, wild, barbarous.
hasten (usually with an infinitive; never followed by ad and the acc.).	impedimentum, ī, n., hindrance; (plur.), baggage.
expugnō, āre, āvī, ātus, cap-	✓vicus, ī, m., village.
ture, take by storm.	ad, prep. with acc., to,
mox, adv., soon.	towards, near.

¹ The masculine form of the perfect participle is usually found only with transitive verbs. With other verbs the form in -um, or the future active participle in -ūrus, if they occur, are used.

102.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Gladiis et sagittis incolās oppidi superāvērunt. 2. Contrā Rōmānōs bellum Gallī parābunt. 3. In oppidō Helvētiōrum erit cibī inopia. 4. Lēgātus agricolās pilīs armāvit. 5. Gladium pulchrum Mārcō nautae peritō dēdērunt. 6. In oppidum puellās et puerōs convocābant.

II. 1. There was an abundance of grain in my friend's fields. 2. The arrows, a gift of the queen, pleased the messenger. 3. He will not fight with weapons. 4. They have given the woman a beautiful horse. 5. Has he armed many slaves?

103.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Mātūrāverās; laudāveris; expugnāverant. 2. Portāveritis; dēlectāverātis; dederāmus. 3. Arma comparāre mātūrāvit. 4. Parvum Helvētiōrum oppidum expugnāverant. 5. Multa impedimenta in vicum portāverimus. 6. Dōna ad rēginam portābant. 7. Rēginae cōpiaē ferae erant. 8. Ad¹ oppidum frūmentī cōpia erat. 9. Multōs vicōs Gallōrum mox oppugnāverit. 10. Gladiis ad¹ impedimenta pugnāverant. 11. Magnam² pecūniam incolīs nōn dedimus. 12. Mox in agrīs lātīs Gallōrum erit frūmentum.

II. 1. He will hasten; he will have hastened. 2. They had given; we have given; you will have praised. 3. He had carried much baggage into the town. 4. They will soon have taken-by-storm many towns. 5. Why did he not hasten to provide grain? 6. Near the beautiful village were broad fields.

¹ near.² = much.

LESSON 14

SECOND CONJUGATION. CHARACTERISTICS. FORMATION AND CONJUGATION OF THE ACTIVE INDICATIVE

104. All verbs whose present stem ends in *ē* are classed under the Second Conjugation. The various tenses of these verbs are formed from the principal parts precisely like those of the First Conjugation. Review 86, 87, 98, 99.

PRIN. PARTS: *moneō, I advise, warn, monēre, monuī, monitus*
videō, I see, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus

PRES.	<i>moneō, I warn</i>	<i>videō, I see</i>
IMPF.	<i>monēbam, I warned</i>	<i>vidēbam, I saw</i>
FUT.	<i>monēbō, I shall warn</i>	<i>vidēbō, I shall see</i>
PERF.	<i>monuī, I have warned</i>	<i>vīdī, I have seen</i>
PLUP.	<i>monueram, I had warned</i>	<i>vīderam, I had seen</i>
FUT. PF.	<i>monuerō, I shall have warned</i>	<i>vīderō, I shall have seen</i>

105. CONJUGATION OF PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF *moneō*

SING.	1. <i>moneō, I advise, am advising, do advise</i>
	2. <i>monēs, you advise, etc.</i>
	3. <i>monet, he advises, etc.</i>
PLUR.	1. <i>monēmus, we advise, etc.</i>
	2. <i>monētis, you advise, etc.</i>
	3. <i>monent, they advise, etc.</i>

1. Observe that the *-ē-* of the present stem, unlike the *-ā-* of *amō*, is retained before the personal ending *-o* of the first person singular.
2. What is the characteristic vowel before the personal endings of *moneō*? of *amō*?

106.

CONJUGATION OF THE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF *moneō*

SINGULAR

1. *mónuī*, *I have advised, I advised, I did advise*
2. *mónuístī*, *you have advised, etc.*
3. *mónuit*, *he has advised, etc.*

PLURAL

1. *monúimus*, *we have advised, etc.*
2. *monuístis*, *you have advised, etc.*
3. *monuérunt*, *they have advised, etc.*

1. Note carefully the accent of the above forms, and observe that the personal endings are like those of the perfect of *amō*. Note that the perfect stem *monu-* does not end in *v*, as in *amō*, perfect stem *amāv-*.

107. The various tenses of verbs of the Second Conjugation are conjugated like those of the First Conjugation, with the exception noted in 105, 1 and 2. Form and conjugate the tenses of the indicative active of the following verbs:

habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus, I have, hold
videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus, I see

108.

VOCABULARY

<i>moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus, advise, warn.</i>	✓ <i>move; castra movēre, break up camp.</i>
<i>habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus, have, hold.</i>	✓ <i>dīmicō, āre, āvī, ātum, fight, contend.</i>
<i>videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus, see.</i>	<i>praeda, ae, f., booty, spoil.</i>
<i>terreō, terrēre, terruī, territū, frighten, scare.</i>	<i>periculum, ī, n., danger.</i>
<i>moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus,</i>	<i>cum, prep. with abl., with.</i>

109.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Saxīs tēlīs¹ Gallī cum Rōmānīs pugnābant. 2. Magnum bellum contrā Rōmānōs parāverant. 3. Ad portam liberōs portāvērunt. 4. Paucōs librōs amīcō meō dedī. 5. Rōmānī multa arma in hiberna portābunt. 6. Cūr oppidum expugnāre mātūrāvērunt?

II. 1. They armed the fierce inhabitants with javelins. 2. Near the camp were a few buildings. 3. We do not always take the towns by storm. 4. Have you given my friend a book?

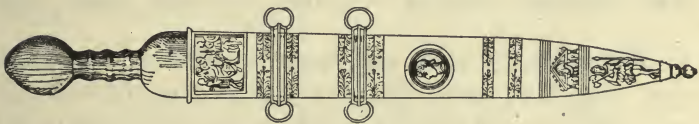
110.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Movēbat; vīdit; terruerat. 2. Viderimus; mōvistī; habēbis. 3. Mōverant; terruērunt; mōverint. 4. Rōmānī cum Helvētiīs dimicābant. 5. Periculum magnum oppidī incolās terruerat. 6. Praedam in vīcīs multam vīdērunt. 7. Gallī cōpiās ad oppidum mōverant. 8. Vīdistīne tuum periculum? 9. Puerī multa praemia habēbunt. 10. Rōmānī gladiīs et pīlīs agricolās terruērunt. 11. Mox cōpiam frūmentī habuerit. 12. Praeda nautās pigrōs dēlectābit.

II. 1. She had seen; he has frightened; he will have had. 2. We had moved; you (plur.) have seen; they have fought. 3. The Gauls broke up camp. 4. They had contended with the inhabitants. 5. The messenger frightened the lieutenant by the story. 6. There is great danger in wine.

¹ In apposition with *saxīs* (see 58).



Gladius

LESSON 15

THIRD DECLENSION. CONSONANT STEMS

111. The stem of nouns of the third declension ends in a consonant or in *-i-*.

112. CONSONANT STEMS

		Paradigms					
		<i>dux, m.,</i> <i>leader, general</i>	<i>miles, m.,</i> <i>soldier</i>	<i>virtūs, f.,</i> <i>virtue</i>	<i>caput, n.,</i> <i>head</i>		
Stem and Base	}	<i>duc-</i>	<i>milit-</i>	<i>virtūt-</i>	<i>capit-</i>		
						CASE ENDINGS OF CONSONANT STEMS	
		SINGULAR				<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
NOM.	<i>dux</i>	<i>mīles</i>	<i>virtūs</i>	<i>caput</i>	(-s)		
GEN.	<i>ducis</i>	<i>mīlitis</i>	<i>virtūtis</i>	<i>capitis</i>	-is	-is	
DAT.	<i>duci</i>	<i>mīlitī</i>	<i>virtūtī</i>	<i>capiti</i>	-ī	-ī	
ACC.	<i>ducem</i>	<i>mīlitem</i>	<i>virtūtem</i>	<i>caput</i>	-em		
ABL.	<i>duce</i>	<i>mīlite</i>	<i>virtūte</i>	<i>capite</i>	-e	-e	
		PLURAL					
NOM.	<i>ducēs</i>	<i>mīlitēs</i>	<i>virtūtēs</i>	<i>capita</i>	-ēs	-a	
GEN.	<i>ducum</i>	<i>mīlitum</i>	<i>virtūtum</i>	<i>capitum</i>	-um	-um	
DAT.	<i>ducibus</i>	<i>mīlitibus</i>	<i>virtūtibus</i>	<i>capitibus</i>	-ibus	-ibus	
ACC.	<i>ducēs</i>	<i>mīlitēs</i>	<i>virtūtēs</i>	<i>capita</i>	-ēs	-a	
ABL.	<i>ducibus</i>	<i>mīlitibus</i>	<i>virtūtibus</i>	<i>capitibus</i>	-ibus	-ibus	

I. Note that the stem and base are alike in nouns with consonant stems (but see 122, 2 and contrast 25). Both are obtained by dropping the ending *-is* of the genitive singular.

2. To decline a noun, therefore, one must know the gender, the nominative, and the genitive. *Be sure to learn these facts about all the nouns given in the vocabularies.*
3. Observe that the nominative singular is not always like the stem. Various changes are made in its formation from the stem. No rule can be given.
4. Learn thoroughly the case endings, observing which are alike. See 56.
5. Decline **rēx bonus**, *the good king*.

113.

VOCABULARY

dux, **ducis**, m., *leader, general*. **rēx**, **rēgis**, m., *king*.

mīles, **mīlitis**, m., *soldier*. **fuga**, ae, f., *flight*.

ēques, **equitis**, m., *horseman*; **in fugam dō**, **dare**, **dedī**, **datus**,
(plur.) *cavalry, cavalrymen*. *put to flight*.

virtūs, **virtūtis**, f., *manliness*, **augeō**, **augēre**, **auxī**, **auctus**,
bravery, virtue. *increase, enlarge*.

caput, **capitis**, n., *head*.

114.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Ad portam nūntium vīdit. 2. Cūr cum incolīs ferīs dīmicābant? 3. Perīculum fili videt. 4. Perīculum agricolās perītōs nōn terrēbit. 5. Multam praedam in castrīs vīderant. 6. Dabitne pecūniam mox filiae?

II. 1. We have not seen much grain in winter quarters. 2. The fierce inhabitants have overcome the farmers. 3. The war had not frightened the queen. 4. They will hasten to besiege the town.

115.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Capitibus; virtūtī; capita. 2. Eques equum laudābat. 3. Mīlītēs impedimenta in castra portāverant.

4. Equitēs Gallōrum in fugam dant. 5. Proelium mīlitum virtūtem augēbit. 6. Capita multōrum equitum vīdimus. 7. Virtūs mīlitum ducem dēlectāvit. 8. Rēx nōn semper est mīlitum dux. 9. Cōpiās dux nōn auxerat. 10. Gladiūs equitēs in fugam dedērunt. 11. Mīlitibus incolās ferōs dux terrēbat. 12. Multum frūmentum equitēs in oppida portābunt.

II. 1. For the soldier; the heads of the horses. 2. The leader summoned his soldiers into camp. 3. The Gauls will put the horsemen to flight. 4. The king gave the leader a beautiful sword. 5. The general increased the supply¹ of grain. 6. There were many soldiers in winter quarters.

¹cōpia.

(READING SELECTION 445)



Equitēs Rōmānī

LESSON 16

THIRD DECLENSIÖN (CONTINUED). CONSONANT STEMS.
ABLATIVE OF CAUSE

116.

CONSONANT STEMS

Paradigms

	cōnsul, m., <i>cōnsul</i> ¹	homō, m., <i>man</i>	pater, m., <i>father</i>	corpus, n., <i>body</i>
Stem } and } Base }	cōnsul-	homin-	patr-	corpor-

SINGULAR

NOM.	cōnsul	homō	pater	corpus
GEN.	cōnsulis	hominis	patris	corporis
DAT.	cōnsulī	hominī	patrī	corporī
ACC.	cōnsulem	hominem	patrem	corpus
ABL.	cōnsule	homine	patre	corpore

PLURAL

NOM.	cōnsulēs	hominēs	patrēs	corpora
GEN.	cōnsulum	hominum	patrum	corporum
DAT.	cōnsulibus	hominibus	patribus	corporibus
ACC.	cōnsulēs	hominēs	patrēs	corpora
ABL.	cōnsulibus	hominibus	patribus	corporibus

1. Are the case endings of these nouns like those of the previous lesson?
2. Decline together **pater bonus, corpus magnum.**

¹ The title of the two presiding magistrates of the Roman commonwealth.

117. Examine the following :

1. *Dux victōriā laetus est, the general is glad because of the victory.*
2. *Hominēs cibī inopiā labōrābant, the men suffered from (on account of) lack of food.*

Observe (a) that the ablatives *victōriā, inopiā*, express the *cause* or *reason*; (b) the various ways of translating these ablatives, *because of, on account of, from*.

Review 93, 94.

118. RULE. — Ablative of Cause. — *Cause is expressed by the ablative, usually without a preposition.*¹

119.

VOCABULARY

<i>cōsul, cōsulis, m., consul.</i>	<i>tempus, temporis, n., time,</i>
<i>homō, hominis, m., man.</i>	<i>season.</i>
<i>pater, patris, m., father.</i>	<i>vulnus, vulneris, n., wound.</i>
<i>corpus, corporis, n., body.</i>	<i>vulnerō, āre, āvī, ātus, wound.</i>
<i>flūmen, flūminis, n., river.</i>	<i>labōrō, āre, āvī, ātūrus, work,</i>
<i>pēs, pedis, m., foot.</i>	<i>suffer.</i>
<i>pedes, peditis, m., foot-soldier;</i>	<i>trāns, prep. with acc., across,</i>
<i>plur., infantry.</i>	<i>over.</i>

120.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. *Virtūs equitum Gallōs superābat.* 2. *Virtūte militēs in fugam dedimus.* 3. *Militēs perītī in castra arma portāvērunt.* 4. *Ducī fidō magnam pecūniam Rōmānī dederant.* 5. *Magna cōpia frūmentī mox in vicō erit.* 6. *Cūr ad portās oppidī tēla portāvit?*

¹ This use of the ablative is found chiefly with verbs and adjectives expressing emotion or feeling (joy, sorrow, fear, etc.)

II. 1. Near the village we saw many soldiers. 2. The king increased the men's courage by the story. 3. They had had much grain in winter quarters. 4. My son's stories were good. 5. He gave the horseman a black horse.

121.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Peditem gladiō meō vulnerābam. 2. Multa vulnera sunt in corporibus militum. 3. Tempus proeliō idōneum est. 4. Hominēs pecūniae inopiā labōrābunt. 5. Ad pedēs rēgis erant miserī incolae oppidi. 6. Miles vulnere labōrāverat. 7. Peditēs cōsul trāns flūmen convocāvit. 8. Peditēs multōs incolās pīlis vulnerāvērunt. 9. Militēs dux culpābat. 10. Meō vulnere miser sum. 11. Homō filiōs in hortum convocābit. 12. Pedes multōs militēs trāns flūmen vīdit.

II. 1. They put the foot-soldiers to flight across the river. 2. We are suffering from many wounds. 3. The inhabitants were wretched because of lack of food. 4. The soldier wounded the sailor with an arrow. 5. The consul will not blame my father. 6. The consul gave the foot-soldier a beautiful sword.



Coin of Caesar, struck by M. Mettius

LESSON 17

THIRD DECLENSION (CONTINUED). VOWEL STEMS, IN -i-

122.

STEMS IN -i-

Paradigms

	collis, m., <i>hill</i>	caedēs, f., <i>slaughter</i>	mōns, m., <i>mountain</i>	animal, n., <i>animal</i>		
Stem	colli-	caedi-	monti-	animāli-		
Base	coll-	caed-	mont-	animāl-		
				CASE ENDINGS OF -i- STEMS <i>M. and F. N.</i>		
				SINGULAR		
				(-s)		
NOM.	collis	caedēs	mōns	animal		
GEN.	collis	caedis	montis	animālis	-is	-is
DAT.	colli	caedi	monti	animāli	-i	-i
ACC.	collem	caedem	montem	animal	-em	
ABL.	colle	caede	monte	animāli	-e	-i
				PLURAL		
NOM.	collēs	caedēs	montēs	animālia	-ēs	-ia
GEN.	collium	caedium	montium	animālium	-ium	-ium
DAT.	collibus	caedibus	montibus	animālibus	-ibus	-ibus
ACC.	collis,ēs	caedis,ēs	montis,ēs	animālia	-is,-ēs	-ia
ABL.	collibus	caedibus	montibus	animālibus	-ibus	-ibus

1. Compare very carefully these case endings with those of 112. In what two cases of masculine and feminine nouns is there a difference? In what four cases of neuters?
2. Observe that the base and stem differ. Contrast 112, 1.

3. The following sometimes have the ablative singular both in *-ī* and in *-e*, though usually in *-ī*: *nāvis*, *ship*; *ignis*, *fire*; *civis*, *citizen*; *turris*, *tower*; *avis*, *bird*. All neuter *-i-* stems have the ablative singular in *-ī*. A few nouns sometimes have the accusative singular in *-im*: *turris*, *turrim*, *tower*.
4. Decline together: *urbs pulchra*, *beautiful city*; *animal magnum*, *large animal*.

123. Since nouns with *-i-* stems are declined differently from those with consonant stems, one must know what nouns of the third declension have *-i-* stems. The following classes have *-i-* stems, and they must be thoroughly learned:

1. Nouns in *-is* and *-ēs*, having no more syllables in the genitive than in the nominative. *Ex collis*
2. Neuters in *-e*, *-al*, *-ar*.
3. Nouns of one syllable in *-s* or *-x* following a consonant.
4. Nouns in *-ns* and *-rs*.

124. Decline the following:

<i>mare, maris, n., sea.</i>	<i>nōmen, nōminis, n., name.</i>
<i>urbs, urbis, f., city.</i>	<i>pars, partis, f., part.</i>
<i>miles, militis, m., soldier.</i>	<i>pōns, pontis, m., bridge.</i>
<i>hostis, hostis, m. and f., enemy (usually plural).</i>	<i>nāvis, nāvis, f., ship.</i>

125.

VOCABULARY

(Make a list of the nouns with *-i-* stems.)

<i>collis, collis, m., hill.</i>	<i>animal, animālis, n., animal.</i>
<i>caedēs, caedis, f., slaughter.</i>	<i>sedile, sedilis, n., seat.</i>
<i>mōns, montis, m., mountain.</i>	<i>per, prep. with acc., through, across, by-means-of.</i>
<i>laetus, a, um, glad.</i>	<i>dē, prep. with abl., down from, from, concerning.</i>
<i>occupō, āre, āvi, ātus, take-possession-of, seize, occupy.</i>	

126.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Meī patris amīcus vulnere labōrāvit. 2. Longa via pigrum peditem nōn dēlectābit. 3. Gallī equitum perītōrum inopiā labōrābant. 4. Multa vulnera in corporibus mīlitum vīdistī. 5. Peditēs per flūmen lātum in fugam dedērunt. 6. Tempus equitum virtūtem augēbit.

II. 1. At the king's feet there are many slaves. 2. The general is summoning the men across the river into camp. 3. The soldiers have suffered from the lack of a skillful leader. 4. They had wounded my son with a javelin.

127.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Mīlitēs dē monte in vīcum impedimenta poſtābant. 2. In nāvibus erant nautae multī et validī. 3. Nōne mīlitēs magnam partem urbis expugnābunt? 4. Miser erat cōsul caede militum validōrum. 5. Dux cum peditibus collem occupāvit. 6. In marī sunt nāvēs pulchrae. 7. Virtūs hostium equitēs terrēbat. 8. In monte erant multa et fera animālia. 9. Cōsul militibus et nāvibus hostēs superāverat. 10. Dux dē collibus Gallōs in urbem convocābat.

II. 1. A large part of the city is beautiful. 2. There were many¹ lazy sailors on the ships. 3. The horsemen took-possession-of the bridge. 4. The Romans are glad on account of the slaughter of the enemy. 5. They hastened to go² from the hill across the broad fields.

¹ *Many lazy = many and lazy.* See 127, I, 2, 8.

² *ire.*

LESSON 18

REVIEW OF THIRD DECLENSION. GENDER. ABLATIVE OF TIME WHEN

128. **Gender.** — For the general rules for gender see 28.

The complete rules for gender for the third declension are herewith given, though there are many exceptions:

1. **Masculine.** — Masculine are nouns in *-ō* (genitive *-ōnis*), *-or* (genitive *-ōris*), *-tor* (genitive *-tōris*), *-er* (genitive *-ris*; cf. *pater, patris*), *-es* (genitive *-itis*), *-eps* (genitive *-ipis*), *-ex* (genitive *-icis*).
2. **Feminine.** — Feminine are nouns in *-tās, -tūs, -rs* (genitive *-rtis*; cf. *ars, artis*), *-is* and *-ēs* (if genitive is in *-is*), *-dō* or *-gō* (genitive *-dinis, -ginis*), and *-iō* (genitive *-iōnis*).
3. **Neuter.** — Neuter are nouns in *-al* (genitive *-ālis*), *-en, -ar* (genitive *-āris*), *-ur* (genitive *-oris*), *-us* (genitive *-eris* or *-oris*), *-t, -e* (genitive *-is*).

What are the rules of gender for the first and second declensions?

129. REVIEW TABLE OF NOUNS OF THIRD DECLENSION

Give for each noun (1) gender, (2) meaning, (3) genitive singular, (4) stem, (5) ablative singular, (6) nominative plural, (7) genitive plural. Review carefully 122, 123.

animal	dux	mare	pater	rēx
caedēs	eques	mōns	pēs	tempus
caput	flūmen	miles	pedes	urbs
cōsul	homō	nāvis	pōns	vulnus
collis	hostis	nōmen	pars	virtūs

130. Examine the following :

1. Hieme labōrāmus, *in winter we work.*
2. Decem mēnsibus multās urbēs vidit, *within ten months he saw many cities.*
3. Prīmā lūce hostēs in fugam dedērunt, *at daybreak they put the enemy to flight.*

Observe that the ablatives **hieme**, **decem mēnsibus**, **prīmā lūce**, tell *when* or *within what time* the action of the verb took place, and that no preposition is used in Latin.

131. RULE. — **Ablative of Time.** — *Time when or within which is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.*

132.

VOCABULARY

nox, noctis, f. (gen. plur. noctium), <i>night.</i>	annus, ī, m., <i>year.</i>
hiems, hiemis, f., <i>winter.</i>	prīmus, a, um, <i>first.</i>
aestās, aestātis, f., <i>summer.</i>	decem, indecl., <i>ten.</i>
lūx, lūcis, f., <i>light, daylight.</i>	quattuor, indecl., <i>four.</i>
	multā nocte, <i>late at night.</i>

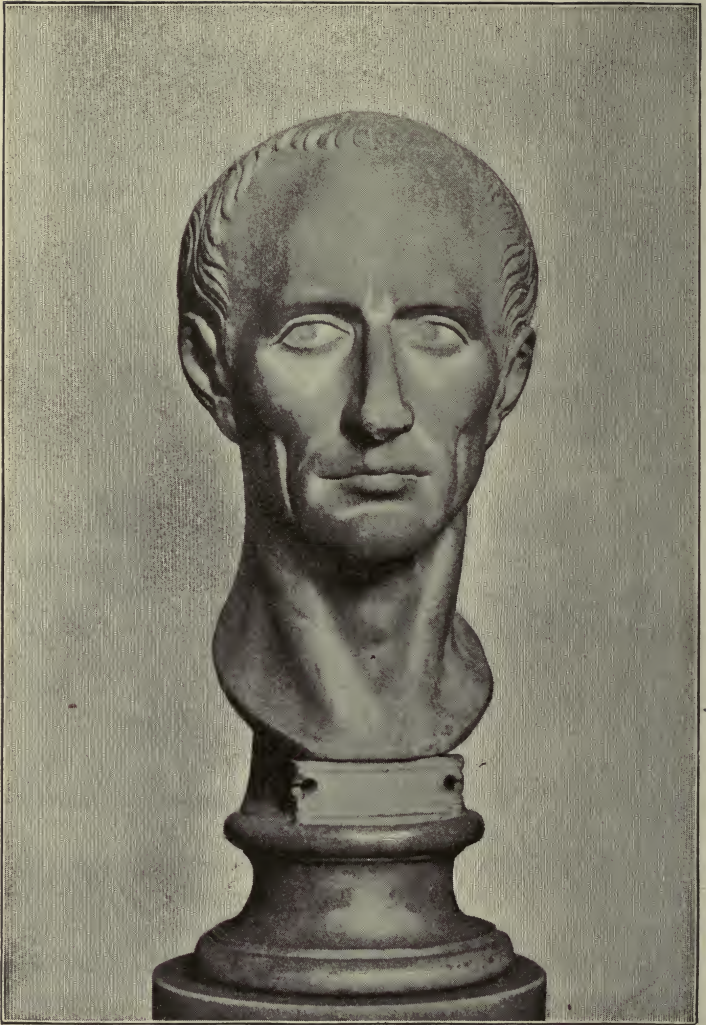
133.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Aestāte agrī pulchrī incolās urbis dēlectant.
 2. Prīmā lūce¹ multōs montēs vidimus. 3. Hostēs tēlis equitēs vulnerābant. 4. Quattuor annīs multa oppida hostium dux expugnāverat. 5. Cibī inopiā Gallī hieme labōrābant. 6. Multā nocte cōsul peditēs in castra convocābit. 7. Multās urbēs decem annīs dux Helvētiōrum occupāverat. 8. Prīmō annō bellī multa oppida expugnāverat. 9. Prīmā lūce hostēs in castris erant.

II. 1. He captured the city by-means-of his cavalry.
 2. At night the enemy hastened to go toward the Romans'

¹ Prīmā lūce, *at daybreak.*



Julius Caesar

(From the bust in the British Museum)

camp. 3. Within four years you will see many beautiful things.¹ 4. Night frightens the poor children. 5. At day-break we carried our weapons into the camp. 6. In winter the nights are long. 7. In ten years there are ten summers.

(READING SELECTION 446)

LESSON 19

READING LESSON

134.

JULIUS CAESAR

Julius Caesar is the greatest character in Roman history. He was great, not merely as a general, but also as an orator and statesman. He was born on the 12th of July, 100 B.C. He belonged to an old, aristocratic family, but at an early age allied himself with the party of the people.

After filling many minor political offices, at the age of forty-one he became consul, and formed a political alliance with Pompey and Crassus, known as the "First Triumvirate." The next year the government of Gaul was assigned to him, and it is the subjugation of this country that he describes in his Commentaries. These Gallic Commentaries have been read in schools for hundreds of years, and they establish conclusively his ability as a writer.

After spending eight years in Gaul, he was ordered by the Senate through the jealousy of Pompey to disband his army. Caesar refused, and, crossing the Rubicon, set out with his army to make himself the master of Rome. In the civil war that followed, Pompey at the head of the senatorial forces was defeated. This left Caesar the master of the government at Rome. As Dictator and Imperator for life he instituted many reforms that show his insight as

¹ The neuter plural *pulchra* means *beautiful things*.

a statesman. There were many Romans, however, who disliked Caesar's power. A conspiracy was formed, and Caesar was assassinated on March 15, 44 B.C.



Silver Coins of Caesar, showing Gallic Trophies

135.

THE HELVETIAN WAR

The Helvetii were people of Celtic origin who inhabited almost all that region now known as Switzerland.

In the year 58 B.C., incited by ambitious leaders, they decided to leave their homes and seize the more fertile lands to the southwest, lying nearer the Roman province in Gaul. It is to this uprising of the Helvetii that Caesar devotes the first thirty chapters of his first book of Gallic Commentaries. After two battles the Helvetii, being completely subdued by Caesar, were forced to return to their former territories.

The reading lessons that follow are adapted from the first ten chapters of Caesar's account of this Helvetian war.

136.

HINTS FOR TRANSLATION

I. Read the passage through several times in Latin, and gather as much of its meaning as possible.

2. Try to associate unfamiliar words with some related word that you already know.

3. Do not look up the meaning of a new word in the vocabulary until you have used every other means to get its meaning. After you have looked up its meaning, take time to fix it in your memory.

4. In trying to get the thought of a passage, follow strictly the Latin order, noticing particularly the endings of the words.

5. Translate into clear and idiomatic English.

CHAPTER I

READING LESSON

DESCRIPTION OF GAUL

(The student should consult the general vocabulary for words that have not been given in the special vocabularies, *but not till he has followed the hints given above, 136, 1-4.*)

137. Belgae¹ et Aquitānī et Celtae Galliam incolunt.² Rōmānī Celtās Gallōs appellant. Belgae sunt fortissimī (*the bravest*) et cum Germānīs saepe pugnant. Helvētīi sunt Celtārum fortissimī, quod (*because*) cum Germānīs continenter pugnant. Aquitānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pyrēnaeōs montēs et ad eam (*that*) partem Oceanī quae (*which*) est ad Hispāniam pertinet.

NOTE. — Learn the principal parts of all the verbs of the first and second conjugations thus far given in this book. Decline all nouns and adjectives.

¹ For this name and other proper names, see the map, page 22.

² Third person plural, present indicative, of *incolō*. Can you not infer its meaning from *incola*?

LESSON 20

PRESENT INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS. AGENCY WITH THE PASSIVE

138. Review 26, 3. A verb is in the Active Voice when it represents the subject as acting or being: *the farmer plows the field, the farmer lives happily*; in the Passive Voice when it represents the subject as acted upon: *the field is plowed by the farmer*.

139.

Paradigms

ACTIVE VOICE

FIRST CONJUGATION

	SINGULAR	PERSONAL ENDINGS
1. amō, <i>I love, am loving, do love</i>		-ō
2. amās, <i>you love, etc.</i>		-s
3. amat, <i>he loves, etc.</i>		-t

PLURAL

1. amāmus, <i>we love, etc.</i>		-mus
2. amātis, <i>you love, etc.</i>		-tis
3. amant, <i>they love, etc.</i>		-nt

PASSIVE VOICE

SINGULAR

1. amor, <i>I am loved, am being loved</i>		-r
2. amāris, amāre, <i>you are loved, etc.</i>		-ris, -re
3. amātur, <i>he is loved, etc.</i>		-tur

PLURAL

1. amāmur, <i>we are loved, etc.</i>		-mur
2. amāmini, <i>you are loved, etc.</i>		-mini
3. amantur, <i>they are loved, etc.</i>		-ntur

ACTIVE VOICE

SECOND CONJUGATION

SINGULAR	PERSONAL ENDINGS
1. moneō, <i>I advise, am advising, do advise</i>	-ō
2. monēs, <i>you advise, etc.</i>	-s
3. monet, <i>he advises, etc.</i>	-t
PLURAL	
1. monēmus, <i>we advise, etc.</i>	-mus
2. monētis, <i>you advise, etc.</i>	-tis
3. monent, <i>they advise, etc.</i>	-nt

PASSIVE VOICE

SINGULAR	
1. moneor, <i>I am advised, am being advised</i>	-r
2. monēris, monēre, <i>you are advised, etc.</i>	-ris, -re
3. monētur, <i>he is advised, etc.</i>	-tur
PLURAL	
1. monēmur, <i>we are advised, etc.</i>	-mur
2. monēmini, <i>you are advised, etc.</i>	-mini
3. monentur, <i>they are advised, etc.</i>	-ntur

1. Compare very carefully the English translations of the active and passive forms.
2. Review the active personal endings, and learn thoroughly the passive endings. They are the same for the present, imperfect, and future tenses.
3. Observe that these passive endings are added directly to the present stems **amā-** and **monē-**, except in the first person singular.

140. Conjugate the present active and passive, giving English translations, of the following:

laudō, *I praise*

videō, *I see*

vocō, *I call*

terreō, *I frighten*

141. Examine the following :

1. **Coniūrātī Caesarem necant**, *the conspirators kill Caesar.*
2. **Caesar ā coniūrātīs necātur**, *Caesar is being killed by the conspirators.*
3. **Caesar gladiō necātur**, *Caesar is being killed by (with) a sword.*

1. Observe the changes in turning active into passive :

- a. The object of the active verb becomes the subject of the passive ;
- b. The subject, *i.e.* the *agent* or *doer*, of the active verb is expressed in the passive by the ablative with **ā**.

2. Review 93, 94. Compare carefully the examples 2 and 3 above, and note that a preposition is used when that by which the action of the verb is done is a person, while none is used when that by which the action of the verb is done is a thing, not a voluntary agent, *i.e.* not a person.

142. RULE. — **Agency with the Passive Voice.** — *The personal agent with a passive verb (i.e. the person by whom something is done) is expressed by the ablative with ā or ab.*

143.

VOCABULARY

(Review the meanings of verbs in 100, 108.)

Caesar , aris, m., <i>Caesar.</i>	celeritās , ātis, f., <i>speed, quickness.</i>
legiō , ōnis, f., <i>legion</i> (about 5000 soldiers).	incitō , āre, āvī, ātus, <i>incite, encourage, arouse, rouse.</i>
necō , āre, āvī, ātus, <i>kill.</i>	ē , ex, ¹ prep. with abl., <i>out of, from.</i>
ā , ab, ¹ prep. with abl., <i>from, by.</i>	propter , prep. with acc., <i>on-account-of, for.</i>
ob , prep. with acc., <i>on-account-of, for.</i>	

¹ Before a word beginning with a vowel or *h* use **ab** or **ex**; use **ā** or **ē** before a consonant.

144.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Rōmānī hieme et aestāte cum hostibus pugnābant. 2. Tēlis Rōmānī hostēs in fugam dedērunt. 3. Quattuor annīs multās nāvis in marī viderant. 4. Cōpiās in castra multā nocte cōsul convocāvit. 5. Pōns in¹ flūmine erat. 6. Caede liberōrum miserōrum miserī sumus.

II. 1. In summer the days are long. 2. Caesar's cavalry took-possession-of the hill at daybreak. 3. There are many ships on the sea. 4. The Romans did not suffer from a lack of leaders.

145.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Laudat, laudātur; vidētis, vidēminī. 2. Incitant, incitantur; vocāmus, vocāmur. 3. Caesār mīlitēs convocat. 4. Mīlitēs ā Caesare convocantur. 5. Dux legiōnem ob² virtūtem laudat. 6. Legiō ā duce propter² virtūtem laudātur. 7. Hostēs celeritāte equitum terrentur. 8. Magna cibī cōpia ā mīlitibus in castra portātur. 9. Virtūte mīlitum incolae oppidī incitantur. 10. Ex agrīs frūmentum ā mīlitibus in hiberna portātur. 11. Multā nocte ā pedite gladiō vulnerātur.

II. 1. We are summoned; he is calling; he is called. 2. You (plur.) blame; you (plur.) are blamed. 3. The quickness of the Romans frightens the Gauls. 4. The Gauls are frightened by the quickness of the Romans. 5. Caesar encourages his soldiers. 6. The soldiers are encouraged by Caesar. 7. They are summoned from the mountains through the fields to the city.

¹ *over.*

² In expressions not covered by 118, footnote, **ob** or **propter** with the accusative is the normal way of expressing cause. **Ob** is used especially in connection with **rem** or **causam**.

LESSON 21

IMPERFECT AND FUTURE PASSIVE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS. ABLATIVE OF MANNER

146.

Paradigms

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

SINGULAR

1. amābar, *I was loved, was being loved*
2. amābāris, amābāre, *you were loved, etc.*
3. amābātur, *he was loved, etc.*

SINGULAR

1. monēbar, *I was advised, wds being advised*
2. monēbāris, monēbāre, *you were advised, etc.*
3. monēbātur, *he was advised, etc.*

PLURAL

1. amābāmur, *we were loved, etc.*
2. amābāmini, *you were loved, etc.*
3. amābantur, *they were loved, etc.*

PLURAL

1. monēbāmur, *we were advised, etc.*
2. monēbāmini, *you were advised, etc.*
3. monēbantur, *they were advised, etc.*

FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE

SINGULAR

1. amābor, *I shall be loved*
2. amāberis, amābere, *you will be loved*
3. amābitur, *he will be loved*

SINGULAR

1. monēbor, *I shall be advised*
2. monēberis, monēbere, *you will be advised*
3. monēbitur, *he will be advised*

PLURAL

1. amābimur, *we shall be loved*
2. amābiminī, *you will be loved*
3. amābuntur, *they will be loved*

PLURAL

1. monēbimur, *we shall be advised*
2. monēbiminī, *you will be advised*
3. monēbuntur, *they will be advised*

Observe

1. That the personal endings are the same as those of the present passive (139).
2. That the vowel before these endings is **a** in the imperfect, and that the vowel changes in the future. What is the characteristic vowel of the future?
3. That the imperfect and future passive are formed on the present stems **amā-** and **monē-** by adding **-bar** and **-bor** respectively. Review 86, 87.

147. Examine the following:

1. Agricola cum cūrā arat, *the farmer plows with care (carefully).*
 2. Agricola magnā cum¹ cūrā arat
 3. Agricola magnā cūrā arat
- } *the farmer plows with great care (very carefully).*

Observe

1. That the Latin expressions **cum cūrā**, **magnā cum cūrā**, **magnā cūrā**, express the manner of the action of the verb (*i.e.* how the action of the verb is done).
2. That **magnā cum cūrā** and **magnā cūrā** are translated in the same way.
3. That these Latin expressions may be translated by adverbs in English.

¹ Notice that the *monosyllabic* preposition is placed between the adjective and the noun.

148. RULE. — Ablative of Manner. — *Manner is expressed by the ablative with the preposition cum, but cum may be omitted if an adjective is used with the ablative.*

149.

VOCABULARY

studium, ī, n., <i>zeal, eagerness.</i>	imperātor, ōris, m., <i>general, commander in chief.</i>
cūra, ae, f., <i>care.</i>	
obses, obsidis, m. and f., <i>hostage, pledge.</i>	conlocō, āre, āvī, ātus, <i>place, station.</i>
multitūdō, multitūdinis, f., <i>multitude, crowd.</i>	complēō, complēre, complēvī, complētus, <i>fill up, complete.</i>
imperium, ī, n., <i>command, power.</i>	diū, adv., <i>long, for a long time.</i>

150.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Equitum celeritāte Rōmānī terrentur. 2. Caesar lēgātō equum pulchrum dat. 3. Lēgātō ā Caesare equus pulcher datur. 4. Hieme frūmentī inopiā hostēs labōrābant. 5. Magna urbis pars ā Gallīs occupātur. 6. Militēs ā rēge in hiberna convocantur.

II. 1. We suffered from many wounds. 2. At night the consul took-possession-of the mountain. 3. The lazy boys are not praised by my father. 4. The Gauls are frightened by the speed and bravery of the soldiers.

151.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Laudābat, laudābātur; vidēbunt, vidēbuntur. 2. Portābāmus, portābāmur; superābis, superāberis. 3. In agrīs labōrābunt magnō cum studiō. 4. In castrīs cum cūrā legiō conlocābitur. 5. In colle diū cum hostibus dīmīcābant. 6. Oppidum ab imperātōre magnō studiō oppugnābātur. 7. Caesarī imperium dabitur. 8. Urbem equitum multitūdine complēvit. 9. Liberōs multōs obsidēs Caesarī Gallī dederant. 10. Equitēsne ā duce laudābuntur?

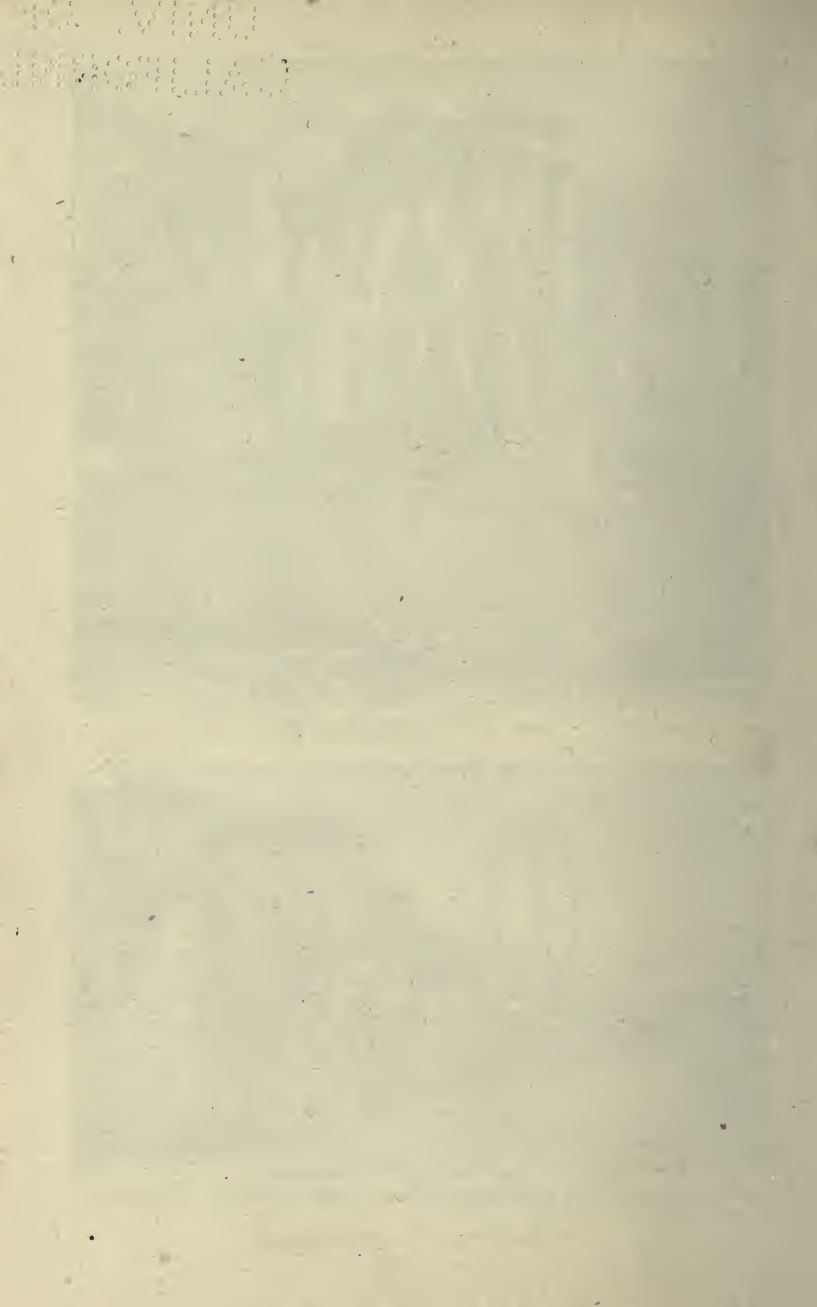


Temple of Saturn and the Rostra



Basilica Julia in foreground, Temple of Castor and Pollux in center

Recent Views in the Roman Forum



II. 1. You will see, you will be seen. 2. Are we praising? he will be blamed. 3. They were wounded by the infantry with swords. 4. At daybreak the Romans fought eagerly. 5. A large part of the arms was carried very carefully into camp. 6. Many soldiers were seen near the bridge.

(READING SELECTION 447)

LESSON 22

PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT PASSIVE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS

152. Review 39, 81, 86. The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect passive of all Latin verbs have compound forms. They employ the perfect passive participle and the present, imperfect, and future tenses respectively of the auxiliary verb **sum**. The participle is like an adjective in form and syntax, and its endings change to agree with the gender and number of the subject of the verb.

Paradigms

PERFECT PASSIVE OF **amō**

	SINGULAR		PLURAL			
1.	amātus,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sum, } I \text{ have been loved,} \\ \phantom{\text{sum, }} I \text{ was loved} \end{array} \right.$	amātī,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sumus} \\ \\ \text{estis} \\ \text{sunt} \end{array} \right.$		
2.					a, um	ae, a
3.						

PLUPERFECT PASSIVE

1.	amātus,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{eram, } I \text{ had been} \\ \phantom{\text{eram, }} \text{loved} \end{array} \right.$	amātī,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{erāmus} \\ \\ \text{erātis} \\ \text{erant} \end{array} \right.$		
2.					a, um	ae, a
3.						

FUTURE PERFECT PASSIVE

SINGULAR		PLURAL		
1.	amātus, a, um	erō, <i>I shall have been loved</i>	amātī, ae, a	erimus
2.		eris		eritis
3.		erit		erunt

- In the same way, form and conjugate these same tenses of *moneō*, *videō*, *portō*, giving English meanings.
- Note carefully that the participle is declined like *bonus*, and that its endings conform to the gender and number of the subject; for example,

I (a girl) have been loved, amāta sum
we (girls) have been loved, amātae sumus
the town had been seen, oppidum visum erat
the girl has been loved, puella amāta est

- For the difference in meaning between the perfect and the imperfect passive see 92, 2.

153.

VOCABULARY

amicitia, ae, f., <i>friendship, alliance.</i>	civis, civis, m. and f., <i>citizen.</i>
pāx, pācis, f., <i>peace.</i>	civitās, ātis, f., <i>state, citizenship.</i>
mēnsis, mēnsis, m., <i>month.</i>	cōfirmō, āre, āvi, ātus, <i>strengthen, establish.</i>
iter, itineris, n., <i>march, road, journey (501).</i>	contineō, continēre, continui, <i>contentus, hold together, restrain, hem in, bound.</i>
ex itinere, <i>on the march.</i>	

154.

EXERCISES

- I. Vulnerātī erātis; vidēbāmus; incitātae sunt.
- Laudātane est? laudātī erant; culpātae erunt. 3. Pāx

cum multis civitatibus est confirmata. 4. Civēs ob amicitiam laudāvimus. 5. Gallī montibus et flūminibus continēbantur. 6. Multa oppida decem mēnsibus occupata erant. 7. Magna Helvētiōrum urbs ex itinere est expugnata. 8. Multum frūmentum ex agris in hiberna portatum erat. 9. Caesar milites in castris habebat. 10. Multī hominēs ā Rōmānīs erant necatī. 11. Multos civis in Italiā vidimus. 12. Urbs ab imperatore magnō cum studio expugnata est.

II. 1. She was restrained; you (plur.) had been blamed. 2. We (fem. plur.) shall have been pleased; they have been summoned. 3. Peace and friendship have been established with the Gauls. 4. The citizens had been aroused by their leaders. 5. The girl was carefully carried into the city. 6. The soldiers were praised by the general for their bravery. 7. Caesar attacked a town of the Helvetians on the march. 8. The cavalry had been wounded by the weapons of the enemy.



Civēs Rōmānī

LESSON 23

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION. THREE
TERMINATIONS. ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION

155. Adjectives of the third declension are divided into three classes according as they have in the nominative singular either one, two, or three terminations.

acer, sharp, keen, eager

Stem *ācri-*

Base *ācr-*

SINGULAR

	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
NOM.	<i>ācer</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācre</i>
GEN.	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācris</i>
DAT.	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>
ACC.	<i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācre</i>
ABL.	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>

PLURAL

NOM.	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācria</i>
GEN.	<i>ācrium</i>	<i>ācrium</i>	<i>ācrium</i>
DAT.	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>
ACC.	<i>ācris, ēs</i>	<i>ācris, ēs</i>	<i>ācria</i>
ABL.	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>

- I. Note that adjectives of this declension have *-i-* stems, and that the ablative singular ends in *-ī*. Review 122.

156. Examine the following :

- I. *Helvētīī Gallōs virtūte superant, the Helvetii surpass the Gauls in valor.*

2. *Vir nōmine, nōn factis, amicus erat, the man was a friend in name, (but) not in deeds.*

Observe that the ablatives *virtūte, nōmine, factis*, tell in *what respect* the meaning of the verb or noun is true; the first sentence tells that the Helvetii surpass the Gauls in respect to *valor*, not in size, speed, or in any other respect.

157. RULE. — Ablative of Specification. — *The ablative of specification tells in what respect the meaning of a verb, noun, or adjective, applies. No preposition is used.*

158.

VOCABULARY

altus, a, um, high, deep.

angustus, a, um, narrow, contracted.

noster, nōstra, nostrum, our, ours.

ācer, ācris, ācre, keen, sharp, eager, fierce.

equester, equestris, equestre, of the cavalry; cavalry (adj.).

finis, finis, m., end; (plur.) boundary, territory.

finitimus, a, um, neighboring, adjoining; finitimī, ōrum, m., neighbors.

quod, conj., because.

-que, and, an enclitic, always attached to the second of two words connected.

magnitūdō, inis, f., greatness, size.

159.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. *Dux filium propter virtūtem laudāverat.* 2. *Pāx quattuor mēnsibus ā Caesare cum multis cīvitatibus erat cōfirmāta.* 3. *Multā nocte cōpiae ex agrīs in castra convocābantur.* 4. *Militēs hieme in hiberna convocāti sunt.* 5. *Multī incolae gladiīs equitum vulnerātī erant.*

II. 1. Why were the Helvetii aroused? 2. The town was captured on the march. 3. At daybreak the general gave his soldiers food. 4. The consul suffered from lack of cavalry.

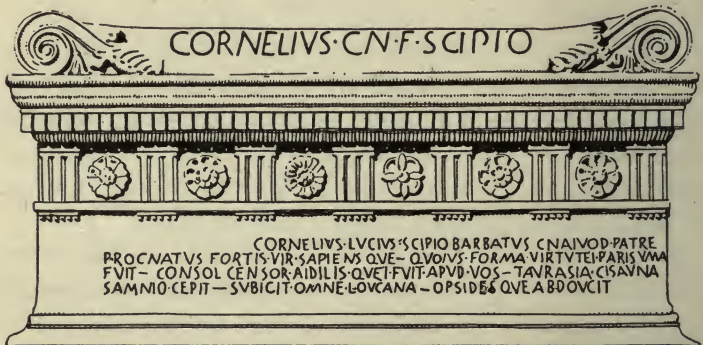
160.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Castra Caesaris in Helvētiōrum finibus erant. 2. Iter per finēs nostrōs angustum erat. 3. Rōmāni virtūte, nōn magnitūdine corporis, Gallōs superābant. 4. Equestrēs cōpiae hostium magnā cum virtūte pugnāverant. 5. Flūmina Galliae angusta et alta erant. 6. Equitēs ā Caesare laudātī sunt, quod hostēs celeritāte superāvērunt. 7. Acrēs peritaeque¹ erant cōpiae cōsulis. 8. Peditēs Caesaris proeliō acrēs erant. 9. Cūr Helvētīi ā ducibus incitātī sunt? Quod altis montibus et flūminibus lātis continēbantur. 10. Hostēs equestrī proeliō superātī erant.

II. 1. The battle with our cavalry was keen. 2. Have you seen many deep rivers? 3. We surpass our neighbors in cavalry forces. 4. There is a narrow road through our neighbors' territory. 5. The general was wounded in his foot. 6. The Helvetii seized many towns because they fought with great bravery.

¹ Notice to which word *-que* is added. Translate *-que* before the word to which it is attached.



Sarcophagus of one of the Scipios, showing Latin Inscription

LESSON 24

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION. TWO TERMINATIONS AND ONE TERMINATION. DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

161. Many adjectives of the third declension have only two separate forms in the nominative, the masculine and feminine being alike in all cases. Except comparatives (see 257), they are all declined like the following :

facilis, *easy*

Stem **facili-**

Base **facil-**

SINGULAR

Masculine and Feminine

Neuter

NOM. **facilis**

facile

GEN. **facilis**

facilis

DAT. **facilī**

facilī

ACC. **facilem**

facile

ABL. **facilī**

facilī

PLURAL

NOM. **facilēs**

facilia

GEN. **facilium**

facilium

DAT. **facilibus**

facilibus

ACC. **facilīs (ēs)**

facilia

ABL. **facilibus**

facilibus

Other adjectives of this declension have one form for the nominative in all genders. They are declined like the following :

audāx, *bold*

Stem **audāci-**

Base **audāc-**

SINGULAR

Masculine and Feminine

NOM.	audāx
GEN.	audācis
DAT.	audācī
ACC.	audācem
ABL.	audācī (e)

Neuter

audāx
audācis
audācī
audāx
audācī (e)

PLURAL

NOM.	audācēs
GEN.	audācium
DAT.	audācibus
ACC.	audācīs (ēs)
ABL.	audācibus

audācia
audācium
audācibus
audācia
audācibus

Observe

1. That all adjectives of the third declension have one form for all genders in all cases except the nominative and accusative.
2. That adjectives of the third declension ending in *-er* have three terminations, those in *-is* two, and all others, except comparatives, one.
3. That they have *-i-* stems, and that those of two and three terminations have only *-ī* in the ablative singular.

162. Examine the following :

1. **Filius patrī similis erat**, *the son was like his father.*
2. **Locus castris idōneus erat**, *the place was suitable for a camp.*

Observe that the datives **patri** and **castris** are related to the adjectives **similis** and **idōneus**.

163. RULE.—**Dative with Adjectives.**—*The dative is used with adjectives denoting Likeness, Fitness, Nearness, Service, Inclination, and the like, and also with their opposites.*

164.

VOCABULARY

fortis , e, <i>brave, strong.</i>	omnis , e, <i>all, every, the whole.</i>
similis , e, <i>like, similar.</i>	brevis , e, <i>brief, short.</i>
dissimilis , e, <i>dissimilar,</i> <i>unlike.</i>	pār , gen. paris , <i>equal (to).</i>
facilis , e, <i>easy.</i>	vetus , ¹ gen. veteris , <i>old, ancient.</i>
difficilis , e, <i>difficult.</i>	gēns , gentis , f., <i>race, nation.</i>
	populus , i, m., <i>people.</i>

165.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Helvētīi flūminibus altīs continēbantur. 2. Ad flūmen iter angustum erat. 3. Cūr finitimī nostrī terrentur? Quod cum Rōmānis pācem et amicitīam cōfirmāvimus. 4. Caesar equestribus proeliis Gallōs superāvit. 5. Peditēs nostrī altīs flūminibus terrēbantur. 6. Gallōs magnā cum celeritāte in fugam dedērunt.

II. 1. There are many beautiful ships on the sea. 2. Our cavalry were fierce in battle. 3. Why were they frightened? Because they saw many deep rivers and high mountains. 4. The bridges have been taken-possession-of by the enemy.

166.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Multae et fortēs erant in Galliā gentēs. 2. Caesar veterēs militēs amābat, quod bellō fortēs erant. 3. Militēs

¹ This is not an -i- stem ; its ablative singular is formed in -e.

fortēs oppidum occupāverant. 4. Iter ad montem facile est. 5. Brevī tempore magnam hostium partem necāverant. 6. Helvētīi multitudīne hominum populō Rōmānō nōn erant parēs. 7. Puer fortis ā milite vulnerātus est. 8. Omnēs incolae ex oppidō ad collem convocantur. 9. Caesar multīs imperātōribus dissimilis erat. 10. Finitimī nostrī omnēs gentēs virtūte superant.

II. 1. In every town we shall see many children. 2. The boy was like the girl in size. 3. We carried the grain into the town by an easy road. 4. All the tribes were brave and¹ faithful. 5. In winter the field near the river will not be fit for a camp. 6. The Roman people² was not conquered by the brave Helvetii.

(READING SELECTION 448)

LESSON 25

READING LESSON

CHAPTER II

THE AMBITIOUS DESIGNS OF THE HELVETII UNDER THE LEADERSHIP OF ORGETORIX

167. Orgetorīx, quī³ prīnceps erat Helvētīōrum, conīūrā-tionem nōbilitātis fēcīt (*formed*) et cum finitimīs civitātibus pācem amicitiamque cōfirmāvit. Helvētīi undique nātūrā locī continentur, ūnā ex parte⁴ flūmine Rhēnō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit,⁵ alterā ex parte monte Iūrā, tertiā ex parte flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētīīs dīvidit. Quā dē causā⁶ finēs Helvētīi angustōs habēbant prō⁷ multitudīne hominum, et ēmigrāre⁸ cupiēbant.⁹

¹ Use -que. ² *populus Rōmānus*. ³ The relative pronoun *who, which, that*. ⁴ *ūnā ex parte, on one side*. ⁵ Third person singular of *dīvidō*. ⁶ *Quā dē causā, for this reason*. ⁷ *in proportion to*. ⁸ *to emigrate*. ⁹ Third person plural imperfect of *cupiō*.

LESSON 26

PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT OF **sum**.
REVIEW OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS

168. Review 81.

PRIN. PARTS : **sum, esse, fui, futūrus**

PERFECT	PLUPERFECT SINGULAR	FUTURE PERFECT
1. <i>fui, I have been, I was</i>	<i>fueram, I had been</i>	<i>fuerō, I shall have been</i>
2. <i>fuisti</i>	<i>fuerās</i>	<i>fueris</i>
3. <i>fuit</i>	<i>fuerat</i>	<i>fuerit</i>
	PLURAL	
1. <i>fuimus</i>	<i>fuerāmus</i>	<i>fuerimus</i>
2. <i>fuistis</i>	<i>fuerātis</i>	<i>fueritis</i>
3. <i>fuērunt</i>	<i>fuerant</i>	<i>fuerint</i>

1. Observe that the perfect stem is **fu-**, and that the pluperfect and future perfect are formed regularly from this stem by adding **-eram** and **-erō**.
2. Are the personal endings regular ?

169. The following verbs of the first and second conjugations have been introduced in the preceding lessons. Review carefully their meanings and principal parts. Why must one know the principal parts of a verb ?

<i>pugnō</i>	<i>conlocō</i>	<i>videō</i>	<i>laudō</i>	<i>superō</i>	<i>mātūrō</i>
<i>expugnō</i>	<i>cōfirmō</i>	<i>contineō</i>	<i>culpō</i>	<i>armō</i>	<i>incitō</i>
<i>oppugnō</i>	<i>comparō</i>	<i>compleō</i>	<i>servō</i>	<i>occupō</i>	<i>labōrō</i>
<i>vocō</i>	<i>augeō</i>	<i>moveō</i>	<i>dēlectō</i>	<i>vulnerō</i>	<i>necō</i>
<i>convocō</i>	<i>habeō</i>	<i>moneō</i>	<i>dō</i>	<i>dīmīcō</i>	<i>terreō</i>
			<i>portō</i>		

1. What is the force of **con (com)** in a compound verb ?

170. Review carefully 99, 104, 105, 106. With the outline given below as a suggestion, complete the synopsis of *incitō*. In a similar way, write out a synopsis of *habeō* in the second person and *augeō* in the third person.

SYNOPSIS OF THE INDICATIVE, THIRD PERSON

PRIN. PARTS: *incitō, āre, āvī, ātus, arouse, urge on*

		ACTIVE	PASSIVE	
Present Stem <i>incitā-</i>	PRES.	<i>Sing.</i> <i>incitat</i>	<i>incitātur</i>	} Participial Stem <i>incitāt-</i>
		<i>Plur.</i> <i>incitant</i>	<i>incitantur</i>	
	IMP.	<i>Sing.</i> <i>incitābat</i>	<i>incitābātur</i>	
<i>Plur.</i> <i>incitābant</i>		<i>incitābantur</i>		
FUT.	<i>Sing.</i>			
	<i>Plur.</i>			
Perfect Stem <i>incitāv-</i>	PERF.	<i>Sing.</i>	}	
		<i>Plur.</i>		
	PLUP.	<i>Sing.</i>		
		<i>Plur.</i>		
FUT.	<i>Sing.</i>			
PERF.	<i>Plur.</i>			

171.

VOCABULARY

vāstō, āre, āvī, ātus, lay *reliquus, a, um, the-rest-of,*
waste, ravage. *remaining.*

libertās, ātis, f., liberty, free- *potēns, potentis, able, power-*
dom. *ful.*

prō, prep. with abl., before, in behalf of, for.

172.

EXERCISES

I. 1. *Fuerātis; fuerimus; fuistis.* 2. *Gallōrum finēs ab equitibus vāstātī erant.* 3. *Reliquī hostēs prō libertāte diū pugnāverant.* 4. *Bélgae nāvibus erant potētēs.*

5. Paucis annis bello finitimis Helvetium superaverant. 6. Pro feminis liberisque magno cum studio pugnabant. 7. Reliquae in Gallia gentes a nostris finitimis incitatae sunt. 8. Caesar cum quattuor legionibus fines Helvetiorum vastare maturabit. 9. Legionem populi Romani magnitudine corporis Gallorum terrebantur. 10. Servus domino virtute erat similis. 11. Altis montibus et latis fluminibus oppidum continetur.

II. 1. They saw a few horsemen near the bridge. 2. Because of the war, the fields of the Gauls have been laid waste. 3. The legions of the Roman people were brave and skillful. 4. The foot-soldiers were equal to the cavalry in speed. 5. The citizens will fight for the general. 6. They put the rest of the enemy to flight. 7. There were many powerful tribes in Gaul.

LESSON 27

THIRD CONJUGATION. PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE

THIRD CONJUGATION

173.

*dūcō, I lead*PRIN. PARTS: *dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus*

Learn the present, imperfect, and future, active and passive, of *dūcō* (518).

1. Observe that the personal endings are the same as those used in the first and second conjugations (43, 139).
2. Compare the present of *dūcō* with the present of *moneō* and *amō* in respect to the vowel that precedes the personal ending.

3. Are the imperfect tenses of the first, second, and third conjugations formed and conjugated in the same way?
4. Compare the future of *dūcō* with the future of *moneō*, and notice the difference in formation.
5. Observe that the characteristic vowel of this conjugation is *short -e-*, that of the second conjugation *long -ē-*.
6. Like *dūcō* conjugate the present, imperfect, and future tenses, active and passive, of *mittō*, *send*, and *vincō*, *conquer*.

174.

VOCABULARY

<i>dūcō</i> , ere, <i>dūxī</i> , ductus, <i>lead</i> .	<i>gerō</i> , gerere, gessi, gestus,
<i>mittō</i> , ere, <i>mīsī</i> , missus, <i>send</i> .	<i>carry on, wage</i> .
<i>vincō</i> , ere, <i>vīcī</i> , victus, <i>con-</i> <i>quer</i> .	<i>incolō</i> , ere, incolui, —, <i>in-</i> <i>habit</i> .
<i>relinquō</i> , ere, <i>reliquī</i> , relictus, <i>leave behind, leave</i> .	<i>neque . . . neque, neither . . .</i> <i>nor</i> .
<i>contendō</i> , ere, <i>contendī</i> , con- <i>tentum, struggle, strive,</i> <i>hasten, hurry, march</i> .	<i>saepe, adv., often, frequently</i> .

175.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Dux castra movēbit, quod inopia frūmentī in agrīs est. 2. Equitēs nostrī fābulīs Gallōrum sunt incitātī. 3. Belgae virtūte Helvētiīs similēs erant. 4. Multae Gallōrum gentēs multitūdine hominum erant potentēs. 5. Paucī vīcī ab hostibus vāstātī erant. 6. Omnēs prō libertāte magnō studiō pugnābimus.

II. 1. The rest of the Gauls were powerful in arms. 2. Is a son always like his father? 3. In a short time the village will be like a camp. 4. The general praised the old soldiers for their bravery.

176.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Dūcunt; dūcent; dūcēbat. 2. Mittimus; mittēbantur; mittēbar. 3. Vincēmur; vincēs; dūcēbātis. 4. Belgae bellum longum cum populō Rōmānō gerēbant. 5. Helvētīi saepe cum finitimīs contendēbant. 6. Hostium cōpiae trāns flūmen relinquuntur. 7. In castrīs erant neque tēla neque cibus. 8. Helvētīi magnō proeliō ā Caesare vincuntur. 9. Imperātor per finēs Gallōrum contrā Belgās multās legiōnēs mittit. 10. Caesar cum quattuor legiōnibus in Galliam contendēbat. 11. Nāvēs contrā īnsulae incolās mittentur. 12. Gallī equestribus cōpiīs Rōmānōs superābant.

II. 1. We shall conquer; they are sending; you (plur.) are being led. 2. We are left behind; they will be sent; you (sing.) will be led. 3. He will neither send nor carry food into the city. 4. The Helvetii inhabit the mountains of Gaul. 5. Many children were left in camp. 6. The Roman people were waging war with the Helvetii. 7. Four legions will be sent by the consul into Gaul.

(READING SELECTION 449)

LESSON 28

VERBS IN -iō. THIRD CONJUGATION COMPLETED

177. Many verbs of the third conjugation end in *iō* in the first person singular of the present indicative active.

capiō, take

PRIN. PARTS: *capiō, capere, cēpī, captus*

Learn the present, imperfect, and future, active and passive, of *capiō* (520).

1. Observe that the conjugation of *capiō* differs from that of *dūcō* in the present tense only in two forms. What is the difference?

2. In what respect do the imperfect and future of **capiō** differ from **dūcō**?
3. Like **capiō** conjugate these tenses of **fugiō**, *flee*, and **iaciō**, *hurl*.

178. Review 92, 98, 106, 152. *The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect, active and passive, of all Latin verbs are formed and conjugated in the same way.*

1. Learn the conjugation of the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect, active and passive, of **dūcō** and **capiō** (518, 520).
2. Write a synopsis (170) of **iaciō**, *hurl*, in the third person of the indicative.

179.

VOCABULARY

iaciō , <i>iacere</i> , iēcī , iactus , <i>throw, hurl.</i>	interficiō , <i>interficere</i> , interfēcī , interfectus , <i>kill.</i>
capiō , <i>capere</i> , cēpī , captus , <i>take, seize, capture, form.</i>	trādūcō (trāns + dūcō), <i>ere</i> , trādūxī , trāductus , <i>lead</i> <i>over, transport.</i>
fugiō , <i>fugere</i> , fūgī , —, <i>flee</i> , <i>run away.</i>	cōnsilium , ī , <i>n.</i> , <i>advice, pru-</i> <i>dence, plan.</i>
faciō , <i>facere</i> , fēcī , factus , <i>do</i> , <i>make</i> ; iter facere , <i>march</i> ; proelium facere , <i>fight a</i> <i>battle.</i>	moenia , moenium , <i>n.</i> (<i>plur.</i>), <i>walls, fortifications.</i>

180.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. *Equitēs peditēs nōn relinquēt.* 2. *Neque pedibus neque equitibus sed nāvibus contendunt.* 3. *Estne iter ad oppidum facile?* 4. *Rōmānī in hostium finēs multās legiōnēs mittēbant.* 5. *Decem mēnsibus multae gentēs ā cōsule vincentur.*

II. 1. *The Helvetii often carried on war with their*

neighbors. 2. At daybreak the soldiers had been led into the city. 3. The Gauls were conquered by Caesar. 4. Did you send the messenger to the general?

181.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Capiuntur; interficiēris; fugiēmus. 2. Trādūcīmur; capimur; fugiēbātis. 3. Caesar in Helvētiōrum finēs iter¹ faciet. 4. Rōmānī ab hostibus cōpiam frūmentī capiēbant. 5. Equitēs magnā cum celeritāte in montēs fugiēbant. 6. Multā nocte paucī peditēs interfectī erant. 7. Hostēs tēla in moenia nostra iēcērunt. 8. Imperātor propter cōsiliū proeli lēgātum laudāvit. 9. Gallī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce mīsērunt. 10. Cōsul ad flūmen lātum proelium fēcit. 11. Multi equitēs ā cōpiīs nostrīs interficiuntur.

II. 1. We shall flee; they were killed; it had been taken. 2. You (plur.) were throwing; she has been seized. 3. All the inhabitants fled from the city into the forests. 4. The general's plan was a good one.² 5. The Helvetii will march³ out of their⁴ territory. 6. In the winter Caesar used⁵ to form his plans.

¹ iter faciō, march. ² was a good one = was good. ³ march = make a march. ⁴ Omit. ⁵ used to form: use the imperfect of capiō.



*Graffito, or Drawing, from the
Palatine Walls, Rome*

(Possibly written by a slave who had been made to do a turn at the mill as a punishment. The translation is: "Toil away, little donkey, as I have toiled, and it will do you good.")

LABORAS SEI QUOMODO EGOLABORAVI
FIPRODERITIBI

LESSON 29

PRESENT INFINITIVE ACTIVE AND PASSIVE. THE
INFINITIVE USED AS IN ENGLISH

182. PRESENT INFINITIVE

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
FIRST CONJ.	amāre, <i>to love</i>	amārī, <i>to be loved</i>
SECOND CONJ.	monēre, <i>to advise</i>	monērī, <i>to be advised</i>
THIRD CONJ.	dūcere, <i>to lead</i>	dūcī, <i>to be led</i>
	capere, <i>to take</i>	capī, <i>to be taken</i>
FOURTH CONJ.	audīre, <i>to hear</i>	audīrī, <i>to be heard</i>

1. The present infinitive active of all verbs has appeared as the second principal part of each verb given (86).
2. Observe that the present passive is formed from the present active by changing final *-e* to *-ī*, except in the third conjugation, which changes final *-ere* to *-ī*.

183. Examine the following :

1. Mātūrat militēs convocāre, *he hastens to summon the soldiers.*
 2. Laudārī est grātum, *to be praised is pleasant.*
 3. Incolās armārī iubet, *he orders the inhabitants to be armed.*
 4. Omnēs primī esse cupimus, *we all wish to be first.*
 5. Dēbet interficī, *he ought to be killed.*
 6. Fortis esse dicitur, *he is said to be brave.*
 7. Filiōs bonōs esse cupimus, *we wish our sons to be good.*
- a. These examples show that the infinitive in Latin is often used as it is in English.
- b. In 2, the infinitive is subject of *est*. In 1, 4, 5, 6, the infinitive completes the meaning of the main verb, and is called the *complementary infinitive*.

- c. In 3, observe that *incolās*, the subject of the infinitive, is accusative. So *filiōs* in 7. In 4, note that the predicate adjective *primī* agrees with the subject of the main verb, *cupimus*, and is therefore nominative. In 7, the predicate adjective agrees with the subject of the infinitive and is therefore accusative.

184. RULES OF SYNTAX

1. **Subject of Infinitive.** — *The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative.*

2. **Complementary Infinitive.** — *Verbs signifying to be willing, determine, be able, dare, begin, cease, be accustomed, etc., are used with an infinitive (complementary infinitive) without subject accusative, to indicate another action of the subject of the verb of willing, determining, etc.*

3. **Predicate Adjective with Infinitive.** — *A predicate adjective with a complementary infinitive agrees with the subject of the main verb.*

185.

VOCABULARY

dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus, say, speak, tell.

iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussus, order, bid.

dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbuī, dēbitus, owe, ought.

cupiō, cupere, cupivī (iī), cupītus, wish, desire.

cōstituō, cōstituere, cōstituī, cōstitutus, place, station, determine, appoint.

parātus, a, um (parō), prepared, ready. [name.

appellō, āre, āvī, ātus, call,

auxilium, ī, n., aid, help.

numerus, ī, m., number.

186.

EXERCISES

- I. 1. *Vir perītus esse dēbet.* 2. *Pater filium fortem esse cupit.* 3. *Helvētīi lēgātōs dē pāce ad Caesarem mittere parātī sunt.* 4. *Difficile est gentēs potentēs superāre.*

5. Helvētiī, inopiā cibī permōtī (*influenced*), pācem facere cupiēbant. 6. Magnum nāvium numerum parāre Gallī cōstituērunt. 7. Caesar lēgātum auxilium mittere iussit. 8. Tuus amicus appellārī dicitur. 9. Imperātor oppidum ex itinere oppugnāre cōstituerat. 10. Caesar cōstituit cum Helvētiis, incolis Galliae, bellum gerere. 11. Cōpiae hostium magnae esse dicēbantur. 12. Cōsul nūntium cum decem equitibus in Galliam contendere iubēbit.

II. 1. It was easy to capture the town. 2. The enemy did not wish to leave their baggage in camp. 3. The girl ought to be skillful. 4. Do you wish to give your father a book? 5. Caesar ordered the legion to storm the town. 6. The fortifications are said to be high. 7. We ought to be brave and good. 8. The soldiers desire to be praised.

LESSON 30

READING LESSON

CHAPTER III

PREPARATIONS OF ORGETORIX AND THE HELVETII

187. Helvētiī auctōritāte Orgetorigis permōtī¹ iūmentōrum et carrōrum magnum numerum cōpīamque frūmentī comparāre cōstituērunt. In² tertium annum profectiōnem in prōvinciam Rōmānam lēge cōfirmāvērunt, et ad finitīmās civitātēs Orgetorigem lēgātum mīsērunt. Casticus Sēquanus, cuius (*whose*) pater ā populō Rōmānō amicus appellātus erat, et Dumnorīx Haeduus, prīncipēs in suis (*their*) civitātibus, auxilium dedērunt. Dumnorīgī Orgetorīx filiam in mātrimōnium dedit. Itaque hī (*these*) trēs prīncipēs potentium civitātum inter sē³ iūsiūrandum dedērunt, et Galliae imperium obtinēre cupiēbant.

¹ See 186 I, 5. ² *for*. ³ *inter sē*, *one another* (literally, *among themselves*).

LESSON 31

THE DEMONSTRATIVE *is*. *idem*

188. *Is, ea, id*

As adjective, *this, that*; plur., *these, those*.

As pronoun, *this, that, he, she, it*; plur., *these, those, they*.

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	<i>is</i>	<i>ea</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>eī, iī</i>	<i>eae</i>	<i>ea</i>
GEN.	<i>eius</i>	<i>eius</i>	<i>eius</i>	<i>eōrum</i>	<i>eārum</i>	<i>eōrum</i>
DAT.	<i>eī</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>
ACC.	<i>eum</i>	<i>eam</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>eōs</i>	<i>eās</i>	<i>ea</i>
ABL.	<i>eō</i>	<i>eā</i>	<i>eō</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>

I. In what cases do the endings differ from those of *bonus* (62)? The stem is *-e-* or *-i-*.

189. *idem (is + dem), the same*

	SINGULAR		
	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
NOM.	<i>īdem</i>	<i>éadem</i>	<i>idem</i>
GEN.	<i>eiusdem</i>	<i>eiusdem</i>	<i>eiusdem</i>
DAT.	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>
ACC.	<i>eundem</i>	<i>eandem</i>	<i>idem</i>
ABL.	<i>eōdem</i>	<i>eādem</i>	<i>eōdem</i>
	PLURAL		
	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
NOM.	<i>eīdem (īdem)</i>	<i>eaedem</i>	<i>éadem</i>
GEN.	<i>eōrundem</i>	<i>eārundem</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>
DAT.	<i>eīsdem (īsdem)</i>	<i>eīsdem (īsdem)</i>	<i>eīsdem (īsdem)</i>
ACC.	<i>eōsdem</i>	<i>eāsdem</i>	<i>éadem</i>
ABL.	<i>eīsdem (īsdem)</i>	<i>eīsdem (īsdem)</i>	<i>eīsdem (īsdem)</i>

1. Observe that, in **idem**, **dem** is uninflected, but **is** is declined regularly except for a few consonant changes before **dem**.

190. Examine the following :

1. **Is miles laudātur**, *that soldier is praised.*
2. **Eum laudant**, *they praise that (man), i.e. him.*
3. **Amicum eius laudāmus**, *we praise his friend (i.e. the friend of him).*
4. **Amicum eorum laudāmus**, *we praise their friend (i.e. the friend of them).*
 - a. In 1, **is** is used in agreement with a noun, and is a demonstrative *adjective*. It tells in an unemphatic manner *what* man is praised. **Is** commonly refers to some one or something just mentioned, and thus often equals *the aforesaid*.
 - b. In 2, 3, and 4, **is** is used without a noun, and is a demonstrative *pronoun*.
 - c. **Eius** means *his, hers, its*; **eorum** means *their*, referring to masculine and neuter nouns; **eārum** means *their*, referring to feminine nouns. See table below for the various meanings of **is**.
 - d. Decline together : **ea fēmina, id nōmen, is miles.**
 - e. When the pronoun of the third person is expressed, it is regularly **is**. See also 196, c.

191. TABLE OF MEANINGS FOR REFERENCE

is, ea, id

SINGULAR

- NOM.** this, that; he, she, it.
GEN. of this, of that; of him, his; of her, her; of it, its.
DAT. to *or* for this *or* that; to *or* for him, her, it.
ACC. this, that; him, her, it.
ABL. from, with, by this *or* that; from, with, by him, her, it.

11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65
66
67
68
69
70
71
72
73
74
75
76
77
78
79
80
81
82
83
84
85
86
87
88
89
90
91
92
93
94
95
96
97
98
99
100



Rōmānī cum Germānīs pugnāt

PLURAL

NOM. these, those; they.

GEN. of these, of those; of them, their.

DAT. to *or* for these *or* those; to *or* for them.

ACC. these, those; them.

ABL. from, with, by these *or* those; from, with, by them.

192.

VOCABULARY

Labiēnus, ī, m., *Labiēnus* (one of Caesar's lieutenants).

cohors, cohortis, f., *cohort* (one of the subdivisions of the legion).

dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfēnsus, *defend, protect.*

et . . . et, *both . . . and.*

fortūna, ae, f., *fortune, good fortune.*

mūrus, ī, m., *wall.*

permovēō, ēre, permōvī, permōtus, *influence, arouse.*

pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus, *place, pitch* (a camp).

prīnceps, prīncipis, m., *leader, chief.*

pugna, ae, f., *battle.*

post, prep. with acc., *after, behind.*

193.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Auxilium parāre dēbēmus. 2. Mīlitēs fortēs esse cupiunt. 3. Caesarī obsidēs dare cōstituērunt. 4. Mīlitēs cum virtūte pugnāre iubēbit. 5. Numerus nāvium magnus esse dicitur. 6. Rōmānī eōs Gallōs appellāre cupiēbant.

II. 1. Caesar orders the states to send hostages. 2. The commander did not wish to fight. 3. A number of soldiers are said to be in the city. 4. The Romans ought to conquer the Gauls.

194.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Eius; eārum; eī agricolae. 2. Eiusdem virī; eaedem cohortēs; in eādem urbe. 3. Caesar, prīnceps Rōmānus, eam urbem expugnāverat. 4. Eius mīlitēs post

eam pugnam eum ob fortunam laudaverunt. 5. Eodem tempore Caesar incolis libertatem dedit, quod muros magna cum virtute defenderant. 6. Fortuna belli non semper eadem est. 7. Labienus eadem cohortes in Helvetios duxit et mox eos vicit. 8. In eorum vicis Labienus castra posuit, et paucis mensibus multa proelia fecit. 9. Helvetii muros eius oppidi magna cum virtute semper defendent. 10. Eisdem milites ad oppida eius gentis mittit.

II. 1. His; their (fem.); to them. 2. In the same winter; of the same chiefs; by the same man. 3. He orders them to pitch the camp in the same place. 4. He was influenced by their advice. 5. They had given both money and food. 6. These soldiers will defend the walls.

LESSON 32

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

195.

qui, who, which, that, what

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	qui	quae	quod	qui	quae	quae
GEN.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quorum	quarum	quorum
DAT.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
ACC.	quem	quam	quod	quos	quas	quae
ABL.	quo	qua	quo	quibus	quibus	quibus

TABLE OF MEANINGS FOR REFERENCE

NOM.	who, which, that, what.
GEN.	of whom, whose, of which, of what.
DAT.	to <i>or</i> for whom, which, <i>or</i> what.
ACC.	whom, which, that, what.
ABL.	from, with, by whom, which, <i>or</i> what.

196. Examine the following:

1. **Fēminae quās vidēmus pulchrae sunt**, *the women whom we see are beautiful.*
2. **Virōs quī in castris sunt laudat**, *he praises the men that are in the camp.*
3. **Vir cuius equum habēbat agricola fuit**, *the man whose horse he had was a farmer.*
4. **Puella cui librum dedit fida est**, *the girl to whom he gave the book is faithful.*
5. **Pīlum quō vulnerātus sum longum fuit**, *the javelin by which I was wounded was a long one.*
6. **Is quī est fortis laudātur**, *he (one, a man) who is brave is praised.*

- a. The relative pronoun refers to some word, and the word to which it refers is called its *antecedent*; thus the antecedent of **quās** in 1 is **fēminae**. Point out the antecedents in the other sentences.
- b. Observe that the relative has the same *gender* and *number* as its antecedent, but that *its case is not necessarily the same*. The case of the relative is determined by its relation to the words of its own clause: for example, in 1, **quās** is accusative because it is the direct object of **vidēmus**; in 5, **quō** is ablative to express the instrument of the verb **vulnerātus sum**. Explain the cases of the other relatives.
- c. In 6, **is** does not refer to any particular person, but means *a man, one*. **Is** is thus commonly used as the antecedent of the relative. This is, in fact, the commonest use of **is**.

197. RULE.— **Agreement of Relative Pronoun.**— *A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends upon the construction of the clause in which it stands, not upon the case of its antecedent.*

198.

VOCABULARY

causa, ae, f., *cause, case.*

causam dicō, ere, dixī, dictus,

plead (one's) case.

vinculum, ī, n., *chain.*

ex vinculis, *in chains.*

poena, ae, f., *punishment.*

coniūrātiō, ōnis, f., *conspiracy.*

nūntiō, āre, āvi, ātus, *an-*
nounce, report.

coepī, coepisse, coeptūrus sum
(only in the perfect, plu-
perfect, and future perfect
tense), *began.*

Orgetorix, īgis, m., *Orgetorix.*

199.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Eōrum militēs in eōdem locō pugnābant. 2. Eīdem
prīncipī praemia dat. 3. Eae cohortēs moenia cum virtūte
dēfendent. 4. Et Helvētiī et Rōmānī fortēs erant. 5. Eius
castra in eādem urbe pōnuntur. 6. Post proelium militēs
in hiberna contendunt.

II. 1. Those brave soldiers were praised for their good
fortune. 2. Both the cohorts and their leaders had fought
bravely in that battle. 3. Caesar at the same time defends
the walls of that city. 4. After that war they pitched the
camp near the mountains.

200.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Rōmānī causam coniūrātiōnis nūntiant quam
Helvētiī fēcērunt. 2. Militēs quōs in Galliā habent in
eam gentem mittuntur. 3. Orgetorix, quī eam coniūrā-
tīōnem fēcerat, ex vinculis causam dicere coepit. 4. Eius
coniūrātiō ab eīs quī missī erant Caesarī nūntiāta est.
5. Ob eam coniūrātiōnem Helvētiī, quōrum lēgātī ā Caesare
convocāti erant, permōtī sunt. 6. Causam ex vinculis
dicere poena est eius quī coniūrātiōnem fēcit. 7. Causa
bellī caedēs Rōmānōrum fuit quī in eā urbe fuērunt.
8. Cum eīs quōrum prīncipēs id fēcērunt pugnāre coepē-

runt. 9. Is cui bellum grātum est asper est. 10. Gladius quō pugnābat longus est.

II. 1. The boy that is faithful is praised. 2. The soldier whom the general sees is brave. 3. Those are the weapons with which he fought. 4. He who fights bravely is not often conquered. 5. Orgetorix, whose punishment has been announced, will be killed. 6. The man to whom I gave this is my friend. 7. They began to fight with the Romans.

LESSON 33

THE DEMONSTRATIVES *hic* AND *ille*. ADJECTIVES USED AS SUBSTANTIVES

201. *hic, haec, hoc, this, plur. these*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	<i>hic</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>hoc</i>	<i>hī</i>	<i>hae</i>	<i>haec</i>
GEN.	<i>huius</i>	<i>huius</i>	<i>huius</i>	<i>hōrum</i>	<i>hārum</i>	<i>hōrum</i>
DAT.	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>
ACC.	<i>hunc</i>	<i>hanc</i>	<i>hoc</i>	<i>hōs</i>	<i>hās</i>	<i>haec</i>
ABL.	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hāc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>

202. *ille, illa, illud, that, plur. those*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	<i>ille</i>	<i>illa</i>	<i>illud</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illae</i>	<i>illa</i>
GEN.	<i>illīus</i>	<i>illīus</i>	<i>illīus</i>	<i>illōrum</i>	<i>illārum</i>	<i>illōrum</i>
DAT.	<i>illī</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>
ACC.	<i>illum</i>	<i>illam</i>	<i>illud</i>	<i>illōs</i>	<i>illās</i>	<i>illa</i>
ABL.	<i>illō</i>	<i>illā</i>	<i>illō</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>

I. Compare the endings of *ille* with those of *is* (188).

203. Examine the following :

1. **Hic** puer omnia, illa puella pauca vidit, *this boy saw everything, that girl few things.*
2. **Caesar et Pompēius** erant Rōmānōrum principēs; ille in Galliā pugnābat, hic in Italiā remanēbat, *Caesar and Pompey were the leading men of the Romans; the former fought in Gaul, the latter remained in Italy.*
3. **Nostrī** in castrīs erant, *our men were in camp.*
 - a. **Hic** and **ille** are more emphatic than **is** (190, a). When a contrast is expressed, as in 2, **hic** means *the latter*, **ille** means *the former*. **Ille** also sometimes means *that well-known, that famous*; with this meaning it is commonly placed after its noun. See also 208, 1.
 - b. Decline together **haec urbs, hoc flūmen**.
 - c. In 1 and 3, observe that the adjectives **omnia, pauca, nostrī**, are used alone, as if they were nouns. The noun to be supplied in English is generally indicated by the gender of the adjective. The neuter implies the noun *thing* in English; *i.e.* **multa** (neuter plural) means *many things*.

204.

VOCABULARY

frāter, frātris, m., <i>brother.</i>	cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctus, <i>col-</i>
mors, mortis, f., <i>death.</i>	lect, <i>compel, force.</i>
cliēns, clientis, m., <i>vassal,</i>	ēripiō, ere, ēripiū, ēreptus,
<i>dependent.</i>	<i>snatch away, save.</i>
nātiō, ōnis, f., <i>nation.</i>	sub, prep. with acc., <i>to the</i>
ōrātiō, ōnis, f., <i>speech.</i>	<i>foot of</i> ; with abl., <i>under,</i>
cōgnōscō, ere, cōgnōvī, cōgni-	<i>at the foot of.</i>
tus, <i>learn of, recognize.</i>	

205.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Helvétii qui coniūratiōnem fēcērunt lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt. 2. Lēgātī quibus Caesar ea dixit permōtī sunt. 3. Orgetorix, cuius cōsilia nūntiāta sunt, interficiētur. 4. Coniūratiō quam fēcērat eius poenae causa est. 5. Magnā cum virtūte pugnābant, quod hostēs ad castra erant. 6. Proelium quod cum Gallis fēcērant longum erat.

II. 1. The chief that you see is Orgetorix. 2. The mountain on which they fought is in Gaul. 3. Those to whom he gives money are his friends. 4. The man whose conspiracy was reported began to speak.

206.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Huius orātiōnis; illōrum clientium; huic amīcō. 2. Hīc cliēns ex vinculis causam dīcet. 3. Nostrī hāc orātiōne permōtī (*aroused*) hostēs in fugam dedērunt. 4. Hae civitatēs quās diximus¹ lēgātōs ad illum ducem mittent. 5. Et peditēs et equitēs, illī ex urbe, hī ex agrīs, ad Caesarem contendunt. 6. Orgetorix, princeps ille Helvétiorum, necātus est. 7. Mors huius principis Helvétii nōn grāta est. 8. Illī quōs convocāvistī clientēs meī frātris sunt. 9. Omnēs cōgnōscere amīcōs cupiunt. 10. Sub illō colle Caesar hostēs castra pōnere coēgit.

II. 1. For this man; of those towns; that famous commander. 2. At the foot of this mountain the enemy will force Caesar to fight. 3. All these tribes Caesar conquered within that winter. 4. It is difficult to compel him to do these things. 5. Our men collected the baggage in that place.² 6. The Romans fought with the Helvetians; the latter were brave, but they were conquered by the former

¹ mention.² Accusative.

LESSON 34

Ipse. Iste. IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES. ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION

207.

ipse, *self*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
GEN.	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
DAT.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
ACC.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
ABL.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis

1. Observe that **ipse** is declined like **bonus**, except in the genitive and dative singular, where we have the endings **-ius** and **-ī**. What other words have had these genitive and dative endings?
2. **Ipse** is a pronoun that gives emphasis to the word with which it agrees, and its translations vary: for example, **vir ipse**, *the man himself*; **fēmina ipsa**, *the woman herself*; **proelium ipsum**, *the battle itself*; **urbēs ipsae**, *the cities themselves*; etc. It sometimes is best translated in English by *even* or *very*. It agrees like an adjective with some noun or pronoun expressed or understood.

208. Like **ille** (202) decline **iste**, *that, that of yours*.

1. **Hic** is the demonstrative of the first person and signifies *this (of mine), this (near me), my, mine*. **Iste** points out an object near a second person directly addressed; it means *that near you, that in which you are interested*, but may be translated fully by *that of yours, your*. It is, therefore, called the demonstrative of the

second person. **Ille** is called the demonstrative of the third person, and its complete meaning is *that (of his or hers), that . . . yonder, yonder.*

2. Mention the pronouns that have **-ius** in the genitive singular and **-ī** in the dative singular.

209. The following adjectives end in **-ius** in the genitive and **-ī** in the dative singular of all genders (except that the genitive of **alter** ends in **-ius**). In all other cases they are declined like adjectives of the first and second declension.

alius, alia, aliud (505), *other, another.*

alter, altera, alterum, *one (of two), the other (of two).*

uter, utra, utrum, *which (of two)?*

uterque, utraque, utrumque, *each (of two), both.*

neuter, neutra, neutrum, *neither (of two).*

ūllus, ūlla, ūllum, *any.*

nūllus, nūlla, nūllum, *no, none.*

sōlus, sōla, sōlum, *alone, sole, only.*

tōtus, tōta, tōtum, *whole, all.*

ūnus, ūna, ūnum, *one.*

210. Examine the following:

1. **Nostris finibus eōs prohibēbat**, *he kept them from our territories.*
 2. **Cibō caruerat**, *he had lacked food.*
 3. **Ex eā parte vicī discessit**, *he withdrew from that part of the village.*
- a. Observe that the ablatives **fīnibus**, **cibō**, and **parte** denote the thing from which there is privation or removal, or the thing which is lacking.

211. RULE. — **Ablative of Separation.** — *Verbs meaning to separate, remove, set free, deprive, lack, etc., are often followed by the ablative of the thing from which separation*

takes place. *Ab* or *ex* with the ablative is, however, often used with these verbs, regularly when the separation is literal and physical (not figurative) and the ablative denotes a person. But with *careō* a preposition is never used.

212.

VOCABULARY

<i>careō, ēre, caruī, caritūrus,</i>	<i>rīpa, ae, f., bank</i> (of river).
<i>lack, be in need of, be</i>	<i>alter . . . alter, the one . . .</i>
<i>without.</i>	<i>the other</i> (of two).
<i>discēdō, ere, discessī, disces-</i>	<i>alius . . . alius, one . . . an-</i>
<i>sum, depart, withdraw.</i>	<i>other.</i>
<i>liberō, āre, āvī, ātus, free</i>	<i>alii . . . alii, some . . . others.</i>
<i>(from), liberate.</i>	<i>alii aliam in partem, some in</i>
<i>prohibeō, ēre, prohibuī, pro-</i>	<i>one direction, some in an-</i>
<i>hibitus, keep away from.</i>	<i>other.</i>
<i>prōvincia, ae, f., province.</i>	

213.

RÉVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Clientēs hōs militēs pugnāre cōgunt. 2. Helvētīi in illīs castrīs ē periculō sunt ēreptī. 3. Frātrēs Orgetorigis prīncipis illius eum cōgnōscent. 4. Sub illō monte hae nātiōnēs castra posuērunt. 5. Huic militī arma pīlum et sagittās dederant. 6. Rēx hārum nātiōnum, quae illam coniūrātiōnem fēcerant, necātus est.

II. 1. That famous chief was forced to plead his case in chains. 2. Those tribes collected the soldiers at the foot of the hill (acc.). 3. That man, whose daughter has been saved, will praise the soldier for his courage. 4. This is the soldier by whom we were saved.

214.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Hīc liber est meus; ille gladius est militis; ubi est istud pīlum? 2. Caesar ipse cum militibus ex illā urbe

discēdit. 3. Lēgātī quōs Helvētīī mīsērunt armīs carent. 4. Hostēs utrāque rīpā flūminis prohibēbimus. 5. Ipsī oppidum ā mīlitibus¹ liberāvistis. 6. Aliī in rīpīs aliī in flūmine ipsō pugnābant. 7. Caesar sōlus Helvētīōs prōvinciā prohibet. 8. Tōta prōvincia ab hostibus liberāta est. 9. Ex hāc urbe incolae aliī aliam in partem discēdent. 10. Caesar et Orgetorīx prīncipēs fuērunt; alter necātus (est), alter ob victōriam laudātus est.

II. 1. Of the queen herself; on the very banks of the river; that daughter of yours. 2. Caesar was the very man who² was keeping the enemy from the province. 3. Some depart from the town in one direction, some in another. 4. Those soldiers of yours lack bravery and will withdraw from the battle. 5. Some like war, others peace. 6. I myself shall free the inhabitants of the whole province from danger.

LESSON 35

FOURTH CONJUGATION. INTERROGATIVE quis

215. *audiō, hear*PRIN. PARTS: *audiō, audire, audivī, auditus*

Learn all tenses of the indicative, active and passive, of *audiō* (519).

1. Observe that the final vowel of the present stem is *long -i-*; it is shortened, however, before another vowel. What are the corresponding vowels of the first, second, and third conjugations? How can one tell to what conjugation a verb belongs?
2. Compare carefully the present indicative active and passive of *audiō* with the corresponding forms of *capiō* (520). In what forms is there a difference? Note

¹ See 211.² *Caesar was the very man who = Caesar himself.*

particularly the *quantity* of the vowel *i* in the present tense of *audiō*, and how this affects the place of the accent and so the pronunciation.

3. The other five tenses of *audiō* are formed and conjugated exactly like those of *capiō*.

216. THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN AND ADJECTIVE

quis, who? which? what?

		SINGULAR		
		<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
NOM.	quis (quī)	quae	} adjective only	quid (quod)
GEN.	cuius	cuius		cuius
DAT.	cui	cui		cui
ACC.	quem	quam		quid (quod)
ABL.	quō	quā		quō
		PLURAL		
		<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
NOM.	quī	quae		quae
GEN.	quōrum	quārum		quōrum
DAT.	quibus	quibus		quibus
ACC.	quōs	quās		quae
ABL.	quibus	quibus		quibus

1. Compare these forms with those of the relative (195).

217. Examine the following:

- | | |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| 1. Quis hoc fēcit? <i>who did this?</i> | } Used as an interrogative pronoun. |
| 2. Quid fēcisti? <i>what did you do?</i> | |
| 3. Quī (quis) vir hoc fēcit? <i>what man did this?</i> | } Used as an interrogative adjective. |
| 4. Quam urbem vidēs? <i>what city do you see?</i> | |
| 5. Quod dōnum amat puer? <i>what gift does the boy like?</i> | |

- a. Observe that, when used as an *adjective*, the interrogative has the same forms as the relative. **Quis** is sometimes used for **quī**.
- b. When used as a pronoun, **quis** and **quid** are used in place of **quī** and **quod**. As an interrogative pronoun, **quis** has no feminine forms in the singular.

218.

VOCABULARY

audiō, ire, audivi, auditus, <i>hear.</i>	cōsuētūdō, inis, f., <i>custom,</i> <i>habit.</i>
mūniō, ire, mūnivī, mūnitus, <i>fortify.</i>	clāmor, ōris, m., <i>shout, cry.</i> labor, ōris, m., <i>work, labor.</i>
veniō, ire, vēni, ventum, ¹ <i>come.</i>	iūdicium, ī, n., <i>trial, judg-</i> <i>ment.</i>
pūniō, ire, pūnivī, pūnitus, <i>punish.</i>	undique, adv., <i>from all sides.</i>

219.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar ipse urbem periculō liberābit. 2. Iste miles, cuius virtūtem omnēs vidētis, Rōmānus est. 3. In hōc ipsō oppidō coniūrātiō est facta. 4. Helvētiī ē tōtā prōvinciā discessērunt. 5. Hostēs aliī aliam in partem in fugam dabuntur. 6. Alter lēgātus hostēs moenibus prohibēre, alter incolās convocāre coepit.

II. 1. Some will be freed from chains, others will be punished. 2. The enemy will be kept away from the city. 3. They fought for a long time on the very banks of the river. 4. I myself shall depart from the city.

220.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Audīris; audiētur; vēnerātis. 2. Mūniēbātur; pūnivisti; pūnitae erātis. 3. Quī venient in hanc urbem?

¹ See page 49, footnote.

4. Quōrum clāmōrēs audiuntur? Clāmōrēs ipsōrum quōs mīsimus audiuntur. 5. Cōnsuētūdō est Rōmānōrum castra nocte mūnīre. 6. Quis tēlis vulnerātus est? Mīles cuius imperātor castra nōn mūnīvit. 7. Quōs clāmōrēs in hāc urbe audīmus? 8. Et clientēs et servōs ad iūdicium undique coēgit. 9. Clāmōrēs eōrum quī cum impedimentīs veniebant audītī sunt. 10. Quid facere cupitis? Castra pōnere sub monte illō cupimus.

II. 1. We are heard; you (plur.) will hear; we had come. 2. They have been punished; you (sing.) are being heard; the camp has been fortified. 3. What did he do? 4. Who formed a conspiracy of the Helvetians? 5. Orgetorix himself was the one¹ who formed the conspiracy. 6. Whose weapons are these? 7. With great labor they will fortify the city that² we have taken.

LESSON 36

READING LESSON

CHAPTER IV

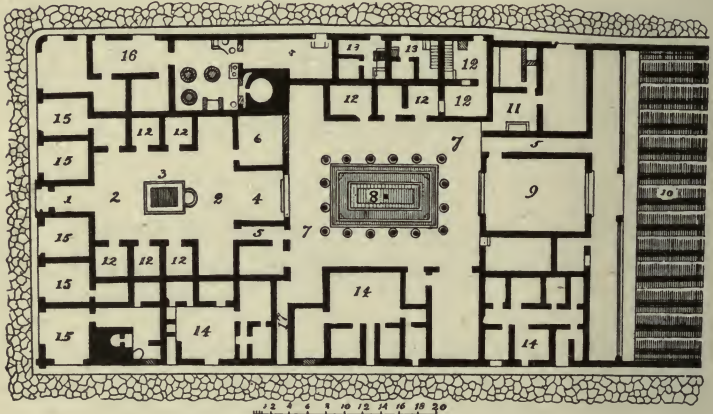
THE DEATH OF ORGETORIX AFTER BEING SUMMONED TO TRIAL BY THE HELVETIAN OFFICIALS ON A CHARGE OF CONSPIRACY

221. Per nūntiōs ea cōnsilia nūntiāta sunt Helvētiis, quī Orgetorīgem ex vinculis causam dīcere coēgērunt. Coniūrātiōnis accūsātus est et ignī cremārī³ eius poena fuit. Quam⁴ ob rem Orgetorīx ad iūdicium omnem suam (*his*) familiam et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque, quōrum magnum numerum habēbat, undique coēgit. Per eōs sē (*himself*)

¹ See page 107, footnote 2. ² Is this a relative or a demonstrative? ³ See 183, 2. ⁴ quam ob rem, *wherefore, therefore.*



Interior of a Roman House (Restoration)



Plan of the House of Pansa at Pompeii

1. Fauces (Entrance). 2. Atrium (Reception room, with opening in the roof above the impluvium). 3. Impluvium (Basin in floor). 4. Tablinum (a room whose purposes are not certainly known: perhaps a record room and study or at times a summer dining room). 5. Passages. 6. Dining Room (or library?). 7. Peristylum or Peristyle (an open court surrounded by colonnades: the private living quarters of the family). 8. Viridarium (Basin, containing fountain and pool, surrounded by plants and shrubs). 9. Oecus (a large fine hall, a state dining room). 10. Hortus (Garden). 11. Kitchen. 12. Sleeping rooms. 13. Small separate dwelling, of two stories, rented out. 14. Larger separate dwellings, rented out. 15. Tabernae (Shops). 16. Bakery, rented out. 17. Siae entrance to main dwelling.

ē periculō ēripuit. Magistrātūs¹ per eius fugam incitātī sunt multitudinemque hominum ex agrīs cōgere coepērunt. Intereā Orgetorix mortuus² est, et dē eius morte multī rūmōrēs apud Helvētiōs fuērunt.

(READING SELECTION 452)

LESSON 37

FOURTH DECLENSION

222.

THE STEM ENDS IN -u-

cāsus, m.,
chance, misfortune

cornū, n.,
horn, wing

Stem cāsu-

Stem cornu-

Base cās-

Base corn-

		CASE ENDINGS		
		SINGULAR		
		<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	
	SINGULAR			
NOM.	cāsus	cornū	-us	-ū
GEN.	cāsūs	cornūs	-ūs	-ūs
DAT.	cāsui (ū)	cornū	-ui (ū)	-ū
ACC.	cāsum	cornū	-um	-ū
ABL.	cāsū	cornū	-ū	-ū
PLURAL		PLURAL	PLURAL	
NOM.	cāsūs	cornua	-ūs	-ua
GEN.	cāsuum	cornuum	-uum	-uum
DAT.	cāsibus	cornibus	-ibus	-ibus
ACC.	cāsūs	cornua	-ūs	-ua
ABL.	cāsibus	cornibus	-ibus	-ibus

1. A few words of this declension have -ubus in the dative and ablative plural.

2. **Domus**, f., *house, home*, is partly of the second and partly of the fourth declension. (See 501.)

¹ *officers, magistrates*, nom. plur. ² *mortuus est, died.*

223. RULE. — **Gender.** — *Nearly all nouns of the fourth declension in -us are masculine ; those in -ū are neuter.*

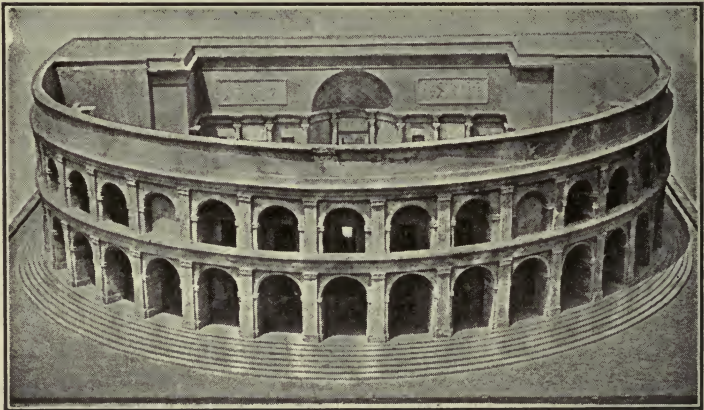
1. **Domus**, *house*, **Īdūs** (plur.), *the Ides*, **manus**, *hand*, and a few other nouns are *feminine*.

224. Decline together **exercitus fortis**, *brave army* ; **tua manus**, *your hand* ; **cornū dextrum**, *right wing*.

225.

VOCABULARY

cāsus , ūs, m., <i>a falling, chance, misfortune.</i>	in (ā) dextrō cornū , <i>on the right wing.</i>
domus , ūs, f., <i>house, home.</i>	in (ā) sinistrō cornū , <i>on the left wing.</i>
exercitus , ūs, m., <i>army.</i>	
manus , ūs, f., <i>hand, band (of men).</i>	conveniō , ire, convēnī , con- ventum , <i>come together, assemble.</i>
portus , ūs, m., <i>harbor.</i>	
cornū , ūs, n., <i>horn, wing (of army).</i>	deus , ī, m., <i>god.</i>



Roman Theater (Restoration)

226.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Quis clāmōrēs militum audīvit? 2. Hostēs alii aliam in partem fugient. 3. Undique equitēs ex silvīs ad flūmen veniēbant. 4. Principis est cōsuētūdō eōs quī coniūratiōnem faciunt pūnīre. 5. Quam urbem mūnient et quī eam dēfendent? 6. Quōrum clāmōrēs audiuntur atque cūr illi pūnītī sunt?

II. 1. Who will fortify the camp that¹ Caesār has pitched? 2. We shall keep those foot-soldiers from the city. 3. Whose shouts did you hear at daybreak at the foot of the hill? 4. In many countries lazy men are punished.

227.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Portubus; exercituī; manuum. 2. Manūs equitum ad exercitum vēnerant. 3. Ad hunc portum nāvēs hostium missae sunt. 4. Quī militēs in dextrō cornū exercitūs sunt? 5. Rōmānī cōsiliō deōrum magnam Helvētiōrum partem necāvērunt. 6. Nūntiī quī ad Caesarem vēnerant eī cāsū exercitūs nūntiāvērunt. 7. Paucī ad portās urbis conveniēbant. 8. Rōmānī magnā cum caede domōs et agrōs Gallōrum vāstāverant. 9. Nostrī in sinistrō cornū superātī sunt quod nōn cum virtūte dīmicāverant. 10. Domūs Gallōrum ab equitibus vāstābantur. 11. Urbs cuius portās dēfendimus magnum portum habet.

II. 1. For the gods; on the left wing; the doors of the houses. 2. In the harbor are many ships in which² the army of the Romans came from the city to Gaul. 3. The misfortune of the army was reported to Caesar. 4. Orgetorix, whose bands had assembled, was not saved from danger. 5. The houses of the city will be defended by the army.

¹ Is this the relative or the demonstrative pronoun? ² *in which*: express by the ablative of means.

LESSON 38

REVIEW OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS. DATIVE OF POSSESSION

228. REVIEW OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

Review the list of verbs in 169, and review thoroughly the meanings and principal parts of the following verbs that have been introduced since Lesson 27:

dūcō	audiō	iaciō	coepi
trādūcō	permoveō	fugiō	nūntiō
veniō	pōnō	faciō	ēripiō
conveniō	careō	interficiō	cōgō
mittō	vincō	dicō	cōgnōscō
dēbeō	relinquō	iubeō	discēdō
cupiō	contendō	appellō	liberō
capiō	gerō	cōstituō	pūniō
prohibeō	incolō	dēfendō	mūniō

1. Notice particularly the significance of the prefixes **trāns** and **con**, as they appear in the compound verbs.
2. How does the formation of the future of the first and second conjugations differ from that of the third and fourth conjugations?
3. How can you tell whether **cupiō** belongs to the fourth or the third conjugation?

229. 1. Following the form suggested in 170, write a synopsis of **iubeō** in the first person, **interficiō** in the second person, **mūniō** in the third person.

2. Review 92, 1. Conjugate the perfect active of **dō**,

iubeō, cōgnōscō, veniō. Observe that the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect active and passive of *all conjugations* are formed from the principal parts and conjugated in the same way.

230. Examine the following :

- | | |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. Miles gladium habet, | } <i>the soldier has a sword.</i> |
| 2. Militi est gladius, | |

Observe the two ways in Latin of expressing the same English idea. The first sentence corresponds word for word with the English translation. The second sentence, translated into bad English, is "for the soldier is a sword," the possessor being dative and the thing possessed being subject of **est**. Never translate literally a Latin sentence thus, as there is in good English no similar construction.

231. RULE. — **Dative of Possession.** — *The dative is used with est, sunt, etc., to denote the possessor, the thing possessed being the subject.*

232.

REVIEW EXERCISES

(Give tense, voice, person, and number, and translate.)

I. 1. Facient; convocābāmur; cōgēminī. 2. Audiēbāris; capiēris; caperis. 3. Discesserit; prohibuerant; convēnistis. 4. Missum erat; mīserat; coepistī. 5. Pōnētis; capiēs; appellābitis. 6. Vincentur; pūniētur; iubētur. 7. Relīquerātis; relinquent; dictum erat. 8. Liberātae sunt; habuerās; contendēbātis. 9. Ēripiēris; trādūcētur; monentur. 10. Augēbat; pugnābunt; dēfēnsa erat; pūnīris; cōgitur.

II. 1. We have said; they wished; you (plur.) have been compelled. 2. We shall take; you will leave; they will blame. 3. It has been said; you (fem. plur.) have been defended. 4. It was heard; we are being defended; you (sing.) are fortifying. 5. We shall conquer; they have conquered; you were conquering. 6. It had been sent; you (plur.) have sent.

233.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Meus amicus domum habet. 2. Meō amicō est domus. 3. Helvētiī, quōrum castra vidētis, ad moenia oppidī mox venient. 4. Exercitus magnus Caesarī fuit. 5. Caesar magnum exercitum habuit. 6. Magnam frūmentī cōpiam habent. 7. Magna frūmentī cōpia eīs est. 8. Hostēs paucās nāvēs habent. 9. Hostibus sunt paucae nāvēs. 10. Militī pulchrum gladium dedit.

II. 1. The farmer has¹ a horse. 2. They have¹ friends. 3. The soldiers will besiege Rome. 4. He had¹ a book. 5. Who has come to the city? 6. The city that the Romans fortified was large and beautiful.

LESSON 39

IRREGULAR VERB *eō*. PLACE WHERE, WHENCE, AND WHITHER

234.

IRREGULAR VERB *eō*, *go*

PRIN. PARTS: *eō*, *ire*, *iī*, *itum*²

Learn all tenses of the indicative of *eō* (525).

- I. Notice that the *-i-*, the present stem of *eō*, changes to *-e-* before a vowel. In what forms of the present indicative does this change occur?

¹ Express this idea in two ways in Latin.

² See page 49, footnote.

2. Observe that the future indicative *ībō* is formed like the future of verbs of the first and second conjugations, although the present infinitive is *īre*. Are all other tenses of the indicative formed and conjugated regularly?

235. Names of towns and a few other words have a special case called the *Locative*, which expresses the idea of *at* or *in*, and answers the question *where*.

1. The following are the *locative* endings for names of towns:

SINGULAR PLURAL

First Declension	-ae	-īs	{ <i>Rōmae, in Rome.</i> { <i>Athēnīs, in Athens.</i>
Second Declension	-ī	-īs	
Third Declension	-ī(e)	-ibus	{ <i>Carthāginī, at or in Car-</i> <i>thage.</i> { <i>Trallibus, at or in Tralles.</i>

2. *Domī, at home; humī, on the ground; rūrī, in the country,* are also locative forms.
3. To express the idea of *at* or *in* for other words than the names of towns use the preposition *in* and the ablative; *i.e., in urbe est, he is in the city; in Ītaliā sunt, they are in Italy.*

236. Examine the following:

1. Venit, he comes	}	<i>ad pontem, to the bridge.</i>
		<i>in Ītaliā, to or into Italy.</i>
		<i>Rōmam, to Rome.</i>
		<i>domum, home.</i>
		<i>rūs, to or into the country.</i>

2. Exit, he goes
- | | |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| { | (ab) (dē) ex oppidō, from the town. |
| | (ab) (dē) ex Italiā, from Italy. |
| | Athēnis, from Athens. |
| | domō, from home. |
- rūre, from the country.

a. Observe that to answer the questions *whither* or *whence*, no *preposition* is used with names of towns and **domus** and **rūs**, while a preposition (**in**, **ad**, **ab**, **dē**, **ex**) is used with other words.

237. RULE. — Expressions of Place.

1. Place *Where*. Ablative with **in**.

But, Locative with names of towns, **domus**, **humus**, and **rūs**.

2. Place *To which*. Accusative with **ad** or **in**.

But, Accusative without a preposition with names of towns, **domus**, **humus**, and **rūs**.

3. Place *From which*. Ablative with **ab**, **dē**, or **ex**.

But, Ablative without a preposition with names of towns, **domus**, **humus**, and **rūs**.

238.

VOCABULARY

Athēnae, ārum (plur.), f., <i>Athens.</i>	eō, ire, ii, itum, go.
Carthāgō, inis, f., <i>Carthage.</i>	exeō (ex + eō), ire, exii, ex- itūrus, go forth, leave.
Corinthus, ī, f. (28, 2), <i>Cor- inth.</i>	trānseō (trāns + eō), ire, trānsii, trānsitūrus, go over, go across, cross.
Delphī, ōrum (plur.), m., <i>Del- phi.</i>	impetus, ūs, m., <i>attack.</i>
equitātus (eques), ūs, m., <i>cav- alry.</i>	impetum faciō in (with acc.), <i>make an attack upon.</i>

239.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Domūs incolārum ab equitātū Caesaris dēfendentur. 2. Legiōnēs populī Rōmānī in hiberna vēnerant. 3. Cāsus nāvium militibus, quī in hibernīs erant, nūntiātus est. 4. In sinistrō cornū exercitūs sunt multae manūs fortium militum. 5. Propter cāsus nostrōrum hostēs laetī erant.

II. 1. The Gauls were being conquered on the right wing. 2. The bands of the enemy that you see are assembling from all sides. 3. They were hastening to the harbor from which the ships of our (men) were seen. 4. They were killed by the cavalry with swords.

240.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Ierat; ibunt; eunt. 2. Trānsiērunt; exhibātis; imus; iimus. 3. Ex urbe; ex urbe Rōmā¹; Rōmā; domō. 4. In oppidō; Rōmae; Carthāginī; Athēnīs; domī. 5. Cōn-sul exercitum Rōmā Athēnās trādūxit. 6. Caesar lēgātōs quōs habēbat in Graeciam trānsire iussit. 7. Dux Rōmānōrum urbem mūniet atque incolās ab hostibus liberābit. 8. Equitātum Corinthum mittet, sed ipse Athēnīs bellum geret. 9. Helvētīi ē finibus exire parant, et exercitum flūmen trādūcunt. 10. Caesar Rōmā contendit et equitātum in Helvētiōs impetum facere iubet.

II. 1. From Greece; out of Corinth; from home. 2. To Athens; to the city; into the country; into the province. 3. In Rome; in Italy; at home; at Delphi. 4. We ought to send the cavalry to Athens. 5. The enemy had made an attack on our men, but had been conquered. 6. The cavalry wished to cross the river, but were kept away from the banks by the enemy.

¹ of Rome. Rōmā is in apposition with urbe.

LESSON 40

NUMERALS. EXTENT OF TIME AND SPACE

241. Learn thoroughly the cardinals as far as twenty (510), and study the formation of the numbers beyond.

242. DECLENSION OF NUMERALS

Paradigms

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	ūnus, <i>one</i>	ūna	ūnum	trēs, <i>three</i>	tria
GEN.	ūnius	ūnius	ūnius	trium	trium
DAT.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	tribus	tribus
ACC.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	trēs, trīs	tria
ABL.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	tribus	tribus

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	duo, <i>two</i>	duae	duo
GEN.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum
DAT.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus
ACC.	duōs, duo	duās	duo
ABL.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM.	mille, <i>thousand</i>	millia (mīlia)
GEN.	mille	millium (mīlium)
DAT.	mille	millibus (mīlibus)
ACC.	mille	millia (mīlia)
ABL.	mille	millibus (mīlibus)

243. 1. The cardinals from **quattuor** to **centum** inclusive are indeclinable: **quattuor puellae**, *four girls*; **septem puērōrum**, *of seven boys*.

2. Compare the declension of **ūnus** with that of **ille** (202).

3. **Mille** in the singular is indeclinable, and is generally used as an adjective: **mille militēs**, *a thousand soldiers*. In the plural it is a noun only: **septem millia militum**, *seven thousands of soldiers, seven thousand soldiers*.

244. Examine the following :

1. **Hannibal multōs annōs in Italiā manēbat**, *Hannibal remained (for) many years in Italy*.
2. **Hoc flūmen altum quīnque pedēs est**, *this river is five feet deep*.
- a. Observe that the accusative **multōs annōs** denotes duration or extent of *time*, **quīnque pedēs**, extent of *space*.

245. RULE. — **Extent of Time and Space.** — *Extent of time or space is expressed by the accusative.*

246.

VOCABULARY

altitūdō, altitūdinis, f. , <i>height, depth.</i>	mercātor, ōris, m. , <i>merchant, trader.</i>
ēruptiō, ōnis, f. , <i>a breaking out, a sally.</i>	socius, i, m. , <i>companion, ally.</i>
incendō, ere, incendi, incēsus, <i>set fire to, burn.</i>	passus, ūs, m. , <i>pace.</i>
maneō, ēre, mānsi, mānsūrus, <i>stay, remain.</i>	mille passūs, <i>a thousand paces, a (Roman) mile;</i>
	millia passuum, <i>miles.</i>
	hōra, ae, f. , <i>hour.</i>

247.

EXERCISES

I. 1. **Centum vīginti mercātorum; mille trecentis sex et quadrāgintā militibus.** 2. **Trium exercituum; duābus legiōnibus; quattuor equōrum.** 3. **Mūrus quem vidēs sex pedēs altus est.** 4. **Duōs mēnsēs ēruptiōnem facere parābant.** 5. **Caesar novem annōs in Galliā manēbat.** 6. **Equitēs duās hōrās magnā cum virtūte pugnābant.** 7. **Socii**

Helvētiōrum decem millia passuum per prōvinciam Rōmānam iter fēcērunt. 8. Lēgātus cum tribus cohortibus vicōs duodecim incendit et agrōs vāstāvit. 9. Tria millia militum ad flūmen ab hostibus interfectī erant. 10. Id flūmen centum pedēs lātum et duodēvīgintī altum fuit. 11. Hīc collis septuāgintā quinque pedēs altus est. 12. Equitātus Athēnīs Delphōs exiit.

II. 1. Thirty-seven villages; five thousand soldiers; a thousand horsemen. 2. For two months the soldiers of the Roman people besieged that town. 3. The wall, which was twelve feet high, was defended by Caesar's forces. 4. He remained eight months in that country, and hastened to Rome. 5. The soldiers remained in Carthage, but the consul came to Rome.

LESSON 41

FIFTH DECLENSION. GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE (PARTITIVE GENITIVE)

248.

FIFTH DECLENSION

The stem ends in *-ē*.

diēs, m., *day*

rēs, f., *thing*

Stem **diē-**

Stem **rē-**

Base **di-**

Base **r-**

	SING.		PLUR.		CASE ENDINGS	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
NOM.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs	-ēs	-ēs
GEN.	diēi ¹	diērum	rei ¹	rērum	-ēi	-ērum
DAT.	diēi	diēbus	rei	rēbus	-ēi	-ēbus
ACC.	diem	diēs	rem	rēs	-em	-ēs
ABL.	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus	-ē	-ēbus

¹ In the genitive singular the case ending is *-ēi* if the base ends in a vowel, *-ēi* if the base ends in a consonant.



Street in Pompeii, showing Stepping Stones, Fountain, Water Reservoir, and Shops



Street of the Tombs, outside the Herculaneum Gate, at Pompeii

1. **Diēs** and **rēs** are the only nouns of this declension that have all the forms of the plural. A few other nouns have the nominative and accusative plural.

249. **RULE.** — **Gender.** — *All nouns of the fifth declension are feminine except diēs, which is usually masculine in the singular and always so in the plural.*

250. Examine the following :

1. **Satis cibī habēmus**, *we have enough (of) food.*
 2. **Nihil novī est**, *there is nothing (of) new (newness, novelty).*
 3. **Ūnus ex militibus vulnerātus est**, *one of the soldiers was wounded.*
 4. **Quīdam dē nostrīs cecidērunt**, *some of our men fell.*
- a. Observe that the genitives **cibī**, **novī**, denote the whole of which a part (**satis**, **nihil**) is or is not taken. Note that in 1 and 2 *of* is not used in English.
- b. Observe the construction following **ūnus** and **quīdam** in 3 and 4. After the cardinal numerals regularly, and after a few other words occasionally, an ablative with **dē** or **ex** is used in place of the genitive.

251. **RULE.** — **Genitive of the Whole** (“**Partitive Genitive**”). — *The genitive denoting the whole from which a part is (or is not) taken is used with nouns, pronouns, adjectives (except numerals), and adverbs. The part taken is denoted by the noun, pronoun, etc., on which the genitive depends.*

252.

VOCABULARY

aciēs, **ēī**, f., *line of battle.*

diēs, **ēī**, m., *day.*

rēs, **reī**, f., *thing, circumstance, affair.*

nihil (indecl. noun), *nothing.*

satis (indecl. noun), *enough.*

nihil reliquī, *nothing left.*

cōnfi-ciō, **ere**, **cōn-fē-ci**, **cōn-fectus**, *accomplish, finish, wear out.*

pūb-licus, **a**, **um**, *public.*

rēs pūb-lica, **reī pūb-licae**, f., *the state, the commonwealth.*

253.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Exercitus decem mēnsēs Rōmae manēbat. 2. Via vīgintī millia passuum est longa. 3. Pompēius et Caesar cōsulēs fuērunt; ille Rōmae manēbat, hīc cum exercitū in Galliam vēnit. 4. Helvētīi cum omnibus impedimentīs domum ire coāctī sunt. 5. Equitātus quīndecim hōris Athēnīs Corinthum iit.

II. 1. The city was on a hill a hundred feet high. 2. The allies marched¹ seven miles in two hours. 3. Late at night the general set fire to all the buildings. 4. Behind the camp was a river four feet deep.

254.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar exercitum flūmen ūnō diē trādūxerat. 2. Haec rēs hostēs terruit, atque pars eōrum domum iit. 3. Trēs diēs equitātus cum Helvētīis, quī flūmen trānsībant, pugnābat. 4. Vicōs et aedificia incenderant, et nihil reliquī domī habēbant. 5. Prīmā lūce paucī dē eōrum mīlitibus iter nōn cōnfēcerant. 6. Fīnitimī eīs satis frūmentī et cibī dedērunt. 7. Rēs pūblica tribus diēbus magnō periculō liberāta est. 8. Quattuor ē lēgātīs eō diē eandem rem Caesarī nūntiāvērunt. 9. Omnibus rēbus Rōmānī Helvētīōs, quī domō exierant, superābant. 10. Prīmam aciem iacere tēla iussit.

II. 1. For twenty days the legions defended the camp from the enemy. 2. The Gauls have enough soldiers, but they lack courage. 3. The Helvetians have² nothing left, and will soon go out of their territories. 4. Few of our men will remain in Rome. 5. In a few days we shall have enough weapons.

¹ iter faciō.

² Express this idea in some other way than by using

habent.

LESSON 42

READING LESSON

(Those who prefer reading lessons based on Caesar's *Gallic War*, Book II, may use the lessons beginning at 476.)

CHAPTER V

THE HELVETII NEVERTHELESS COMPLETE THEIR PREPARATIONS

255. Post eius mortem nihilō minus Helvētīi ē fīnibus suis¹ exīre cōstituērunt. Ubi iam ad eam rem parātī sunt, oppida sua¹ omnia ad² duodecim, vicōs ad² quadringentōs, reliqua privāta aedificia incendunt.³ Itaque et domum reditiōnis spem sustulērunt⁴ et ad bellum parātī sunt. Frūmentum et multa alia quemque⁵ domō efferre iubent.³ Rauracī et Tulingī et Latobrigī finitimī idem facere et ē finibus exīre cōstituunt.³ Bōiī, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricūm trānsierant Nōrēiamque oppugnāverant, Helvētiōrum amīcī et sociī erant.

(READING SELECTION 454)

LESSON 43

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES. ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON

256. The degrees of comparison are: *positive, comparative, superlative*.

1. The positive is the simple form of the adjective: *cārus, dear*.

¹ *their*. ² *about* (with numerals). ³ The present tense is sometimes used instead of a past tense to express the thought with greater vividness. It is called the historical present. ⁴ From *tollō*. ⁵ Acc. of *quisque*.

2. The comparative is formed by adding to the base of the positive, **-ior** for the masculine and feminine, and **-ius** for the neuter: *cārus* (base *cār-*), *dear*, *cārior*, *cārius*, *dearer*.
3. The superlative is formed by adding to the base of the positive, **-issimus**, **-issima**, **-issimum**: *cārus* (base *cār-*), *dear*, *cāriissimus*, *a, um*, *dearest*.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
	<i>M. and F.</i> <i>N.</i>	
<i>lātus, a, um</i> (<i>lāt-</i>), <i>wide</i>	<i>lātior, lātius,</i> <i>wider</i>	<i>lātissimus, a, um,</i> <i>widest</i>
<i>fortis, e (fort-),</i> <i>brave</i>	<i>fortior, fortius,</i> <i>braver</i>	<i>fortissimus, a, um,</i> <i>bravest</i>
<i>vēlōx (vēlōc-),</i> <i>swift</i>	<i>vēlōcior, vēlōcius,</i> <i>swifter</i>	<i>vēlōcissimus, a, um,</i> <i>swiftest</i>

257. The superlative is declined like *bonus* (62). The comparative is declined as follows:

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
NOM.	<i>lātior</i>	<i>lātius</i>	<i>lātiōrēs</i>	<i>lātiōra</i>
GEN.	<i>lātiōris</i>	<i>lātiōris</i>	<i>lātiōrum</i>	<i>lātiōrum</i>
DAT.	<i>lātiōrī</i>	<i>lātiōrī</i>	<i>lātiōribus</i>	<i>lātiōribus</i>
ACC.	<i>lātiōrem</i>	<i>lātius</i>	<i>lātiōrēs (is)</i>	<i>lātiōra</i>
ABL.	<i>lātiōre</i>	<i>lātiōre</i>	<i>lātiōribus</i>	<i>lātiōribus</i>

1. In what forms does the declension of the comparative differ from that of regular third declension adjectives (155, 161)?

258. Compare *altus* (*alt-*), *high, deep*; *potēns* (*potent-*), *powerful*; *brevis* (*brev-*), *short*. Decline in the comparative.

259. Examine the following :

- | | |
|--|----------------------------------|
| 1. Hic mōns altior quam ille est, | } <i>this mountain is higher</i> |
| 2. Hic mōns altior illō est, | |
| 3. Hunc montem saepius ¹ quam illum | } <i>this mountain I have</i> |
| vidī, | |
| 4. Hunc montem saepius illō vidī, | } <i>(I have seen) that.</i> |

In 1 **quam** is used and **ille** is nominative ; in 2 **quam** is omitted and **illō** is ablative. In 3 **quam** is used and **illum** is accusative ; in 4 **quam** is omitted and **illō** is ablative.

The omission of **quam** is commonest in negative sentences and in relative clauses. Thus, **vir quō nēmō fortior erat**, *a man than whom none was (ever) braver.*

260. RULE. — Ablative of Comparison. — *In expressions involving a comparative with **quam** the case used after **quam** is the case which the completed sentence would require. If **quam** is omitted, the ablative is used.*

261.

VOCABULARY

- | | |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| vēlōx, vēlōcis, <i>swift.</i> | lātitudō, inis, f., <i>width,</i> |
| tūtus, a, um, <i>safe.</i> [mous. | <i>breadth.</i> |
| turpis, e, <i>disgraceful, infam-</i> | perveniō, ire, pervēnī, per- |
| Rhodanus, ī, m., <i>the Rhone.</i> | ventum, <i>come up, arrive,</i> |
| quam, adv., <i>than.</i> | reach. [besiege. |
| latus, ² lateris, n., <i>side, flank.</i> | obsideō, ēre, obsēdī, obsessus, |

262.

REVIEW EXERCISES

- I. 1. Oppidum multōs diēs ā Caesare oppugnātum erat.
 2. Paucīs mēnsibus cibī inopiā hostēs labōrābunt. 3. Incolās quī ex oppidō exiērunt laudat. 4. Quī clāmōribus Gallōrum terrentur? 5. Tempus annī bellō nōn erat idōneum.

¹ **saepius** is a comparative adverb, *oftener* : see 280.

² Do not confuse with the adjective **lātus**, a, um.

II. 1. On that day Caesar left Rome. 2. That day was the end of the war. 3. He left the city and hastened into Gaul. 4. In that battle a few of our men were wounded in the head.

263.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Helvētīi finitimis fortiōrēs erant. 2. Hoc flūmen quod vidētis altius quam Rhodanus est. 3. Rōmānī multis rēbus potentiōrēs illis gentibus erant. 4. Equōs vēlōciōrēs quam illōs omnēs vidimus. 5. Turpissimum est agrōs sociōrum vāstāre. 6. Hoc latus castrōrum tūtius erat illō, quod hostēs discesserant. 7. Caesar Rōmā contendit et ad finēs Helvētiōrum pervenit. 8. Flūmen Rhodanus quīngentōs pedēs lātum est. 9. Vēlōciōrēs equitēs quam tuōs nōn vidi. 10. Urbs, quam Rōmānī obsidēbant, lātissima erat.

II. 1. The Celts are the bravest of all the Gauls. 2. Have you seen a more disgraceful flight? 3. That side of the fortifications that you see has been besieged for many days. 4. The sea is deeper than the deepest rivers. 5. What road is shorter than that? 6. This month is shorter than that.

LESSON 44

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (CONTINUED). ABLATIVE OF MEASURE OF DIFFERENCE

264. Adjectives ending in *-er* form the superlative by adding *-rimus*, to the *nominative singular masculine*. The comparative is formed regularly (256, 2).

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
pulcher (pulchr-), <i>beautiful</i> [<i>eager</i>	pulchrior, pulchr- <i>ius</i>	pulcherrimus, a, <i>um</i>
ācer (acr-), <i>keen</i> ,	ācrior, ācrius	ācerrimus, a, um

265. The following six adjectives ending in **-lis** form their superlative by adding **-limus, a, um** to the base. The comparative is regular.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
similis, e (simil-), <i>like</i>	similior, ius	simillimus, a, um
dissimilis, e (dissimil-), <i>unlike</i>	dissimilior, ius	dissimilimus, a, um
facilis, e (facil-), <i>easy</i>	facilior, ius	facillimus, a, um
difficilis, e (difficil-), <i>hard</i>	difficilior, ius	difficillimus, a, um
gracilis, e (gracil-), <i>slender</i>	gracilior, ius	gracillimus, a, um
humilis, e (humil-), <i>low</i>	humilior, ius	humillimus, a, um

266. Examine the following :

1. **Hic mōns centum pedibus altior quam ille est, this mountain is a hundred feet higher (literally, higher by a hundred feet) than that.**
2. **Hoc iter multō facilius illō est, this road is much easier (literally, easier by much) than that.**

Observe that the ablatives **centum pedibus** and **multō** express the *measure of difference* between the objects compared.

267. RULE. — **Measure of Difference.** — *The Measure of Difference is expressed in connection with the comparative degree by the ablative without a preposition.*

268. Sometimes the comparative and superlative are used without making a comparison between two objects. Then the comparative means *too* or *rather*, and the superlative *very* or *exceedingly*.

1. *Hic mōns altissimus est, this mountain is very (or exceedingly) high.*
2. *Hic mōns altior est, this mountain is rather (or too) high.*

269.

VOCABULARY

adventus, ūs, m., <i>approach, arrival.</i>	animus, ī, m., <i>mind, courage, spirit, disposition.</i>
lēnis, e, <i>smooth, gentle.</i>	inter, prep. with acc., <i>between, among, during.</i>
exspectō, āre, āvī, ātus, <i>await, wait for, expect.</i>	certiōrem eum faciō, with dē and abl., <i>I inform him (lit., I make him more certain) of.</i>
ibi, adv., <i>in that place, there.</i>	

270.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar in Galliā multās legiōnēs habuit. 2. Quod cōnsilium tūtius hōc est? 3. Nāvēs quibus militēs missi erant vēlōcissimae sunt. 4. Helvētiī finitimōs multōs annōs finibus prohibuerant. 5. Turpissimum est ē proeliō discēdere.

II. 1. There are not enough horsemen in Rome. 2. Many soldiers have gone from Rome to Gaul. 3. Caesar's army was compelled to fight for two days. 4. Late at night the general ordered the soldiers to pitch camp.

271.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Impetum hostium exspectāre difficillimum est. 2. Rīpae huius flūminis lēniōrēs sunt. 3. Lēgātus multō fortior meō frātre est. 4. Pōns inter duo oppida factus erat. 5. Omnium urbis viārum haec multō brevissima est. 6. Dē adventū nāvium eum certiōrem fēcērunt. 7. Iter inter altōs montēs angustum et difficillimum erat. 8. Collis in quō Rōmāni castra posuerant centum pedibus altior illō est quī ad vicum est. 9. Dē cāsū exercitūs

lēgātōs certiōrēs fēcīt. 10. Quī eōs certiōrēs dē Caesaris adventū fēcērunt?

II. 1. There¹ was there an exceedingly high mountain. 2. The Rhone is five feet deeper than that river. 3. This city in many respects² is rather like³ Rome. 4. Their spirits were roused by the bravery of our men. 5. We informed them about the difficult road.

LESSON 45

IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES. Possum

272. Several common adjectives are irregularly compared. Which of these are irregular in English?

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bonus, a, um, <i>good</i>	melior, melius	optimus, a, um
malus, a, um, <i>bad</i>	peior, peius	pessimus, a, um
magnus, a, um, <i>great</i>	maior, maius	maximus, a, um
parvus, a, um, <i>small</i>	minor, minus	minimus, a, um
multus, a, um, <i>much</i>	— plūs	plūrimus, a, um
multi, ae, a, <i>many</i>	plūrēs, plūra	plūrimī, ae, a
vetus, veteris, <i>old</i>	vetustior, vetustius	veterrimus, a, um
senex, senis, <i>old</i>	senior (maior nātū)	maximus nātū
(501)		
iuvenis, e, <i>young</i>	iūnior (minor nātū)	minimus nātū
superus, a, um, <i>above</i>	superior, superius, <i>higher</i>	suprēmus, summus, <i>highest</i>
īferus, a, um, <i>below</i>	īferior, īferius, <i>lower</i>	īfimus, īmus, <i>low-est.</i>

¹ See note on 49, II. 3. ² rēs. ³ See 163.

273. **Plūs**, *more*, is not declined like other comparatives (257). Wherein is the difference?

SINGULAR			PLURAL	
	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	—	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
GEN.	—	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
DAT.	—	—	plūribus	plūribus
ACC.	—	plūs	plūrēs, is	plūra
ABL.	—	—	plūribus	plūribus

274. **Possūm** (**pot(is) + sum**), *I am able, I can.*

PRIN. PARTS: **possūm, posse, potuī, —**

Learn all tenses of the indicative (522).

Observe

1. That the **t** of **pot** becomes **s** before **s**, and that the **f** of the tenses formed from the perfect stem is dropped after the **t** of **pot**.
2. That in other respects this compound of **sum** is formed and conjugated like **sum** (521).

275.

VOCABULARY

fidēs, eī, f. , <i>trust, confidence.</i>	accēdō, ere, accessī, accessū-
potestās, ātis, f. (possūm), <i>power, authority.</i>	rus (with ad and the acc.), <i>go or come near, approach.</i>
nōbilis, e , <i>well known, noble.</i>	hūc , adv., <i>to this place, hither.</i>
amplūs, a, um , <i>large, extensive, ample.</i>	quam maximus , <i>the greatest possible, as large as possible</i> (with superlatives quam has the force "as possible").
permittō, ere, permīsī, permis- sus , <i>give up, intrust, permit.</i>	

276.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Eōs difficiliter iter facere cōegit. 2. Sed hostēs eō diē impetum in eōs nōn fēcērunt. 3. Gallōs dē eius cōsiliis certiōrēs fēcērunt. 4. Paucī dē nostris ad flūmen lātissimum pervēnerant. 5. Urbs cuius moenia obsēdimus lātior mille passibus illō oppidō est.

II. 1. The house is many feet higher than the wall. 2. We have been waiting for the attack for five days. 3. The spirits of the cavalry were aroused by Caesar's speech. 4. We shall inform him of your misfortune.

277.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Poterat; potuerat; potestis; poterit. 2. Caesar quam maximis itineribus in Galliam contendit. 3. Accēdere ad vīcum, quī summō¹ in monte positus est, nōn possunt. 4. Omnia in fidem² et potestātem populī Rōmānī illae nātiōnēs permīsērunt. 5. Ubi dē eius adventū Helvētīi certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum nōbilissimōs civitātis mittunt. 6. Aestāte plūra proelia quam hieme facta sunt. 7. Legiōnem summum collem mūnīre iubet. 8. Helvētīi ob flūmina maxima trānsire in prōvinciam nostram nōn poterant. 9. Pompēius sex annīs maior nātū erat quam Caesar.

II. 1. On the top of the hill was a very small house. 2. The general was ten years older than the lieutenant. 3. Very old people cannot make long journeys. 4. Very many have come hither because the fields are rather extensive. 5. We all ought to do as much as possible.

¹ on the highest part of, on the top of. Certain other adjectives also may be used to denote not what object, but what part of the object is meant, as *īmus*, the lowest part of, the bottom of; *medius*, the middle of; *extrēmus*, the end of.

² keeping, protection.

LESSON 46

REVIEW. FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

278. Compare the following adjectives, giving the English meanings :

turpis	pessimus	ācrior	minus
asper	tūtior	īmus	superus
amplūs	vēlōx	similis	plūrēs
nōbilis	vetustior	maior	senior

279. Adverbs are formed from adjectives.

1. Adjectives of the first and second declension form the adverb by adding *-ē* to the base.

ADJECTIVE	BASE	ADVERB
cārus, <i>dear</i>	cār-	cārē, <i>dearly</i>
pulcher, <i>beautiful</i>	pulchr-	pulchrē, <i>beautifully</i>
miser, <i>wretched</i>	miser-	miserē, <i>wretchedly</i>

2. Adjectives of the third declension form the adverb by adding *-ter* to the stem. Stems ending in *-nt* drop *-t*.

ADJECTIVE	STEM	ADVERB
fortis, <i>brave</i>	forti-	fortiter, <i>bravely</i>
prūdēns, <i>wise</i>	prūdent-	prūdentē, <i>wisely</i>

3. In some adjectives the *ablative singular*, in others the *neuter accusative singular*, serves as an adverb :

prīmus, <i>first</i>	prīmō, <i>at first</i>
multus, <i>much</i>	multum, <i>much</i>
facilis, <i>easy</i>	facile, <i>easily</i>

280. The comparative of the adverb is the same as the neuter singular of the comparative of the adjective; the

superlative of the adverb is formed from the superlative of the adjective by changing final *-us* to *-ē* (note one exception below). *It is, therefore, necessary to know the comparison of the adjective in order to compare the adverb.*

ADJECTIVE	ADVERB	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
cārus	cārē, <i>dearly</i>	cārius	cārissimē
pulcher	pulchrē, <i>beautifully</i>	pulchrius	pulcherrimē
bonus	bene, <i>well</i>	melius	optimē
facilis	facile, <i>easily</i>	facilius	facillimē
ācer	ācriter, <i>eagerly</i>	ācrius	ācerrimē
multus	multum, <i>much</i>	plūs	plūrimum
magnus	magnopere, <i>greatly</i>	magis	maximē

Form and compare the adverbs of these adjectives in 278: turpis, amplus, nōbilis, pessimus, vēlōx, plūrēs.

281.

VOCABULARY

agō, agere, ēgī, āctus, <i>drive, lead, do.</i>	agmen, ¹ agminis, n. (agō), <i>army (on the march), column; novissimum agmen, the rear; primum agmen, the van.</i>
instruō, ere, instrūxī, instrūctus, <i>draw up, form, arrange.</i>	
administrō, āre, āvī, ātus, <i>manage, direct, administer.</i>	proximus, a, um, <i>nearest, next (163).</i>
plūrimum possum, <i>I am very powerful, have most influence.</i>	apud, prep. with acc., <i>among, with, near.</i>
	quārtus, a, um, <i>fourth.</i>

282.

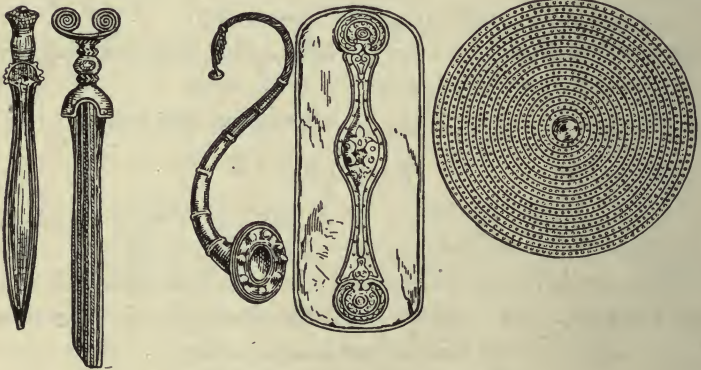
EXERCISES

- I. 1. Apud Helvētiōs Orgetorīx plūrimum poterat.
2. Rēs ab imperātōre optimē administrābantur.
3. Helvētīi multō ācrius quam fīnitimī cum hostibus contendēbant.
4. Caesar aciem summō in colle instrūxit et impetum

¹ See lower illustration facing page 31.

exspectāvit. 5. Vīcus ad quem primum agmen pervēnerat proximus erat finibus Gallōrum. 6. Omnia quae lēgātus iusserat milites bene ēgerunt. 7. Ubi¹ Caesar ad novissimum agmen pervēnit, ācerrimē cum hostibus equitēs pugnābant. 8. Summus collis ā peditibus nostris occupātus est. 9. In eō proeliō Orgetorigis filiam et unum ē filiis nostris cēperunt, eī multos interfecerunt. 10. Nostris quam fortissimē pugnāverunt, sed expugnāre oppidum nōn potuerunt. 11. Nostris socii apud finitimōs ob amicitiam populi Rōmāni plurimum possunt.

II. 1. He hastened into the territories of the Helvetii and arrived there² on the fourth day. 2. Caesar was very powerful among the allies of the Roman people. 3. The enemy attacked the rear very fiercely. 4. Who can manage this affair well? 5. Caesar ordered the allies to make as long³ marches as possible. 6. The general will draw up the line of battle very carefully.⁴ 7. The best citizens are not always the bravest soldiers.

¹ *when.*² *eō (adv.).*³ *magnus.*⁴ *See 147, 3.*

Gallic Swords, Signal Horn, and Shields

LESSON 47

CHAPTER VI

THE TWO ROUTES BY WHICH THE HELVETII COULD
LEAVE THEIR COUNTRY

283. Duōbus itineribus Helvētiī domō¹ exīre potuērunt. Unum per Sēquanōs inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum angustum et difficile erat, quod mōns altissimus impendēbat. Alterum iter per prōvinciam nostram multō facilius est, quod inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit isque² vadō trānsītur. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum proximumque Helvētiōrum finibus est Genāva. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Omnia ad profectiōnem Helvētiī comparāvērunt et ad rīpam Rhodanī convēnērunt.

LESSON 48

PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

284. Learn the forms of the personal and reflexive pronouns with their meanings (511): **ego**, *I*; **tū**, *you*; **sui**, *of himself, herself, itself*.

285. USE OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS

1. The pronoun of the first person is **ego**, *I*; of the second person **tū**, *you*; of the third person **is**, **ea**, **id**, *he, she, it* (190, *e*). They are used in Latin as subjects only to show emphasis or to avoid ambiguity.
 - a. **Tē vocō**, *I'm calling you*. ("I" is unemphatic, and therefore **ego** is not used.)
 - b. **Ego tē vocō**, *I (emphatic) am calling you*. (Such emphasis

¹ Why is there no preposition? See 237, 3. ² *I.e.* the river Rhone.

might be expressed in English by the translation, "It is I who am calling you.")

c. *Ego eum laudō* ; *is mē culpat*, *I praise him* ; *he blames me*.

286.

USE OF THE REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

1. A reflexive pronoun is one that refers back to the subject of the clause or sentence in which it stands (see also 428). It is never in the nominative case and so is never subject.
- | | |
|---|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> S. 1. I praise <i>myself</i> 2. You praise <i>yourself</i> 3. { He praises <i>himself</i> }
 { She praises <i>herself</i> } | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> PL. We praise <i>ourselves</i> You praise <i>yourselves</i> They praise <i>themselves</i> |
|---|---|
2. In Latin the pronouns of the first and second person, *ego* and *tū* (except in the nominative case), are used both as personal and reflexive pronouns. There is no special form for the reflexive as in English. In the third person, however, there is a special form for the reflexive, *suī*, of *himself*, *herself*, *itself*.
- | | |
|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> S. 1. <i>mē laudō</i>, <i>I praise myself</i> 2. <i>tē laudās</i>, <i>you praise yourself</i> 3. <i>sē laudat</i>, <i>he praises himself</i> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> PL. <i>nōs laudāmus</i>, <i>we praise ourselves</i> <i>vōs laudātis</i>, <i>you praise yourselves</i> <i>sē laudant</i>, <i>they praise themselves</i> |
|--|--|
3. Review 190. Do not confuse *is* with *suī*. *Suī* regularly refers to the subject of the sentence or clause in which it stands (direct reflexive). Often, however, it refers to the subject of the main verb rather than to that of the clause or phrase to which it belongs grammatically (indirect reflexive).

- a. *Vir sē videt, the man sees himself.*
 b. *Vir eum videt, the man sees him (some one else).*
4. Review 207, 2. Do not confuse *ipse* with *sē*. *Ipse* is not a reflexive, but merely emphasizes the noun to which it belongs. It may be used in any case.
- a. *Vir ipse eum vidit, the man himself saw him.*
 b. *Vir sē vidit, the man saw himself.*
 c. *Virum ipsum vidimus, we saw the man himself.*

287. The preposition *cum* does not precede the ablative of personal and reflexive pronouns, but is appended to them: *tēcum*, instead of *cum tē*; *nōbiscum*, instead of *cum nōbīs*. So also *quibuscum*, *with whom*, instead of *cum quibus*.

288. Examine the following :

1. *Ego, quī haec faciō, tuus pater sum, I, who do this, am your father.*
 2. *Vōs, quī haec facitis, mei amīcī estis, you, who do this, are my friends.*

Review 197. Observe that the verb of the relative clause agrees in person with the antecedent of the relative.

289.

VOCABULARY

- | | |
|--|--|
| <i>dēdō, dēdere, dēdidī, dēditus,</i> | <i>commeātus, ūs, m., provisions,</i> |
| <i>give up, surrender.</i> | <i>supplies.</i> |
| <i>committō, ere, commisi, com-</i> | <i>spēs, eī, f., hope.</i> |
| <i>missus, intrust, commit;</i> | <i>sine, prep. with abl., without.</i> |
| <i>proelium committō, begin</i> | <i>ante, adv., and prep. with</i> |
| <i>battle.</i> | <i>acc., before.</i> |
| <i>recipiō, ere, recēpī, receptus,</i> | <i>postea, adv., afterwards.</i> |
| <i>take back, receive; sē reci-</i> | <i>autem, conj. (never the first</i> |
| <i>pere, retreat, betake one's self.</i> | <i>word), but, however.</i> |

SINGULAR

PLURAL

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. mē recipiō , <i>I retreat</i> | nōs recipimus , <i>we retreat</i> |
| 2. tē recipis , <i>you retreat</i> | vōs recipitis , <i>you retreat</i> |
| 3. sē recipit , <i>he retreats</i> | sē recipiunt , <i>they retreat</i> |

290.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Omnis rei pūblicaē spēs in militum virtūte posita¹ est. 2. Brevi tempore quattuor ē principibus Rōmam mitentur. 3. Caesarī plūs potestātis erat quam Pompēiō. 4. Haec rēs hostibus nūntiāta est, quōrum equitātus ā nostris summō in colle vidēbātur.

II. 1. Caesar was very powerful among the Romans on account of his bravery. 2. There our men fought very fiercely. 3. The line of battle that he had drawn up was next to the river. 4. It is very difficult to manage this.

291.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Sine vōbis miserrimī erimus. 2. Ego sum miles, tū es nauta. 3. Nōbīs est satis cibī. 4. Post id proelium hostēs domum sē recēpērunt. 5. Magnā cum celeritāte in prōvinciam nōs recipiēmus. 6. Vir sē culpat, ego autem eum laudō. 7. Ubi Gallī ad eōrum finēs pervēnērunt, sēsē dēdidērunt. 8. Caesar legiōnēs ad² sē convocārī iubet. 9. Paucīs ante diēbus lēgātum ipsum fugere coēgērunt. 10. Vōs quī haec fēcistis culpāre vōs dēbētis. 11. Quis tēcum Athēnās ībit?

II. 1. The enemy with whom you were fighting have retreated. 2. I shall compel the chief himself to come to me. 3. Caesar praised the plans that were reported to him. 4. You wish to retreat, but I wish to begin battle. 5. We shall always defend ourselves bravely. 6. The girl herself will defend him. 7. He will do this himself.

¹ depends. ² before.

LESSON 49

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES. DATIVE OF SERVICE

292. The possessive adjectives are as follows. They are all declined like adjectives of the first and second declension.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1ST PER.	meus, ¹ a, um, <i>my</i> , <i>mine</i>	noster, nostra, nostrum, <i>our, ours</i>
2D PER.	tuus, a, um, <i>your</i> , <i>yours</i>	vester, vestra, vestrum, <i>your, yours</i>
3D PER.	suus, a, um, <i>his (own)</i> , <i>her (own), its (own)</i>	suus, a, um, <i>their (own)</i> , <i>their</i>

293. USE OF THE POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES

1. They agree in gender, number, and case with the noun *to which they belong*, and not *with the noun to which they refer*. They are not used except for emphasis or contrast.
 - a. Suum patrem puella vidit, *the girl saw her father.*
 - b. Vestrum amicum vidimus, *we saw your (plur.) friend.*
 - c. Tuās filiās vidit, *he saw your (sing.) daughters.*
2. Suus, a, um, is reflexive, and refers to the subject of the verb. When "his," "her," "its," "their," does not refer to the subject, use the genitive of *is, eius, his, her, its; eōrum, their; eārum, their* (referring to feminine).
 - a. Agricola suum equum laudat, *the farmer praises his (i.e. his own) horse.*
 - b. Agricola eius equum laudat, *the farmer praises his (some one else's, not the farmer's) horse.*
 - c. Agricola eōrum equōs laudat, *the farmer praises their horses.*
 - d. Agricolae suōs equōs laudant, *the farmers praise their (their own) horses.*

¹ The vocative singular is *mī*.

294. Examine the following :

1. **Magnō ūsuī nostrīs fuit**, *it was a great help to our men* (literally, *it was for a great help to our men*).
2. **Tertiam aciem nostrīs subsidiō mīsit**, *he sent the third line as a relief* (literally, *for a relief*) *to our men*.

Observe that the datives **magnō ūsuī** and **subsidiō** denote the end or purpose, that for which a thing serves. This use of the dative is called the *dative of service or purpose*.

295. RULE. — **Dative of Service or Purpose**. — *The dative is used with sum and a few other verbs to denote the purpose or end of the act or state expressed by the verb. Commonly there is combined with the dative of purpose another dative denoting the person interested in the purpose or end, or affected by it.*

296.

SUMMARY

	PERSONAL PRONOUNS	REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS	POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES
FIRST PERSON	ego	meī ¹	meus, a, um, <i>my, mine</i> noster, nostra, nostrum, <i>our, ours</i>
SECOND PERSON	tū	tui ¹	tuus, a, um, <i>your, yours</i> (sing.) vester, vestra, vestrum, <i>your, yours</i> (plur.)
THIRD PERSON	is, ea, id	sui ¹	suus, a, um, <i>his, his own, her, her own, its, its own, their, their own</i> (reflexive) When not reflexive, use the genitive of is, ea, id.

¹ Why is there no nominative form for reflexive pronouns?

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0





Ruined Arches of the Claudian Aqueduct outside of Rome, to the south



Roman Baths at Bath, England

207.

VOCABULARY

redeō, redire, rediī, reditūrus,
go back, return.

dīmittō, ere, dīmisi, dīmissus,
send off, dismiss, let go.

reddō, ere, reddidī, redditus,
give back, return, render.

sustineō, ēre, sustinui, sus-
tentus, *hold up, withstand,*
sustain.

opus, operis, n., *work, labor.*

tamen, adv., *yet, however,*
nevertheless.

itaque, conj., *and so, there-*
fore.

inde, adv., *thence, thereupon.*

ūsus, ūs, m., *use, advantage,*
benefit.

208.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Hoc mihi, illud tibi difficile est. 2. Posteā in silvās sēsē recēpērunt. 3. Nōs dē proeliō certiōrēs faciet. 4. Caesar eōs sibi arma dēdere cōgit. 5. Militēs sē laudābant, eōs autem culpābant. 6. Nōbīs Rōmāe satis cibī est.

II. 1. Some retreated in one direction, some in another. 2. The Gauls themselves had been frightened by Caesar's soldiers. 3. He himself is praising himself. 4. Will you go with me to Corinth? 5. They ought themselves to fight.

209.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar equitātum auxiliō suis mīsit. 2. Tuī amīcī tibi, meī mihi sunt cārissimī. 3. Labiēnus ūnum latus castrōrum rīpīs flūminis mūniēbat. 4. Haec rēs nostrīs magnō ūsuī erat. 5. Impetum sustinēre nōn poterant; itaque in suōs finēs rediērunt. 6. Hostēs Caesarī sē suaque omnia dēdidērunt. 7. Propter operis magnitudinem flūmen trānsire Helvētiī nōn potuērunt. 8. Caesar eius militēs dīmisit, suōs autem in castrīs tenuit. 9. Cōnsul in finēs Helvētiōrum quam maximīs itineribus contendere cōstituit. 10. Caesar Helvētiōs adventum suum exspectāre iussit.

II. 1. Caesar compelled the Gauls to surrender all their possessions.¹ 2. They will return everything to him. 3. The general sent three cohorts as a help to his men. 4. Thereupon the Gauls attacked the rear. 5. They arrived at daybreak and began to fortify their camp.

LESSON 50

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS. DESCRIPTIVE ABLATIVE AND GENITIVE

300. Review 195, 216. Indefinite pronouns are used to indicate that *some* person or thing is referred to, without indicating *just what* one. They vary in degree of indefiniteness. Learn the declension of the following indefinite pronouns, carefully distinguishing the meanings (see 515):

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
quis	qua	quid (quod), <i>somebody, anybody</i>
aliquis	aliqua	aliquid (aliquod), <i>some one</i>
quisquam		quicquam, <i>any one</i> (at all) (no plur.)
quīdam	quaedam	quoddam, quiddam, <i>a certain one</i>
quisque	quaeque	quidque, quodque, <i>each one, every one</i>

1. The meanings of the neuter would be *something*, etc.
2. **Quisquam** and **quisque** are declined like **quis**.
3. In the neuter the **quid**-forms are used as pronouns, the **quod**-forms as adjectives.

301. USES OF THE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

- I. **Quis**, *some one, any one*, is never the first word in its clause. It is generally used only after **sī**, **nisi**, **nē**, **num**: **sī quid hīs accidit**, *if anything happens to them*.

¹ Express by the neuter plural of the proper possessive adjective.

2. **Quisque**, *each*, should be distinguished from **omnis**, *all, every*. It is not often used in the plural, and regularly follows the word to which it belongs.
3. **Quisquam** is used chiefly in negative and conditional sentences: **nec quisquam hoc facit**, *and nobody does this*.
4. **Aliquis**, *some one or other, some one*, denotes some one whose identity is unknown: **aliquis tibi haec dixit**, *some one (I do not know who) told you this*.
5. **Quidam** denotes some one whose identity is known but is not fully revealed: **quidam haec mihi dixit**, *some one (I know who, but I will not tell) told me this*.

302. Examine the following:

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. Vir summae virtūtis fuit, | } <i>he was a man of very great</i> |
| 2. Vir summā virtūte fuit, | |

Observe that the genitive phrase **summae virtūtis** and the ablative phrase **summā virtūte** describe the noun **vir**; and that an adjective modifies the nouns **virtūtis** and **virtūte**.

303. RULE. — Descriptive Genitive and Ablative. — *The ablative or the genitive of a noun, if itself modified by an adjective or genitive, may be used to describe a person or object. The genitive is less common in this use than the ablative; it occurs chiefly in expressions of measure or number, and in phrases consisting of nouns modified by magnus, maximus, summus, tantus.*

304.

VOCABULARY

diligentia , ae, f., <i>carefulness, diligence, industry.</i>	aliēnus , a, um, <i>another's, strange, unfavorable.</i>
grātia , ae, f., <i>favor, influence, kindness.</i>	reperiō , īre, repperī, repertus, <i>find, discover, ascertain.</i>
plēbs , plēbis, f., <i>the common people.</i>	sī , conj., <i>if.</i>
	nisi , conj., <i>if not, unless, except.</i>

305.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Lēgātī sua omnia Caesarī dēdere iubentur. 2. Auxilium, quod ā Labiēnō missum erat, equitātūi magnō ūsūi fuit. 3. Legiōnī satis cibī nōn erat, itaque domum sē recēpit. 4. Galli sē suaque omnia Rōmānis dēdidērunt, quod magnitudīne eōrum operis terrēbantur. 5. Hostēs in nostram aciem impetum fēcerant.

II. 1. The general ordered the hostages to come before¹ him. 2. He will return to Rome and will see his father. 3. We all love our country. 4. We like our friends, you yours. 5. He praised his own children, but blamed hers.

306.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Quemque domō exire iubent. 2. Sī quis eius filiam laudat, laetus est. 3. Quīdam ex Gallīs multā nocte ad Caesarem contendērunt. 4. Orgetorix apud Helvētiōs magnā grātiā erat. 5. Quis dē hostium cāsū aliquid novī² repperit? 6. Liberī quīque³ pugnāre nōn poterant in ūnum locum convocātī erant. 7. Prīnceps propter diligētiā magnae potestātis apud suōs fuit. 8. Neque (*and not*) ē proeliō tōtō diē quisquam discessit. 9. Sī aliēnō in locō proelium committent, vincentur. 10. Fīnitimī nostrī bonō animō⁴ esse in nōs dicuntur.

II. 1. Every one ought to love his country. 2. She is wretched, unless she hears something good² about her son. 3. A certain one of the merchants informed Caesar of this. 4. Caesar was a man of great influence among the common people. 5. Some fled in one direction, some in another.

¹ ad. ² See 250, 2. ³ quīque (quī + que) = et iī quī. ⁴ bonō animō, *well disposed*.

LESSON 51

PARTICIPLES. FORMS. DECLENSION. MEANINGS

307. The following outline shows how the tenses of the participles may be formed from the stems that are obtained from the principal parts (86):

TENSE	ACTIVE VOICE	PASSIVE VOICE
PRESENT	pres. stem + ns ¹	wanting
FUTURE	participial stem + ūrus	Gerundive. Pres. stem + ndus ¹
PERFECT	wanting	the last one of the principal parts

1. Learn the participles, with their meanings, of the model verbs (516-520).
2. Participles ending in **-ns** are declined like adjectives of the third declension (504); those in **-us**, like **bonus** (62).

308. The participle is a *verbal adjective*. As a verb, it may govern a case; as an adjective, it agrees with a substantive. The tenses of the participle denote time, not absolutely, but *relatively*, that is, *with reference to the time of the verb* of the clause in which it stands. The following examples will show how the time of the participle depends upon that of the main verb.

¹ **iō** verbs have a connecting vowel **e** before the ending; *i.e.* **audiēns. audiendus.**

1. **Videō eum id agentem**, *I see him as (while) he is doing it* (literally, *him doing it*).
2. **Vidēbam eum id agentem**, *I saw him as he was doing it*.
3. **Vidēbō eum id agentem**, *I shall see him as he will be doing it*.

309.

TENSES OF THE PARTICIPLE

1. *Present*: representing an action as *in progress* at the time indicated by the tense of the main verb.
2. *Perfect*: representing an action as *completed* at the time indicated by the tense of the main verb.
3. *Future*: expressing an action that is *subsequent to* (*not yet done at*) the time indicated by the tense of the main verb.

310. Form all the participles, giving the English meanings, of **dō**, *give*; **videō**, *see*; **faciō**, *make, do*; **mūniō**, *fortify*; **eō**, *go*. (525.)

311. Participles are used in Latin more extensively than in English. In Latin the participle is used to express ideas that are often expressed in English by a relative clause, by clauses beginning with "when," "after," "since," "although," "while," "if," etc. Study carefully the following examples, which show the various relations that the participle expresses :

1. **Militēs missōs nōn culpāvit**, *he did not blame the soldiers who had been sent* (lit., *the soldiers sent*). This use is not common; a relative clause is generally used.
2. **Vidēbam eōs id agentēs**, *I saw them as (or when) they were doing this*.
3. **Caesar cōsul factus in Galliam contendit**, *Caesar, after he had been made consul, hastened into Gaul* (literally, *Caesar having been made consul*, etc.).
4. **Galli hīs rēbus permōtī obsidēs mīserunt**, *the Gauls, since*

(or because) they were alarmed by these things, sent hostages (literally, the Gauls having been alarmed, etc.).

5. **Orgetorix damnātus interficiētur**, if Orgetorix is condemned, he will be killed (literally, Orgetorix having been condemned* will be killed).
6. **Vulnerātus diū pugnābat**, although he had been wounded, he fought for a long time (literally, having been wounded, he fought).
7. **Multōs vicōs captōs incendit**, he captured and burned many villages (literally, he burned many captured villages).

312.

VOCABULARY

aditus, ūs, m., approach.

vāllum, ī, n., rampart, earth-works.

posterus, a, um, next, following.

circum, prep. with acc., around.

permovēō, ēre, permōvī, permōtus, influence, arouse.

circumveniō, ire, circumvēnī, circumventus, come around, surround.

ēdūcō, ere, ēdūxī, ēductus, lead out.

laccessō, ere, laccessivī, laccessitus, attack, harass.

Sēquanī, ōrum, m. plur., the Sequani (a tribe of Gauls).

313.

REVIEW EXERCISES

- I. 1. **Hīc grātiā apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat.**
2. **Gallī cōsiliū cēpērunt quod Rōmānīs nōn grātum erat.**
3. **Sī quid reperitur, Caesarī semper nūntiātur.**
4. **Suam quisque melius quam aliēnam patriam amat.**
5. **Hominēs summae virtūtis esse dīcuntur.**

II. 1. Caesar has been informed of his arrival. 2. The day that Caesar had appointed¹ with the ambassadors came. 3. He ordered the hostages to come to him. 4. He carried all his possessions with him.

¹ cōstituō.

314.

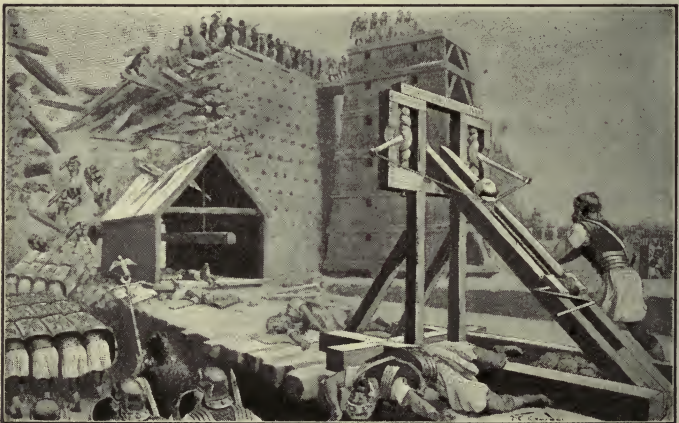
EXERCISES

I. 1. Hīs rēbus permōtī Rōmā exīre mātūrant. 2. In lēgātōs cōpiās ē castrīs ēdūcentēs Gallī impetum fēcērunt. 3. Posterō diē nostrōs aditūs oppidī mūnientēs hostēs lacesent. 4. Rōmānī hanc urbem vāllō et moenibus mūnītam obsidēre cōstituērunt. 5. Caesar duōs diēs ā dextrō cornū lacesitus impetum sustinēre poterat. 6. Legiōnēs ē castrīs ēductās instrūxit. 7. Suum amīcum domō exeuntem videt. 8. Prīncipēs Gallōrum victī Rōmam mittentur. 9. Caesar dē coniūrātiōne quam Gallī fēcērant certior factus est. 10. Lēgātus Gallōs quī castra circumveniēbant sēsē dēdere coēgit.

II. 1. When Caesar had been informed¹ of this, he hurried to Rome. 2. The general captured² their town and fortified it. 3. The enemy harassed us as we were crossing³ the river. 4. If you are defeated,⁴ you will retreat into Italy. 5. Who will go with me into that city that you see? 6. Although we have been surrounded,⁵ we will fight bravely.

¹ 311, 3.² 311, 7.³ 311, 2.⁴ 311, 5.⁵ 311, 6.

(READING SELECTION 457)

*A Siege*

LESSON 52

THE PARTICIPLE (CONTINUED). ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

315. Ablative Absolute. — A noun or a pronoun in the ablative, with a participle agreeing with it, may be used to express any of the ideas mentioned in 311. This construction will be understood best by a careful study of the following examples :

- | | | |
|--|--|---|
| <p>1. Caesar, Germānīs
victīs, in hī-
berna vēnit,</p> | <p>{</p> <p><i>after the Germans had
been conquered,
when he had conquered
the Germans,
after conquering the
Germans,
having conquered the
Germans,
now that the Germans
had been conquered,
the Germans having
been conquered,</i></p> <p>}</p> | <p><i>Caesar went
into winter
quarters.</i></p> |
| <p>2. Oppidō expugnātō,
hostēs vincent,</p> | <p>{</p> <p><i>if the town is captured,
by capturing the town,
since the town has been
captured,
the town having been
captured,</i></p> <p>}</p> | <p><i>they will con-
quer the
enemy.</i></p> |
| <p>3. Nōbīs castra mū-
nientibus, Gallī
pervēnērunt,</p> | <p>{</p> <p><i>while we were fortify-
ing the camp,
as we were fortifying
the camp,</i></p> <p>}</p> | <p><i>the Gauls ar-
rived.</i></p> |

Observe that the ablative absolutes, **Germānis victis, oppidō expugnātō, nōbis mūnientibus**, are translated in a variety of ways. In translating an ablative absolute, one must use judgment in selecting a translation that is consistent with the meaning of the main verb.

Notice that the ablative absolute construction is used only when the participle does not agree with a noun of the main clause (the word "absolute" means that the ablative phrase stands by itself). For example, such a sentence as "When the Gauls had been conquered, they returned home" would be rendered, **Gallī victī domum rediērunt**, and the ablative absolute construction would not be used, because it is possible to make **victī** agree with **Gallī**, which is the subject of **rediērunt**.

316. Since the verb **sum** has no present participle, two substantives, or a substantive or pronoun and an adjective, are sometimes used in the ablative absolute construction.

Duce Caesare Rōmāni semper vincēbant,	}	<i>lit. Caesar (being) leader, under the leadership of Caesar, if Caesar was their leader, when Caesar was their leader,</i>	}	<i>the Romans always used to conquer.</i>
--	---	---	---	---

317. Remember that the Latin perfect participle is *passive*, there being no perfect active participle. The ablative absolute is often used to supply this lack of a perfect active participle; for example, the sentence "Caesar having done this returned to Rome" cannot be expressed literally in Latin. It must be changed to the passive form, "This having been done, Caesar returned to Rome," and then it may be rendered: **hōc factō, Caesar Rōmam rediit**.

318.

VOCABULARY

mulier, mulieris, f., *woman.*

signum, i, n., *sign, ensign, standard* (of the legion).

quam primum, *as soon as possible.*

tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātus, *lift up, raise, remove, take away.*

redūcō, ere, redūxī, reductus, *lead back.*

obtineō, ēre, obtinūī, obtentus, *possess, obtain, retain.*

convertō, ere, convertī, conversus, *turn about, change.*

sīgna convertō, *face about* (literally, *turn the standards about*).

occidō, ere, occīdī, occīsus, *cut down, kill, slay.*

inquam, inquit, def., *say.*

319.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Legiōnem auxiliō nostrīs diū lacessītīs mīsit.
2. Caesar hostium clāmōribus permōtus mūnīre aditūs castrōrum coepit. 3. Cōsul lēgātum sēcum redīre Rōmam iubēbit. 4. Equitātus Gallōs nostra castra circumvenientēs lacessēbat. 5. Lēgātus nihil novī repperit.

II. 1. After the Helvetii had been defeated, they were compelled to return home. 2. He led his forces out of the camp and drew them up. 3. Although many of our men had been wounded they fought bravely. 4. The Gauls could not fortify the mountain themselves.

320.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Tē imperātōre, nōs nōn dēdēmus. 2. Hōc proeliō factō, suōs in hīberna redūxit. 3. His rēbus Caesar factīs quam primum Rōmā exiit. 4. Peditēs in castra reductōs hostēs moenibus prohibēre dux iubet. 5. Suis¹ ā Gallis permōtis¹ Caesar "Impetum" inquit "hostiū expectāre est difficile." 6. Novissimum agmen, sīgnīs conversīs, laces-

¹ Is this ablative absolute?

sere Helvētiōs imperātor iubet. 7. Caesarī Rōmam redire coāctō hoc proelium nūntiātum erat. 8. Hostēs, multīs occīsīs, fortiter nostrum impetum sustinēbant. 9. Omni spē victōriae sublātā, Helvētīi cum mulieribus liberīsque domum rediērunt. 10. Oppidum quod Gallī mūnierant ā Rōmānis incēsum est.

II. 1. Having fought this battle,¹ Caesar led his forces across the river. 2. If you are brave, the republic will be preserved. 3. When the hostages had been freed, they returned to their people. 4. When the leader of the enemy had been killed, the Gauls crossed the river. 5. The Romans faced about and bravely attacked the enemy. 6. After the top of the hill had been fortified, we awaited the enemy. 7. When the Romans had fortified the hill, they returned to their camp. 8. Having burned your villages, we shall kill your leader.

LESSON 53

READING LESSON

CHAPTER VII

CAESAR ATTEMPTS TO CHECK THE MARCH OF THE HELVETII. THEY SEND AMBASSADORS TO HIM

321. His rēbus nūntiātīs Caesar mātūrat Rōmā exīre atque quam maximīs itinēribus ad² Genāvam contendit. Erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna.³ Quā⁴ rē prōvinciam tōtam praebēre quam maximum mīlitum numerum et pontem quī erat ad Genāvam rescindī iubet. Ubi dē

¹ = *this battle having been made.*

² *towards.*

³ *but (only) one.*

⁴ *Quā rē, therefore.*

eius adventū Helvētīi certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs cīvitātis. Quī¹ lēgātī iter per prōvinciam Rōmānam ā Caesare postulant. Sed temporibus antīquīs Helvētīi cōnsulem Cassium occīderant exercitumque eius sub iugum mīserant. Quā rē Caesar hominibus inimicō animō² iter per prōvinciam nōn dedit. Tamen diem conloquiō cum lēgātīs cōstituit.

LESSON 54

INFINITIVES. FORMATION AND MEANINGS

322. Review 182, 183, 184, 307. The following outline shows how the tenses of the infinitive may be obtained from the principal parts :

INFINITIVES

TENSE	ACTIVE VOICE	PASSIVE VOICE
PRESENT	Second one of the principal parts.	Change final <i>e</i> of present infinitive to <i>ī</i> , except in third conjugation, which changes final <i>ere</i> to <i>ī</i> .
FUTURE	Future active participle and <i>esse</i> .	Supine in <i>-um</i> (which is the same form as accusative singular neuter of perfect passive participle), and <i>īrī</i> .
PERFECT	Perfect stem + <i>isse</i> .	Perfect passive participle and <i>esse</i> .

¹ The relative often stands at the beginning of a sentence where English uses a personal pronoun or a demonstrative with or without *and*; hence *Quī lēgātī* = *these ambassadors*.

² See 303.

1. Learn the infinitives, with English meanings, of the model verbs (516-520).

323. Form all participles and infinitives, giving the English meanings, of

vinciō, bind.

iubeō, order.

relinquō, leave.

sum, I am (521).

iaciō, throw.

appellō, name, call.

vincō, conquer.

eō, go (525).

324.

VOCABULARY

auctōritās, ātis, f., reputation, influence, authority.

littera, ae, f., letter of the alphabet; (plur.), letter, document.

rēs frūmentāria, rei frūmentāriae, supplies of grain, provisions.

cottidiānus, a, um, daily.

scribō, ere, scripsī, scriptus, write.

cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsūrus, fall, perish, die.

at, conj., but.

numquam, adv., never.

325.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Gallī cōnsulem cōpiās instruentem lacessivērunt.
 2. Rōmānī, signīs conversīs, oppidum ex itinere oppugnāvērunt. 3. Caesare cōsule Helvētīi coniūrātiōnem faciēbant. 4. Germānī victī fīnitimōs virtūte superābant. 5. Nostrī autem multās mulierēs captās domum mīsērunt.

II. 1. If I am your leader, will you attack the enemy?
 2. The women could do this themselves. 3. After they had slain a few of the enemy, the soldiers were led back to camp. 4. And so the hope of the Gauls was taken away.

326.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Scribī; sustulisse; cāsūrum esse. 2. Instruī; prohibuisse; missōs esse; prohibērī. 3. Capī; cēpī; reddidisse; dēdidisse. 4. Missūram esse; mīsisse; redūcī. 5. Paucī dē filiis occīsī esse dīcuntur. 6. Numquam culpārī cupimus. 7. Gallī ā finitimīs cottidiānīs proeliis lacessīti ex suis finibus discēdere coepērunt. 8. Caesar multās literās scripsisse dicēbātur. 9. Frūmentum ad Caesarem nāvibus portārī nōn poterat. 10. At decem ē nostris cecidisse in hōc proeliō dīcuntur.

II. 1. He is said to be a man of great reputation. 2. Those women are said to have been sent to Rome. 3. This place cannot be taken by storm by the enemy on account of its very large ramparts. 4. You were compelled to retreat into the province. 5. Caesar ordered the ships to be burned. 6. This is said to have been a great advantage to them.

(READING SELECTION 458)

LESSON 55

INDIRECT DISCOURSE. SIMPLE STATEMENTS

327. The words or thoughts of a person may be quoted either directly or indirectly. A direct quotation (*i.e.* direct discourse) is one which gives the exact words or thoughts of the original speaker or writer. An indirect quotation (*i.e.* indirect discourse) is one in which instead of the original words or thoughts we have their substance (general sense) stated in the words of another.

The English sentence, "I am present," when quoted directly, is stated thus: "He said, 'I am present.'" When quoted indirectly, it assumes this form: "He said that he

was present," or, after a present tense of the verb of saying, "He says that he is present." An indirect statement, then, is generally introduced in English by the word "that," although this may be omitted, as, "He says (that) he is coming."

328. Examine carefully the following :

DIRECT DISCOURSE

tū venīs, *you are coming.*

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

dicit tē venīre, *he says that you are coming, or he says you are coming.*

Note

1. That the English generally expresses the indirect statement by a clause introduced by "that" (expressed or understood).
2. That there is no word in Latin to correspond to the "that" in English.
3. That the Latin changes the verb of the direct statement to the infinitive, and changes the case of the subject to the accusative.

329. RULE. — Indirect Discourse. — *Simple statements, when quoted indirectly after verbs of saying, knowing, thinking, and perceiving, are expressed by the infinitive with its subject in the accusative.*

330. Review 308. The tenses of the infinitive do not follow the tense of the introductory verb. Like the tenses of the participle, they merely denote time *relative* to that of the main verb. The present infinitive describes an action as *going on at the time* of the main verb, the perfect as *completed by (before) that time*, the future as *not yet begun at that time*.

The following examples will show to what tenses of the infinitive the various tenses of the indicative are changed :

TENSE	DIRÈCT DISCOURSE	INDIRECT DISCOURSE
PRESENT	veniō , <i>I am coming</i>	PRESENT videt mē venīre , <i>he sees that I am coming</i> PAST vidit mē venīre , <i>he saw that I was coming</i>
IMPERFECT	veniēbam , <i>I was coming</i>	PRESENT audit mē vēnisse , <i>he hears that I came, or have come</i> PAST audivit mē vēnisse , <i>he heard that I came, or had come</i>
PERFECT	vēnī , <i>I have come, I came</i>	
PLUPERFECT	vēneram , <i>I had come</i>	
FUTURE	veniam , <i>I shall come</i>	PRESENT spērat mē ventūrum (esse) , <i>he hopes that I shall come</i> PAST spērāvit mē ventūrum (esse) , <i>he hoped that I should come</i>

CAUTION. — In indirect discourse the subject of the infinitive should never be omitted.

331.

VOCABULARY

exīstimō, āre, āvī, ātus, <i>think, believe, suppose.</i>	trādō, ere, trādidī, trāditus, <i>give up, surrender, deliver.</i>
dēmōnstrō, āre, āvī, ātus, <i>point out, show, mention.</i>	cōnspectus, ūs, m., <i>sight, view.</i>
spērō, āre, āvī, ātus, <i>hope.</i>	complūrēs, a (ia), <i>a great many, very many.</i>
respondeō, ēre, respondi, respōnsum, <i>answer, reply.</i>	
sciō, scire, scivī, scītus, <i>know, know how.</i>	

332.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Gallī sē domum recipiunt. 2. Caesar Gallōs sē domum recipere dīxit. 3. Nostra arma numquam trādēmus. 4. Respondēmus nostra arma numquam nōs trāditūrōs (esse). 5. Sē in cōspectū suī¹ imperātōris pugnāvisse mīles exīstimāvīt. 6. Armīs trāditīs, in Caesaris potestātem Gallī vēnerant. 7. Caesar nūntiāvit Gallōs, armīs trāditīs, in suam potestātem vēnisse. 8. Omnēs scīmus hanc rem ā lēgātō bene administrātam esse. 9. Caesar suīs "Quis scit" inquit "hunc pontem facere?" 10. Imperātōrī nūntiātum est complūrēs aliōs aliam in partem fugere. 11. Lēgātī respondērunt "Nōs ā finitimīs nostrīs diū lacessitī sumus."

II. 1. The gods will give us help. 2. They thought that the gods would give them help. 3. We have shown that the Gauls were men of the greatest² courage. 4. They said that many had not come. 5. We can do this ourselves. 6. They said they could do this themselves. 7. Caesar replied, "I hope that they will retreat."

¹ The reflexive pronouns and adjectives in an indirect statement usually refer to the subject of the main verb of "saying," "thinking," etc. See 286, 3.

² Do not use *maximus*. See 302, 1.

LESSON 56

DEPONENT VERBS. ABLATIVE WITH *ūtor*, *fruor*, ETC.

333. Deponent verbs have *passive forms* with *active meanings*. These passive forms are regular in their formation and inflection, and are classified in four conjugations, like regular verbs. The principal parts are as follows :

	PRESENT IND.	PRESENT INF.	PERFECT IND.
1ST CONJ.	hortor	hortārī	hortātus sum, <i>I urge, encourage</i>
2D CONJ.	vereor	verērī	veritus sum, <i>I fear</i>
3D CONJ.	sequor	sequī	secūtus sum, <i>I follow</i>
4TH CONJ.	potior	potīrī	potitus sum, <i>I get possession of</i>

1. Learn all forms of the indicative, infinitive, and participle of these four model verbs. (528.)

334. Deponent verbs have a *future active* infinitive instead of a future passive, and they have the *participles* of both *active* and *passive* voices.

335. Review 317. The perfect passive participle of a deponent verb is *active* in meaning.

Cohortātus militēs proelium commisit, after encouraging (literally, having encouraged) his soldiers, he began the battle.

336. Examine the following :

1. *Equīs ūtuntur, they use horses.*
2. *Vītā fruītur, he enjoys life.*

Observe that *equīs* and *vītā* are ablatives, although the corresponding words in English are the direct objects of their verbs.

337. RULE. — Ablative with Certain Verbs. — *The ablative is used with the deponent verbs ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, and vēscor, and their compounds.*

338.

VOCABULARY

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, <i>use, employ.</i>	proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum, <i>set out, march, go.</i>
sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, <i>follow.</i>	arbitror, ārī, ātus sum, <i>think, suppose.</i>
cohortor, ārī, ātus sum, <i>encourage, exhort.</i>	pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsus, <i>expel, drive away, rout.</i>
potior, potīrī, potītus sum, <i>get possession of.</i>	praesidium, ī, n., <i>defense, guard, garrison.</i>
	fossa, ae, f., <i>ditch, trench.</i>

339.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar complūrēs sēcum in Ītaliā itūrōs (esse) sciēbat. 2. Hōc proeliō factō, hostēs sē recipere coāctī sunt. 3. Lēgātī dēmōnstrant sibi esse multōs equitēs. 4. Incolae respondērunt sēsē multum frūmentum dedisse. 5. Lēgātus sē expugnāre oppidum posse spērat.

II. 1. The Gauls thought Caesar would not fight with them. 2. All those arms that you see have been given up. 3. Caesar saw that the enemy were being drawn up on top of the hill. 4. The ambassadors replied that many were leaving their homes.

340.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Arbitrāris; ūtiminī; proficīscētur; proficīscitur. 2. Pepulerāmus; arbitrārī; arbitrāre; ūsūrum esse. 3. Caesar sē cum tribus legiōnibus secūtūrum (esse) dīxit. 4. Cōsul Rōmā profectus in finēs Helvētiōrum contendit. 5. Germānī ūsī esse parvīs equīs dīcuntur. 6. Cōsul,

cuius exercitus pulsus est, ā cīvibus culpābitur. 7. Com-
meātus, quō nostrī ūtēbantur, multā nocte incēsus est.
8. Gallī oppidum vāllō fossāque mūnīrī arbitrābantur.
9. Hostēs potīrī castrīs nōn posse dux vidit. 10. Quattuor
cohortēs praesidiō castrīs Labiēnus reliquit.

II. 1. After encouraging his men, Caesar got possession
of the town. 2. For many days the horsemen who were
following harassed the rear. 3. He will use these legions
as a garrison. 4. Caesar set¹ out from the city, and began
to wage war with the Helvetii. 5. It is reported that
Labiēnus has routed the brave Gauls.

LESSON 57

Ferō AND fiō. DATIVE WITH INTRANSITIVES

341. Learn the principal parts and all forms of the indica-
tive, infinitive, and participle of *ferō* (527) and *fiō* (526).

1. Review the conjugation of *faciō* (177-179), and note
that *fiō* is used as the passive of *faciō*.

342. Examine the following :

1. *Nōbīs persuādent, they persuade us.*
2. *Imperātōrī pāret, he obeys the commander.*

Observe that *nōbīs* and *imperātōrī* are datives, while the
corresponding English words are the objects of their verbs.

343. RULE.— Dative with Verbs. — *Most verbs signify-
ing to favor, help, please, trust, and their contraries, also to
believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten,
pardon, and spare, take the dative.*

¹Use a participle.

344.

VOCABULARY

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, <i>bear, carry.</i>	fiō, fierī, factus sum, <i>become, be made.</i>
cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, conlātus, <i>bring together, gather.</i>	persuādeō, ēre, persuāsi, persuāsum (w. dat.), <i>persuade.</i>
nēmō, dat. nēminī (no gen. or abl.), <i>no one, nobody.</i>	pāreō, ēre, pārui, — (w. dat.), <i>obey.</i>
moror, āri, ātus sum, <i>delay, hinder.</i> [resist, oppose.	noceō, ēre, nocuī, nocitūrus (w. dat.), <i>harm, injure.</i>
resistō, ere, restitī, — (w. dat.),	crēdō, ere, crēdidī, crēditum (w. dat.), <i>believe, trust.</i>

345.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Nostrī equitātum Gallōrum tria mīllia passuum secūtī pepulērunt. 2. Caesar certior factus est Gallōs ex vicō profectōs (esse). 3. Labiēnus urbe vāllō et fossā mūnitā potitur. 4. Prīncipēs Helvētiōrum suōs cohortātī nostrum impetum fortissimē sustinēbant. 5. Caesar suōs ex castrīs ēductōs instruī iubet.

II. 1. They informed us that the enemy were preparing to make an attack. 2. On leaving¹ the camp, our men crossed a river that was twenty feet wide. 3. After fortifying the camp, the Romans awaited their attack. 4. He said they ought to come to him.

346.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Impedimentis in unum locum conlātis, nostrī aciem instrūxērunt. 2. Pārere suō quisque imperātōrī dēbet. 3. Ad castra multōs diēs morātī Gallī domum sē recēpērunt. 4. Persuādere nōs eīs numquam poterimus. 5. Nēmō eī haec dīcentī crēdit. 6. Oppidum expugnārī nōn poterat, quod

¹ Use the ablative absolute.



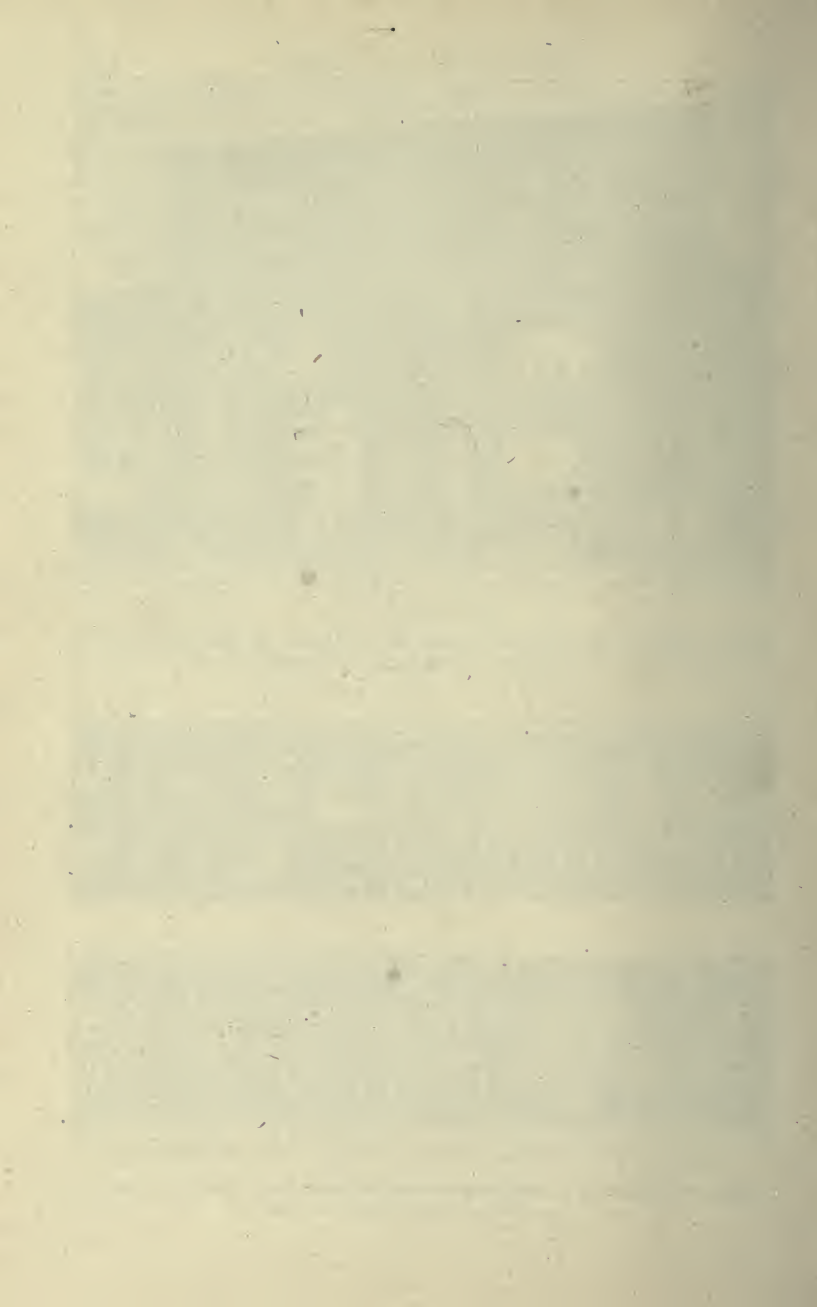
Porta Maggiore, Rome

Over the Arches of the Gate are two Aqueducts. In front of the right-hand Arch is the Tomb of a Government Bread Contractor



Part of Frieze on Bread Contractor's Tomb at the Porta Maggiore

Reading from right to left we see men grinding grain into flour, sifting it, molding the loaves, and putting them into the oven



incolae nostris fortiter resistēbant. 7. Boni libri nēminī nocent. 8. Caesar litteris Labiēni certior fiēbat omnēs Belgās (*Belgians*) contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrātiōnem facere. 9. Quārē (*therefore*) Caesar ad eōs proficisci cōstituit. 10. Itaque rē frūmentāriā comparātā, castra movet, diēbusque quīndecim ad finēs Belgārum pervenit.

II. 1. They inform Caesar ; Caesar is informed by them. 2. They said that a conspiracy was being formed. 3. No one could persuade him. 4. Children ought to obey their elders.¹ 5. I believe that they will injure us. 6. After fortifying the camp, Caesar encouraged his men.

(READING SELECTION 459)

LESSON 58

READING LESSON

CHAPTER VIII

CAESAR ERECTS FORTIFICATIONS. THE HELVETII ATTEMPT TO CROSS THE RHONE, BUT ARE REPELLED

347. Intereā eā legiōne quam sēcum habēbat militibusque quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant mūrum pedēs sēdecim altum et fossam ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum influit, ad montem Iūram, quī finēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiis dīvidit, perdūcit. Eō opere perfectō et castellis mūnītis, facile eōs prohibēre potest. Ubi ea diēs quam cōstituērat cum lēgātis vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum rediērunt, negat² sē posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare. Helvētiī autem, nāvibus iūctis ratibusque cōmplūribus factis, perrumpere cōnātī³ operis mūnitiōne⁴ et mīlitum tēlis repulsī sunt.

¹ See 272, *senex*. ² *negat sē posse*, says he cannot (literally, denies that he can). ³ From *cōnor*, a deponent verb. ⁴ Can you not infer its meaning from the verb *mūniō*?

LESSON 59

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD. PRESENT TENSE. CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

348. Learn the present tense, active and passive, of the subjunctive of the model verbs of the four conjugations (516–520); of **sum** (521); of **possum** (522); of **eō** (525); of **ferō** (527); of **fiō** (526).

No meanings for the subjunctive are given, because the translations vary according to the construction used. These meanings will be understood as the various uses of the subjunctive are taken up in the succeeding lessons.

1. Compare carefully the forms of the present subjunctive of the third and fourth conjugations with those of the future indicative.
2. Notice that the personal endings are the same as in the indicative.
3. The following table will assist in fixing in mind the forms of the first person singular :

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE				
CONJUGATION	I	II	III	IV
ACTIVE	-em	-eam	-am, -iam	-iam
PASSIVE	-er	-ear	-ar, -iar	-iar

349. A sentence consisting of a main (or independent) clause and one or more dependent (or subordinate) clauses is called a complex sentence. In the following examples the dependent verbs are italicized :

When he *arrived* it was late.

He was so tired that he *went* to sleep.

He came that he *might see* me.

The common uses of the subjunctive in dependent clauses are considered in this lesson and those following. Its uses in independent clauses are treated in Lessons 67, 71, 72, 73.

350. Examine the following :

1. **Rōmam venit ut suum amicum videat**, *he comes to Rome that he may see his friend, in order that he may see his friend, in order to see his friend, to see his friend, for the purpose of seeing his friend.*
2. **Vir in urbem fugit nē interficiātur**, *the man flees into the city that he may not be killed, so that he may not be killed, in order not to be killed, lest he be killed.*
 - a. Observe that the verbs of the dependent clauses **ut suum amicum videat** and **nē interficiātur** are subjunctive, and that they express the *purpose* of the action of the main clauses, **ut** (*that*) introducing an affirmative and **nē** (*that . . . not*) a negative clause.
 - b. Notice that the purpose clauses may be translated in a variety of ways. Purpose clauses may be translated by the English infinitive, but *never use the Latin infinitive to express purpose.*

351. RULE. — Subjunctive of Purpose. — *Purpose may be expressed by the present or imperfect subjunctive with ut if the purpose clause is affirmative, and by the subjunctive with nē if the purpose clause is negative.*

352. Review the principal parts and meanings of :

cōnficiō	dēdō	accēdō	proficīscor	ferō
committō	reddō	potior	ūtor	persuādeō
convertō *	redeō	sequor	cadō	noceō
cohortor	redūcō	sciō	tollō	scribō
agō	reperiō	trādō	obsideō	arbitror
crēdō	laccessō	pellō	īnstruō	fīō

353.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Mulieribus liberisque in unum locum convocatis, Galli impetum nostrorum expectare constituunt. 2. Ubi Romani ad eorum fines pervenerunt, Galli eis restiterunt. 3. Legatus suum quemque cibum portare iubet. 4. Orgetorigis filia a Romanis capta certior fiebat neminem sibi nociturum (esse). 5. Quis uti illo equo potuit?

II. 1. He is informed that Labienus has persuaded the Gauls. 2. On the next day the Romans will get possession of their camp. 3. He did not believe his father. 4. He did not believe his father would return.

354.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar ad primum agmen proficiscitur ut suos cohortetur. 2. Nostris, signis conversis, pellere Gallos coeperunt. 3. Legatum in Galliam proficisci iubet ne ex his nationibus auxilia convocentur. 4. Ibi rex paucos dies moratur ut oppidum obsideat. 5. Redimus domum ne ab hostibus occidamur. 6. Galli magnas copias unum in locum convocant ut bellum gerant. 7. Manesne domi ut litteras amicis scribas? 8. Legati in castra redeunt ut Caesaris persuadeant. 9. Nos sequimini ut aliquid reperiatis. 10. Arbitror Gallos accedere ut obsides reddant.

II. 1. They are coming in order that they may be praised. 2. Caesar hurries into the province to wage war with the Gauls. 3. They are surrendering all their possessions to Caesar in order not to be killed. 4. We write many letters to persuade our friends. 5. He knew that they would not believe him. 6. You are waiting in Rome that you may not be conquered.

LESSON 60

SUBJUNCTIVE (CONTINUED). IMPERFECT. RESULT
CLAUSES

355. The first person singular of the imperfect subjunctive may be formed by adding the personal endings **-m** (active), **-r** (passive), to the present active infinitive.

PRESENT ACTIVE INFINITIVE

amāre

mūnīre

monēre

IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

amārem amārer

mūnīrem mūnīrer

monērem monērer

I. Learn the imperfect subjunctive, active and passive, of the four model verbs (516–520); of **sum** (521); of **possum** (522); of **eō** (525); of **ferō** (527).

356. Notice carefully the difference between a *purpose* and a *result* clause. A result clause expresses the result or outcome of the action of the main verb. Observe the difference as shown in these examples :

They shouted (so) that he might hear. (Purpose.)

They shouted so that he heard. (Result.)

He was so tired that he could not go. (Result.)

Some word or phrase like *so*, *such*, *in such a way*, etc., is often used in the main clause to show that a result clause may be expected to follow.

357. Examine the following :

I. **Flūmen tam lātum est ut Galli trānsire nōn possint, the river is so wide that the Gauls cannot cross.**

2. Flūmen tam lātum fuit ut Gallī trānsire nōn possent,
the river was so wide that the Gauls could not cross.
3. Nostrī tam fortiter pugnābant ut hostēs sē recipere-
our men fought so bravely that the enemy retreated.
4. Tam graviter vulnerātī erant ut pugnāre nōn possent, *they*
had been so severely wounded that they could not fight.
- a. Observe that the above clauses beginning with *ut* ex-
press the *result*, and that the verbs are *subjunctive*.
- b. Observe that when the main verb is *present* tense the
dependent subjunctive is *present* tense, and that when
the main verb is either *imperfect*, *perfect*, or *pluperfect*
(*i.e.* any tense expressing past time), the dependent
subjunctive is *imperfect*.
- c. Observe that the tense of the subjunctive is not neces-
sarily the same as that of the main verb.

These principles (*b, c*) are true also for purpose clauses.

358. RULE. — **Subjunctive of Result.** — *Result is usually expressed by the subjunctive with ut if the result clause is affirmative, and by the subjunctive with ut nōn if the result clause is negative.*

359.

VOCABULARY

cōnsequor, cōnsequī, cōnsecū- tus sum, <i>pursue, overtake.</i>	dēditīō, ōnis, f., <i>surrender.</i>
prōgredior, prōgredi, prō- gressus sum, <i>advance, pro- ceed.</i>	calamitās, ātis, f., <i>disaster, defeat.</i>
audeō, ēre, ausus ¹ sum, <i>dare.</i>	tantus, a, um, <i>so great, such.</i>
accipiō, ere, accēpī, acceptus, <i>receive.</i>	tam, adv., <i>so</i> (with adjectives and adverbs).
castellum, ī, n., <i>fort, redoubt.</i>	ita, adv., <i>thus, so.</i>
	timor, ōris, m., <i>fear.</i>

¹ A semi-deponent verb; *i.e.* the present stem is active, and the perfect stem passive.

360.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Germānī in Galliam trānseunt ut eōrum finēs vāstent. 2. Vicīs multīs et parvīs incēnsīs, Labiēnus urbem pulcherrimam obsidēbat. 3. Arbitrāmur nōs eōrum castrīs potirī posse. 4. Equitātus sociōrum Caesarī magnō ūsuī fuit. 5. Caesar ex castrīs profectus in Helvētiōs flūmen trānseuntēs impetum faciet.

II. 1. Each soldier ought to obey his general. 2. The enemy are following us to harass the rear. 3. You are doing this for the sake of harming me. 4. I am informed that the enemy have taken possession of the top of the hill.

361.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Equitātus prōgressus erat ut Gallōs fugientīs cōsequerētur. 2. Oppidum ita ā militibus mūnītur ut expugnārī nōn possit. 3. Omnēs quī trānsire Rhodanum ausī sunt tēlis et sagittīs vulnerābantur. 4. Tantus erat Helvētiōrum timor ut sē suaque omnia dēderent. 5. Caesar castra movet nē hostēs inter sē et flūmen sint. 6. Galli ita operis magnitūdine permovēbantur ut arma lēgātō trāderent. 7. Haec urbs castellīs mūnīta est nē ā Rōmānīs caperētur. 8. Haec urbs castellīs ita mūnīta est ut ā Rōmānīs nōn caperētur. 9. Labiēnus in eōrum finēs decem diēs prōgressus multās civitātēs in dēditiōnem accēpit. 10. Tantus hostium erat numerus ut sinistrum cornū circumvenīre possent.

II. 1. We shall never dare to do it on account of the width of the river. 2. The road is so narrow that the enemy cannot advance. 3. Such was the depth of the river that they could not cross. 4. We were sent to carry the children back to Rome. 5. The river was so wide and deep that they used ships.

(READING SELECTION 460)

LESSON 61

Volō. Nōlō. Mālō. RELATIVE CLAUSE OF PURPOSE

362. Learn the principal parts and all forms of the indicative, present and imperfect subjunctive, infinitive, and participle of *volō*, *nōlō*, *mālō* (524). Observe that *nōlō* is a compound of *nōn* and *volō*, and *mālō* a compound of *magis*, *more* (shortened to *ma*), and *volō*. Note the irregularities in the present tense of the indicative, subjunctive, and infinitive.

363. Examine the following :

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Princeps lēgātōs mīsit ut pācem peterent, | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{the chief sent} \\ \textit{ambassadors to} \\ \textit{ask for peace.} \end{array} \right.$ |
| 2. Princeps lēgātōs mīsit quī pācem peterent, | |

The English translation of these sentences is the same, and the verbs of the purpose clauses are subjunctive. In 2, however, *quī* is used instead of *ut* to emphasize the ambassadors as the persons who have the purpose to perform.

364. RULE. — Relative Clause of Purpose. — *Purpose may be expressed by a relative clause in the subjunctive, especially after verbs of motion.*

365.

VOCABULARY

petō, ere, petivī (iī), petitus, <i>aim at, ask for, go to get.</i>	praemittō, ere, praemisī, prae- missus, <i>send ahead, dis-</i> <i>patch.</i>
volō, velle, voluī, —, <i>be will-</i> <i>ing, wish, will.</i>	celeriter, adv. (<i>celer, swift</i>), <i>swiftly, quickly.</i>
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —, <i>be un-</i> <i>willing, will not.</i>	senātus, ūs, m., <i>senate.</i>
mālō, mālle, māluī, —, <i>be</i> <i>more willing, prefer.</i>	dē tertiā vigiliā, <i>about the</i> <i>third watch (a watch was</i> <i>equal to one fourth of the</i> <i>night).</i>
impediō, ire, impedivī, impe- ditus, <i>entangle, impede.</i>	

366.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Flūmen Rhodanum trānsierant nē ā Caesaris equitibus caperentur. 2. Nostrī tam ācriter pugnābant ut Helvētiī aliī aliam in partem fugerent. 3. Equitātus hostēs in fugam datōs cōsequī nōn audēbat. 4. Caesar dē Gallōrum dēditōne certior factus legiōnēs in hīberna redūxit. 5. Labiēnus sē nōn posse Gallīs crēdere arbitrābātur.

II. 1. That they might sustain our attack for a long time, the Gauls had gathered a great abundance of grain. 2. Such was the speed of our cavalry that they overtook the enemy. 3. They will not try to resist our soldiers. 4. Are you (plur.) returning to the city to warn your friends?

367.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Nōluisse; māvultis; nōlumus. 2. Māvīs; nōlēs; mālunt. 3. Imperātor mīlitēs praemīsīt quī castra pōnerent. 4. Gallī victī petere pācem nōlunt. 5. Multī esse cum Caesare quam Rōmam redīre mālēbant. 6. Helvētiī lēgātōs mittunt ut iter per Sēquanōrum finēs facere possint. 7. Caesar equitēs quī Gallōs in flūmine impedītōs lacesserent praemīserat. 8. Germānī lēgātōs mīsērunt quī dīxērunt¹ sē petere pācem velle. 9. Caesar hīs rēbus ita permovēbātur ut quam celerrimē ad suōs contenderet. 10. Dē tertiā vigiliā Labiēnus eōs quī hostēs cōsequerentur praemīsīt.

II. 1. We are unwilling to obey him. 2. Caesar sends ahead horsemen to burn the villages. 3. We are returning to Rome to persuade the senate. 4. The Helvetii

¹ Notice how the translation of the indicative, **dīxērunt**, differs from that of the subjunctive, **dīcerent**.

preferred to seek peace rather than to be killed by the Romans. 5. Why are you unwilling to remain at home? 6. Although¹ a great defeat had been received, the Gauls did not wish to surrender their arms.

LESSON 62

SEQUENCE OF TENSES. INDIRECT QUESTIONS

368. Learn the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive of the model verbs (516-520); of **sum** (521); of **eō** (525); of **ferō** (527); of **possum** (522); of **fiō** (526); of **volō, nōlō, mālō** (524).

Observe that the first person of the perfect active subjunctive of all verbs may be found by adding **-erim** to the perfect stem; that the pluperfect active subjunctive may be found by adding the personal endings to the perfect active infinitive; that the perfect and pluperfect passive subjunctive are compound forms, like the same tenses of the indicative.

369. Examine the following:

DIRECT QUESTION

Ubi sunt? *where are they?*
Quid facit? *what is he doing?*

INDIRECT QUESTION

Sciō ubi sint, *I know where they are.*
Vidimus quid faceret, *we saw what he was doing.*

Observe that when a direct question is asked indirectly, depending upon some introductory verb, the verb of the original direct question becomes subjunctive in the indirect.

¹ See 311, 6; 315.

CAUTION. — Do not confuse an indirect question with an indirect statement (327). Indirect questions may be recognized by the fact that some interrogative word follows the main or introductory verb.

INDIRECT QUESTION

Sciō quis veniat,
I know who is coming.

INDIRECT STATEMENT

Sciō eum venire,
I know (that) he is coming.

370. RULE. — **Indirect Question.** — *The verb of an indirect question is in the subjunctive.*

371. It has been noticed in the three preceding lessons that the tense of a dependent subjunctive depends upon the tense of the verb of the main clause. This use of the tenses follows a principle called the *Sequence of Tenses*, a principle that is familiar from English usage. Compare :

He *comes* that I *may* see him.
He *came* that I *might* see him.

The change from *may* to *might* accompanies the change of the main verb from *comes* to *came*. This change of tenses, therefore, is not peculiar to Latin.

372. All tenses are divided into two classes, as follows :

Primary or principal tenses, denoting present or future time.	}	Present Indicative, Perfect Indicative, some- times, when it means <i>have</i> , Future Indicative, Future Perfect Indicative, Present Subjunctive, Perfect Subjunctive.
---	---	--

Secondary or historical tenses, denoting past time.	}	Imperfect Indicative, Perfect Indicative, Pluperfect Indicative, Imperfect Subjunctive, Pluperfect Subjunctive.
--	---	---

373. Examine the following :

- | | | | | |
|----|---|--|---|---|
| 1. | { | Videt, <i>he sees,</i>
Vidēbit, <i>he will see,</i>
Viderit, <i>he will have seen,</i> | } | quid faciam, <i>what I am</i>
<i>doing.</i> |
| 2. | { | Videt, <i>he sees,</i>
Vidēbit, <i>he will see,</i>
Viderit, <i>he will have seen,</i> | } | quid fēcerim, <i>what I have</i>
<i>done (or did).</i> |
| 3. | { | Vidēbat, <i>he was seeing,</i>
Vidit, <i>he saw,</i>
Viderat, <i>he had seen,</i> | } | quid facerem, <i>what I was</i>
<i>doing.</i> |
| 4. | { | Vidēbat, <i>he was seeing,</i>
Vidit, <i>he saw,</i>
Viderat, <i>he had seen,</i> | } | quid fēcissem, <i>what I had</i>
<i>done (or did).</i> |

Observe what tenses of the subjunctive follow primary tenses of the indicative, and what tenses follow secondary.

374. RULE. — **Sequence of Tenses.** — Whenever the subjunctive is used in a dependent or subordinate clause, the tense that should be used is determined commonly by the following rule:

A primary tense in the main clause is followed by a primary tense in the dependent subjunctive clause; a secondary tense in the main clause is followed by a secondary tense in the dependent subjunctive clause.

1. Sometimes the perfect indicative, when it means *have*, *has*, . . ., is followed by a primary tense.

375.

VOCABULARY

prōcēdō, ere, prōcessī, prōces-
sum, *go forward, advance.*

cōnor, āri, ātus sum, *try,*
attempt.

conloquor, conloquī, conlocū-
tus sum, *speak together,*
confer.

in animō habeo, } *I have in*
mihi est in } *mind, in-*
animō, } *tend.*

explōrātor, ōris, m., *scout.*

in reliquum tempus, *for the*
future.

inter sē dare, *to exchange,*
give each other.

in flūmine pontem faciō,
build a bridge across the
river.

rogō, āre, āvi, ātus, *ask, beg.*

teneō, ēre, tenuī, —, *hold.*

376.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Quis Caesare imperātore ē proeliō discēdere audē-
bit? 2. Cūr Rōmā exīre vultis? 3. Labiēnus cohortēs ex
castrīs ēductās instruī iussit. 4. Caesarī est nūntiātum
summum montem ā Labiēnō tenērī.

II. 1. He sent forward men to fortify the hill as quickly
as possible. 2. The enemy hastened to attack our men
while impeded in the river. 3. Are you willing to obey
your leader? 4. After encouraging his men there Caesar
hastens to the river.

377.

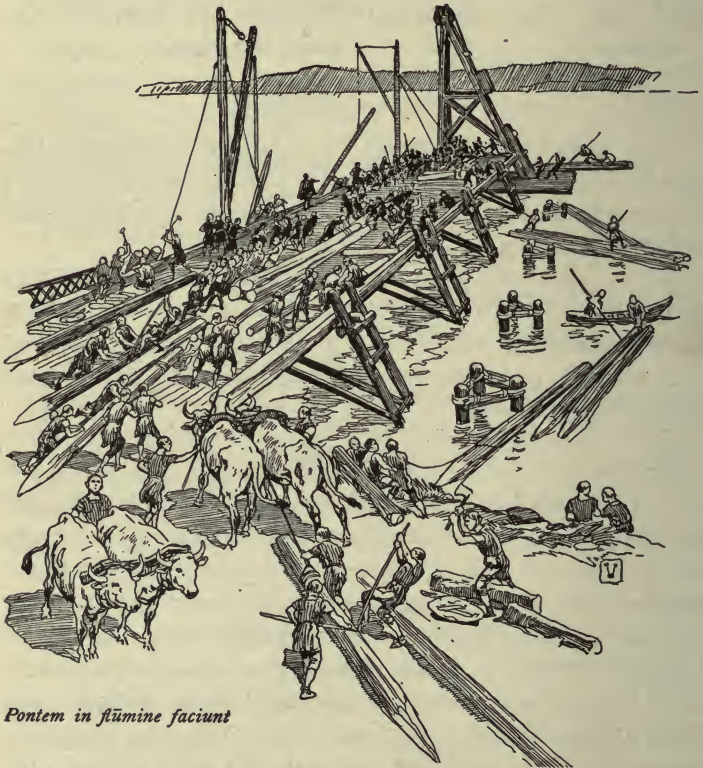
EXERCISES

I. 1. Helvētiīs est in animō iter per prōvinciam facere.
2. Caesar rogāvit cūr inter sē obsidēs darent. 3. Prīncipēs
ut dē dēditione conloquantur convēnient. 4. Imperātor
multōs diēs scīverat quae Gallī facere cōnātī essent.
5. Caesar praemittet eōs quī in flūmine pontem faciant.
6. Lēgātī Gallōrum Caesarī dixērunt quae sibi in animō in reli-
quum tempus facere esset. 7. Germānī Caesarem rogāvērunt
“Cūr in nostrōs finēs prōcessistī?” 8. Germānī Caesarem
rogāvērunt cūr in suōs finēs prōcessisset. 9. Summus collis

multis castellis mūnitus erat nē hostēs impetum facerent.

II. 1. We know who goes to the city. 2. The lieutenant said,¹ "Who goes to Rome?" 3. I know that they have returned home. 4. Caesar asked what towns they had captured. 5. We can see why they have fled. 6. Caesar is informed through scouts that the enemy have advanced. 7. When the battle had been fought, the general saw who had been wounded.

¹ inquit.



Pontem in flūmine faciunt

LESSON 63

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES

378. A substantive clause is a clause used as a noun, especially as subject or object of a verb. In the following examples the substantive clauses are italicized :

I know <i>what he has done.</i>	(As object.)
I know (<i>that</i>) <i>he has come.</i>	(As object.)
It happened <i>that he was present.</i>	{ (As subject, or in appo- sition with subject.)
He persuaded us <i>to leave the city.</i>	(As object.)
We feared <i>that he might die.</i>	(As object.)
I do not doubt <i>that he will go.</i>	(As object.)
He ordered us <i>to leave the city.</i>	(As object.)

It will be observed from these examples that substantive clauses are expressed in English in several ways. In Latin substantive clauses are usually expressed either by the infinitive or by the subjunctive. This use of the infinitive in indirect discourse and as complementary infinitive, and of the subjunctive in indirect questions, we have already considered.

379. Subjunctive clauses introduced by *ut* or *nē* are very often used in Latin as the object of verbs signifying to *ask, command, advise, resolve, urge, persuade, permit, decree.* An infinitive phrase is commonly used in English as the object of such verbs, whereas in Latin *ut* or *nē* with the subjunctive is used. *This difference in usage must be carefully noted.*

EXAMPLES

1. *Helvētiīs persuāsit ut exirent, he persuaded the Helvetiī to leave.*

2. **Suis imperat nē id faciant**, *he orders his men not to do this.*
3. **Militēs cohortātur ut impetum sustineant**, *he urges the soldiers to sustain the attack.*

380. The following are the most common verbs of the classes mentioned in 379. Their meanings and principal parts should be carefully learned :

persuādeō, ēre, persuāsī, persuāsum, persuade.

imperō, āre, āvī, ātum, order, command.

rogō, āre, āvī, ātus, ask, beg.

postulō, āre, āvī, ātus, demand, ask.

moneō, ēre, monuī, monitus, advise, warn.

petō, ere, petivī (ii), petitus, ask, request.

cohortor (and hortor), āri, ātus sum, encourage, urge.

permittō, ere, permisi, permissum, permit, allow.

1. The following are exceptions to the above, and are followed by the infinitive, as in English :

iubeō, ēre, iussi, iussus, order, command.

vetō, āre, vetuī, vetitus, forbid.

2. The following are generally followed by (1) the infinitive, sometimes by (2) *ut* or *nē* and the subjunctive :

patior, patī, passus sum, suffer, allow.

cōstituō, ere, cōstituī, cōstitutus, determine.

cupiō, ere, cupivī, cupitus, desire.

volō (also nōlō and mālō), velle, voluī, wish.

381.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. **Sciō quid tibi sit in animō.** 2. **Lēgātī diū inter sē conlocūtī domum rediērunt.** 3. **Eōs Caesar rogāvit cūr ex proeliō discessissent.** 4. **Helvētīi respondērunt sēsē exire ē finibus nōn cōnātūrōs.** 5. **Cūr hostēs sē recēpērunt?**

II. 1. I know whom you called together on that night.

2. If our arms are surrendered, we cannot defend ourselves.
3. They tried to keep the Germans away from their fields.
4. They thought we could not build a bridge over that river.

382.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar suis imperāvit ut castra mūnīrent. 2. Imperātor equitēs cohortātus est nē clāmōribus Gallōrum permovērentur. 3. Caesar, Helvētiis superātis, bellum gerere cum Germānis cōstituit. 4. Dumnorix Sēquanis persuādet nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant. 5. Helvētīi finitimōs cohortābantur ut obsidēs inter sē darent. 6. Suōs in flūmine Rhodanō pontem facere lēgātus iussit. 7. Caesar Gallōs monuit nē coniūrātiōnem facerent.

II. 1. We urge you to be brave. 2. The Helvetii persuaded their neighbors to attack the Romans. 3. The general commands¹ us to do this as quickly as possible. 4. We asked him² what he was doing. 5. He was informed that the enemy were crossing the river. 6. Now³ that the Germans have been conquered, Caesar will allow us to return to Rome. 7. They were sent to build a bridge.

(READING SELECTION 461)

LESSON 64

READING LESSON

CHAPTER IX

DUMNORIX PERSUADES THE SEQUANI TO ALLOW THE
HELVETII TO MARCH THROUGH THEIR TERRITORY

383. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanis invītis propter angustias ire nōn poterant. Cum⁴ his ipsi Helvētīi persuādere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorigem

¹ imperō. ² Use the accusative. ³ Now . . . conquered, use abl. abs. ⁴ since, when.

Haeduum mittunt, ut eō¹ dēprecātōre ā Sēquanīs impetrārent.² Dumnorīx grātiā et largitiōne apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat et Helvētiīs erat amīcus, quod ex eā civitāte Orgetorigis filiam in mātirimōnium dūxerat. Itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat ut per finēs suōs Helvētiōs ire patiantur, obsidēsque ut inter sēsē dent perficit, Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant, Helvētiī, ut sine iniūriā trāseant.

LESSON 65

OBJECT CLAUSES AFTER VERBS OF FEARING. **Cum**
TEMPORAL, CAUSAL, AND CONCESSIVE

384. Examine the following :

1. **Timeō nē hoc faciat**, *I fear that he will do this (or I fear that he is doing this).*
2. **Timēbam ut hoc faceret**, *I feared that he would not do this.*

Observe

- a. That the clauses **nē hoc faciat** and **ut hoc faceret** are the object of the main verb.
- b. That we translate the **nē** clause affirmatively (*that*, etc.), and the **ut** clause negatively (*that not*, etc.).

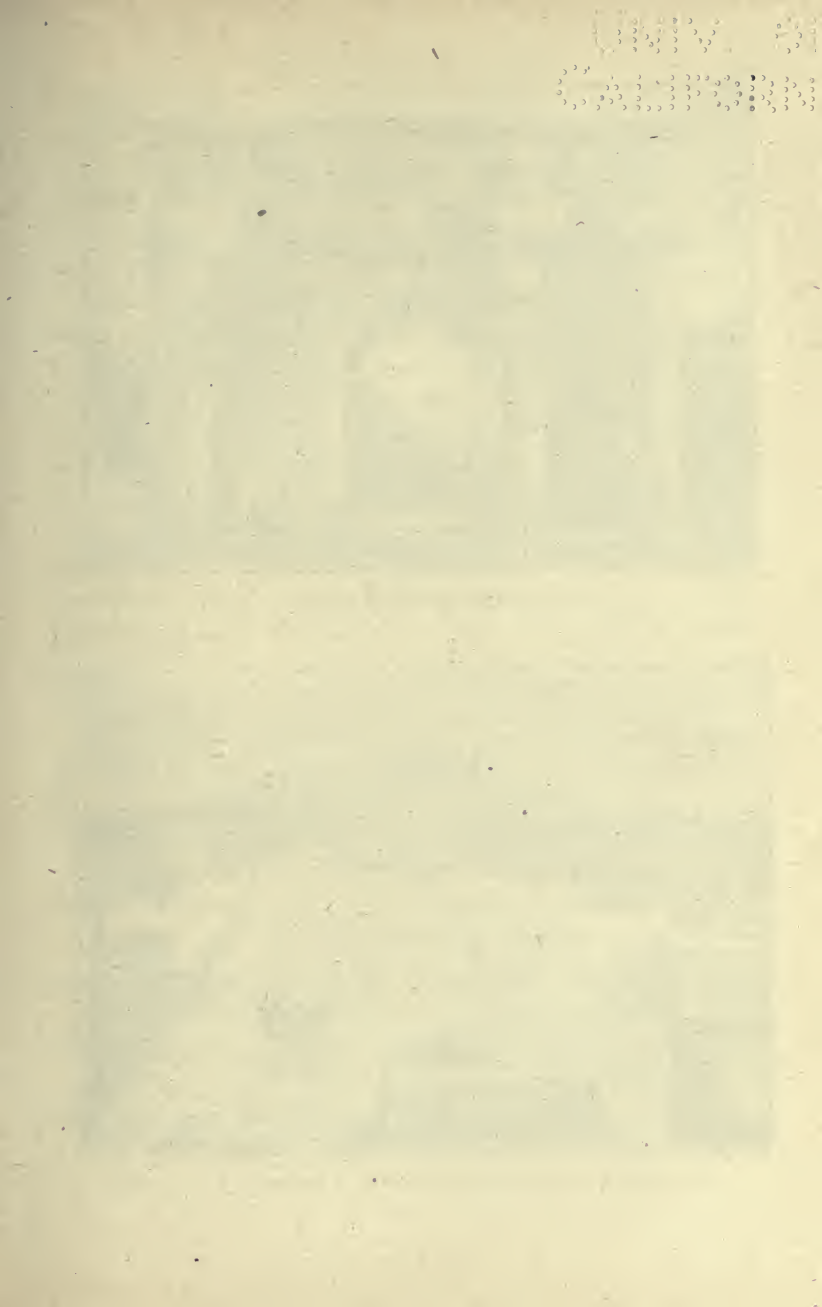
385. RULE. — **Subjunctive with Verbs of Fearing.** — *The subjunctive with nē, that, or ut, that not, is used as the object of verbs or expressions of fearing.*

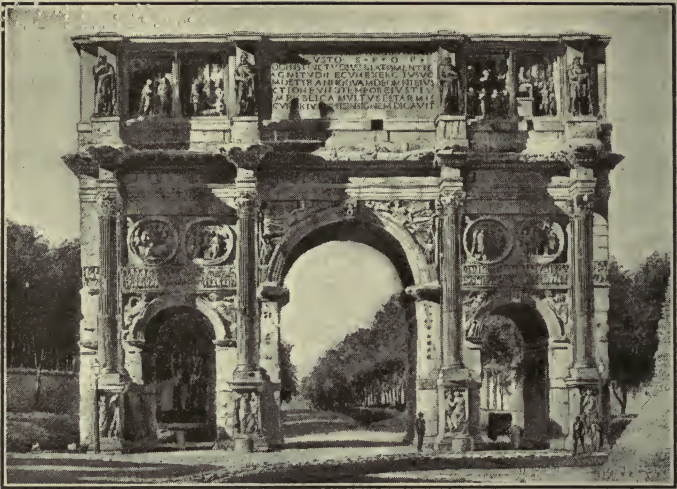
386. Examine the following :

1. **Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit**, *when Caesar came into Gaul.*
2. **Cum Caesar in Galliā esset**, *when Caesar was in Gaul.*
3. **Cum Caesarī id nūntiātum esset**, *when this had been reported to Caesar.*

¹ eō dēprecātōre, *by his mediation* (literally, *he (being) an intercessor*; ablative absolute). ² Do not confuse this verb with imperō.

Handwritten text in the top right corner, possibly a page number or reference code.





Arch of Constantine, Rome



The Forum at Pompeii. In the distance, to the north, is Vesuvius

4. *Cum hīs persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs misērunt, since they could not persuade them, they sent ambassadors.*
5. *Cum primī ordinēs concidissent, reliquī tamen resistēbant, although the first ranks had fallen, still the others resisted.*

Cum, meaning *when* (**cum** temporal, sentences 1, 2, 3), is used with the indicative if the verb of its clause refers to present or future time. **Cum**, meaning *when, after*, is commonly used with the subjunctive, if the verb of its clause refers to past time, but the indicative is sometimes used to point out clearly the exact time at which the main action took place (**cum** then = **quō tempore**). **Cum**, meaning *since* or *as*, is called **cum causal**, and the verb is subjunctive (sentence 4). **Cum**, meaning *although*, is called **cum concessive**, and the verb is subjunctive (sentence 5). The student will be able to infer from the meaning of the whole sentence which of the three translations **cum** should have in a given case. What must it mean with the indicative?

387. RULE.—**Cum** clauses. — 1. *In a cum clause expressing time, the verb is, if present or future, in the indicative; if the verb is past, it is usually subjunctive if the tense used is imperfect or pluperfect; otherwise, the indicative is used.*

2. *In a cum clause expressing cause or concession, the verb is subjunctive.*

388.

VOCABULARY

vereor, ēri, veritus sum, <i>fear, respect.</i>	signa inferō, <i>charge (literally, bear the standards against).</i>
timeō, ēre, timuī, —, <i>fear, be afraid of.</i>	in fidem venīre, <i>to put one's self under the protection.</i>
intelligō, ere, intellēxi, intellēctus, <i>learn, know, perceive.</i>	postquam, conj., <i>after.</i>
	polliceor, ēri, pollicitus sum, <i>promise.</i>

389.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar quibusdam ē suis imperāvit ut in flūmine pontem facerent. 2. Imperātor Helvētiis nē iter per prōvinciam faciant persuādet. 3. Germānī ā Caesare quae-sivērunt cūr in Galliam vēnisset. 4. Caesar per explorātōrēs certior fit summum montem ā Labiēnō occupātum esse. 5. Helvētīi fīnitimīs persuādēbant ut, aedificiīs incēnsīs, sēcum exīrent.

II. 1. He warns us not to leave the camp. 2. The Gauls urged each man to resist the Romans bravely. 3. We shall attack the enemy who are following. 4. Caesar ordered¹ the Gauls to give up their arms.

390.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar timēbat ut nostrī impetum sustinērent. 2. Cum hoc fēcērimus, tamen ā nostrīs amicīs nōn culpābimur. 3. Imperātor verēbātur nē hostēs nostrōs in flūmine impeditōs lacesserent. 4. Cum nostrī fortiter resisterent, Gallī sē recipere cōstituērunt. 5. Helvētīi superātī in Caesaris fidem venire volēbant. 6. Caesar, cum suōs labōrāre intellexeret, in primam aciem prōcessit, et militēs cohortātus est. 7. Cum hoc fēcissent, Rōmam rediērunt. 8. Hāc rē factā, Rōmam rediērunt. 9. Gallī pollicitī sunt sē sociōrum populī Rōmānī agrōs nōn vāstātūrōs esse. 10. Caesar suōs signa conversa īferre iussit.

II. 1. We feared that the general would not send us aid. 2. Although² the enemy resisted bravely, our men were able to take the town. 3. When Caesar was informed of their arrival, he drew up the line of battle.

¹ Use *iubeō*. ² *Although . . . resisted*. Express in two ways. See 311. 6, 315, 386. 5.

4. I fear that he is coming. 5. I know that he is coming.
 6. I know who is coming. 7. The man that I saw in Rome has arrived. 8. Since the enemy have fled, we will return home.

LESSON 66

COMPOUNDS OF **sum**. DATIVE AFTER COMPOUND VERBS

391. Review **possum** (274). The verb **sum** is often compounded with the prepositions **ab**, **ad**, **dē**, **in**, **inter**, **ob**, **prae**, **prō** (**prōd**), **super**. Review the meanings of these prepositions from the general vocabulary. In the compound **prōsum**, *I benefit*, **prōd**, not **prō**, is found before **e**. Learn the conjugation of **prōsum** (523).

392. Learn the principal parts and meanings of the following compounds of **sum** :

absum, **abesse**, **āfuī**, —, *be away, be absent.*

adsum, **adesse**, **adfuī**, —, *be present, aid.*

dēsum, **desse**, **dēfuī**, —, *be lacking, fail.*

obsum, **obesse**, **obfuī**, —, *be against, injure.*

praesum, **praeesse**, **praefuī**, —, *be at the head of, command.*

prōsum, **prōdesse**, **prōfuī**, —, *be of use to, benefit.*

393. Examine the following :

1. **Lēgātus oppidō praefuit**, *the lieutenant was in charge of the town.*
2. **Amicīs prōsumus**, *we benefit our friends.*
3. **Exercitus hostibus appropinquābat** (**ad** + **propinquō**), *the army was approaching the enemy.*
4. **Pecūniae pudōrem antepōnit**, *he puts honor before money, or he prefers honor to money.*

Observe that these compound verbs govern the dative case. If a verb is transitive, as in 4, it may take both an accusative and a dative.

394. RULE. — **Dative with Compound Verbs.** — *Many verbs compounded with ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, pro, sub, and super often govern the dative.*

395.

VOCABULARY

appropinquō, āre, āvī, ātum (w. dat.), <i>approach, draw near.</i>	vis (no gen. or dat. sing.), vim, vī, (501) f., plur., virēs, ium, ibus, <i>strength, power; (plur.), strength.</i>
bellum inferō, inferre, intulī, inlātus, and dative, <i>make war upon.</i>	iterum, adv., <i>again, a second time.</i>

396.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Verēmur ut impetum sustineant. 2. Gallī sē in populī Rōmānī fidem ventūrōs pollicentur. 3. Postquam Caesar in Galliam vēnit, gentēs obsidēs inter sē dare intellexit. 4. Quae¹ cum ita sint, in hostium fīnibus morābimur.

II. 1. The Gauls feared that the Romans would advance. 2. The Gauls thought that the Romans were advancing. 3. The camp that had been fortified was a mile wide. 4. They persuaded the Sequani to exchange hostages.

397.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar cum fīnibus Gallōrum appropinquāret, magnā cum cūrā prōcessit. 2. Peditēs diū pugnāre nōn poterant, quod virēs deerant. 3. Germānī dixerunt

¹ *these things.* A relative at the beginning of a sentence is often translated by a demonstrative.

Rōmānōs sibi bellum intulisse. 4. Virī quī suīs amicīs obsunt nōn sunt fidī. 5. Gallī mulierēs liberōsque ūnum in locum convocābant nē tēlis interficerentur. 6. Caesar Labiēnum quī castrīs praeset relīquit. 7. Incolae oppidī, armīs trādītīs, tamen Rōmānīs resistere iterum cōnātī sunt. 8. Cum lēgātus ab hostium fīnibus nōn amplius¹ duōbus mīllibus passuum abesset, castra posuit. 9. Omnēs quī eā in pugnā fuerant ā Caesare pācem petēbant. 10. Cum oppidī incolae paucī essent, expugnārī nōn potuit.

II. 1. We all wish to benefit our friends. 2. Labienus commanded two legions. 3. Caesar said he intended to wage war on the Germans. 4. We persuaded them to leave Rome with us. 5. Although we are drawing near the enemy, we ought not to fear, if² Caesar is general. 6. Caesar called all the soldiers together.

(READING SELECTION 462)

LESSON 67

THE IMPERATIVE. COMMANDS AND EXHORTATIONS

398. FORMS OF THE IMPERATIVE MOOD

SECOND PERSON		SECOND PERSON	
IMPERATIVE ACTIVE		IMPERATIVE PASSIVE	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
amā, <i>love</i>	amāte	amāre, <i>be loved</i>	amāminī
monē, <i>advise</i>	monēte	monēre, <i>be advised</i>	monēminī
mitte, <i>send</i>	mittite	mittere, <i>be sent</i>	mittiminī
cape, <i>take</i>	capite	capere, <i>be taken</i>	capiminī
audī, <i>hear</i>	audīte	audīre, <i>be heard</i>	audīminī

¹ more. ² if . . . general: see 316.

Observe that the present active imperative singular has the same form as the *present stem* (86), and that the present passive imperative, singular and plural, have the same forms as the *second person singular in -re* and the *second person plural of the present indicative passive*.

The present active imperatives of *dīcō, dūcō, faciō, and ferō* are *dīc, dūc, fac, fer*.

Give the imperative forms in the second person of *gerō, videō, dīcō, mūniō, accipiō, sequor, laudō*.

399. The imperative, second person, is used to command or order; the subjunctive, in the *first and the third persons*, is used to exhort or urge. For example:

	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
1ST PER.	<i>laudem, let me praise</i>	<i>nē laudem, let me not praise</i>
2D PER.	<i>laudā, praise</i>	<i>nōlī laudāre, do not praise</i>
3D PER.	<i>laudet, let him praise</i>	<i>nē laudet, let him not praise</i>
1ST PER.	<i>laudēmus let us praise</i>	<i>nē laudēmus, let us not praise</i>
2D PER.	<i>laudāte, praise</i>	<i>nōlīte laudāre, do not praise</i>
3D PER.	<i>laudent, let them praise</i>	<i>nē laudent, let them not praise</i>

Observe that the negative used with the subjunctive is *nē*, but that *nē* is *not* used with the imperative; instead *nōlī* or *nōlīte* (pres. imperative of *nōlō, be unwilling*) is used with the infinitive. Do not use *nē* or *nōn* with the imperative to express a negative command.

400.

VOCABULARY

praeficiō, ere, praefēcī, praefectus, *set over, put in charge of.*

referō, referre, rettulī, relātus, *carry back; referre pedem, retreat.*

ad multam noctem, *till late at night.*

longē, adv., *far, far off.*

Ariovistus, ī, m., *Ariovistus, chief of the Germans.*

revertor, revertī, revertī, re-
versus,¹ dep., *turn back, return.*

animadvertō, ere, animad-
vertī, animadversus (ani-
mus + ad + vertō), *turn
the mind to, notice.*

adversus, a, um, *opposite,
facing, hostile; adversō
colle, up the hill.*

401.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Illud oppidum nōn longē ā prōvinciā abest.
2. Hostium ducēs cōnātī sunt castellum, cui praerat lēgātus, expugnāre. 3. Ariovistus dīxit nōn sēsē Gallīs sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse. 4. Labiēnus, ūnus ex Caesaris lēgātīs, oppidō appropīnquāre contendit. 5. Cum proeli finem nox fēcisset, virī quī summā grātiā apud suōs erant ad Caesarem vēnērunt.

II. 1. The chief had two daughters; one was killed, the other captured. 2. I fear that he will injure me. 3. The man did this himself. 4. The chief said, "The power of the Roman people is very great."

402.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Gallī respondērunt, "Nōlīte Rōmānīs bellum inferre." 2. Dic mihi quid in animō tibi sit. 3. Fortiter pugnēmus² nē in potestātem Caesaris veniāmus. 4. Caesar

¹ This verb in the perfect system, indicative, subjunctive, and infinitive, commonly has only active forms. The perfect participle is deponent. ² Notice that the subjunctive of exhortation is the main verb of the sentence. See 349.

cum Gallōs iterum coniūrātiōnem facere animadvertisset, lēgātōs ad sē revertī iussit. 5. Cum vīrēs tōtae deessent, hostēs referre pedem coepērunt. 6. Sīgna inferte adversō colle ad hostium castra. 7. Labiēnum urbī captae Caesar praefēcit. 8. Cum nostrī ad multam noctem contenderent, nēmō ab hostibus occīsus est. 9. Ariovistus Caēsari "Cūr" inquit "in meōs fīnēs venis?" 10. Hāc rē factā, duābus legiōnibus in castrīs relictīs, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castrīs in aciē Caesar cōstituit.

II. 1. Let us wage war. 2. Do not do this. 3. Pursue the enemy, if you wish. 4. Let them do this. 5. Labienus,¹ lead the forces out of camp. 6. Friends, do not persuade me to remain in Rome. 7. We noticed that our men had not seized the top of the mountain.

LESSON 68

GERUND AND GERUNDIVE

403. Note carefully the difference in English between the verbal noun in *-ing* and the verbal adjective in *-ing*. The verbal noun is used like a noun in any of the cases, and the verbal adjective, or participle, like an adjective, always in agreement with some word. Both have the force of a verb, and may therefore take an object. Compare these examples:

I found my friends *waiting* for me. (Participle, or verbal adjective.)

Waiting is tedious. (Verbal noun, subject of "is.")

We learn to do by *doing*. (Verbal noun.)

404. In Latin, the *gerund* is a verbal noun. It has only the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative cases, the

¹ Review page 15, footnote, and page 27, footnote 1.

nominative case being supplied by the infinitive. Its gender is neuter. *The gerundive is a verbal adjective* (see 308), and is passive in its meaning.

405. Learn the gerunds and gerundives of the model verbs (516–520). Note that they are formed from the present stem.

406. Examine the following :

NOM.	{	Vidēre est crēdere , <i>seeing is believing</i> (infinitive as subject).
GEN.	{	Ars vivendī (gerund), <i>the art of living</i> . Vēnit amicōrum videndōrum causā (gerundive), <i>he came to see his friends (for the sake of seeing his friends)</i> .
DAT. ¹	{	Vix hīs rēbus administrandīs tempus dabātur (gerundive), <i>time was hardly given for managing these things</i> .
ACC.	{	Vēnit ad pugnandum (gerund), <i>he came to fight (for fighting, or for the purpose of fighting)</i> . Vēnit ad amicōs videndōs (gerundive), <i>he came to see his friends (for the purpose of seeing his friends)</i> .
ABL.	{	Mēns discendō alitur (gerund), <i>the mind is strengthened by learning</i> . Conlocūtī sunt dē cōsiliīs capiendīs (gerundive), <i>they conferred about forming plans</i> .

Observe

1. That when the gerundive is used the noun is put in the proper case, and the gerundive agrees with it in gender, number, and case.

¹ The use of the dative of the gerund or gerundive is not very common; **ad** and the accusative is more common.

2. That the gerundive, not the gerund, is generally used where there is an object in English.
3. That purpose may be expressed by *ad* and the accusative of the gerund or gerundive, and by *causā* following the genitive of the gerund or gerundive. What other ways are there of expressing purpose?

407.

VOCABULARY

coniciō, ere, coniciēcī, coniectus, <i>throw, hurl.</i>	causa, ae, f., <i>cause, reason</i> ; abl., <i>for-the-sake-of, in-</i> <i>order-to</i> (after a genitive).
dēligō, ere, dēlēgī, dēlēctus, <i>select, choose. [opportunity.</i>	cupidus, a, um, <i>desirous (of),</i> <i>eager (for)</i> (with genitive).
spatium, ī, n., <i>space, time,</i>	dēnique, adv., <i>finally, at last.</i>
discō, ere, didicī, —, <i>learn.</i>	iam, adv., <i>now, already, soon.</i>
turris, is, f., <i>tower.</i>	

408.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Animadvertite quae fēcerit. 2. Nōlī, hostibus appropīquantibus, castrīs lēgātum praeficere. 3. Omnibus Gallīs superātīs, in prōvinciam revertāmur. 4. Ubi turrim movērī et appropīquāre moenibus vidērunt, lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce mīsērunt. 5. Dīc nōbīs quōs Rōmae vīderīs.

II. 1. Do not persuade them to wage war on the Romans. 2. Lead your troops out of camp and draw them up. 3. Let us always obey the general. 4. I fear the Gauls will be conquered.

409.

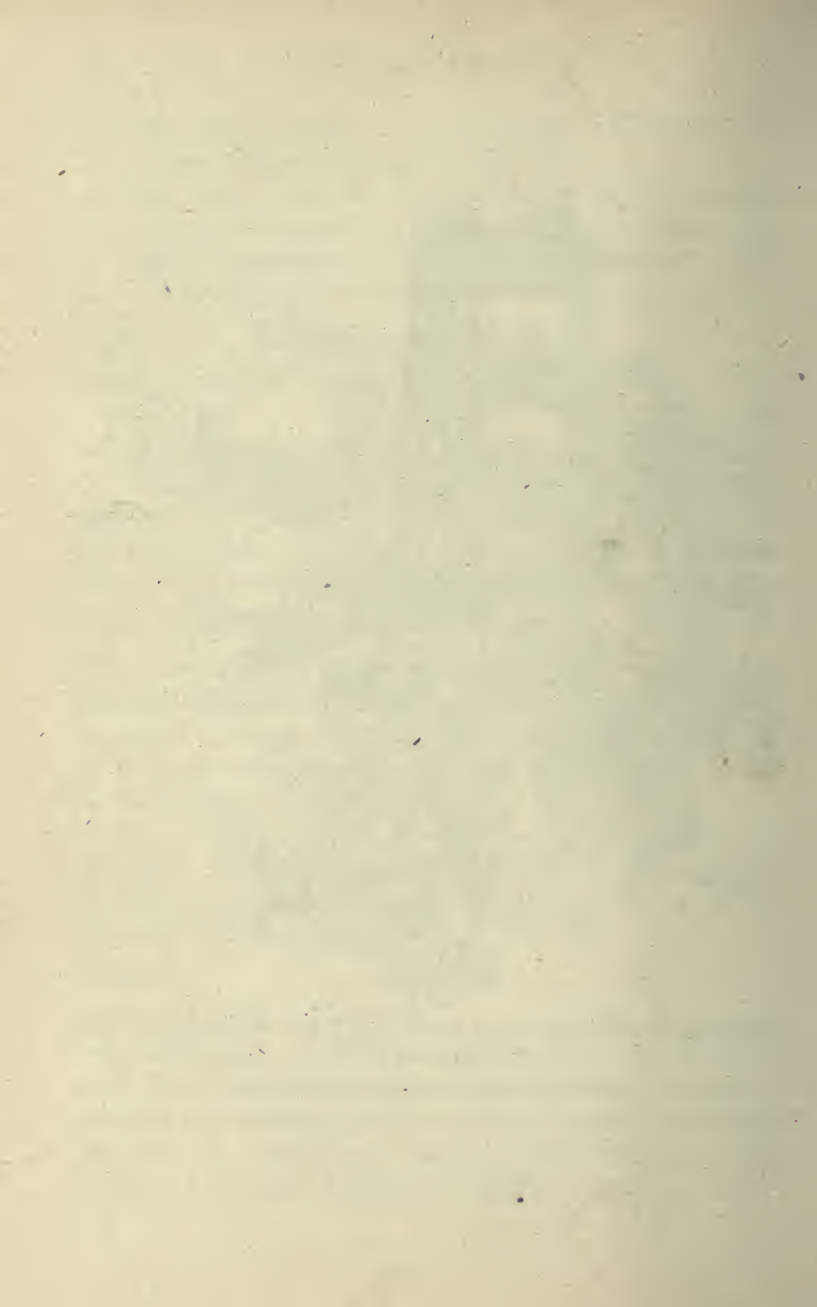
EXERCISES

I. 1. Agendō agere discimus. 2. Militēs finem pugnandī fēcērunt. 3. Militēs cupidī potiendī oppidī erant. 4. Bellum gerere hieme difficillimum est. 5. Hostēs tam celeriter accessērunt ut spatium tēlōrum coniciendōrum nōn darētur. 6. Caesar locum omnibus rēbus idōneum castrīs dēlēgit. 7. Lēgātī ad pācem petendam vērērunt. 8. Com-



The Romans attacked by the Gauls, both in front and in the rear, at the Siege of Alesia

(Caesar, *Gallic War*, Book VII, Chapters 68-90)



plūrēs prīncipēs ad Caesarem pācis petendae causā vēnērunt. 9. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās annum satis esse Helvētīi arbitrābantur. 10. Gallī dē bellō Rōmānis īferendō cōnsilia capiēbant. 11. Nē nōs ē proeliō discēdāmus.

II. 1. Fighting; by fighting; of fighting. 2. For the purpose of defending; for the sake of choosing. 3. Time was not given for¹ defending the city. 4. Caesar sent men to² fortify the camp. 5. The enemy attacked our men while crossing the river. 6. He chose a lieutenant to accomplish all these things. 7. Choosing good friends is difficult. 8. Do not leave the city.

LESSON 69

COMPLETE REVIEW OF VERB FORMS

NOTE TO THE TEACHER.—As much time should be given to this review of verb forms as the needs of the class require. It is suggested that this review be made by synopsis, and by quick recognition of miscellaneous verb forms both orally and in writing.

410. Review 228 and 352. Review the principal parts and meanings of the following verbs :

timeō	prōcēdō	coniciō	imperō
appropīnquō	petō	dēligō	pāreō
īntelligō	permittō	animadvertō	quaerō
polliceor	volō	revertor	cōsequor
conloquor	nōlō	moror	audeō
vereor	mālō	obtineō	prōgredior
cōnor	respondeō	praeficiō	

411. Following the form suggested below, write the synopsis of (1) *tollō* in the first person singular, and of (2) *cōnor* in the third person plural.

¹ *for defending*: genitive case.

² *to fortify*: express in four ways.

FORM¹ FOR SYNOPSIS

PRINCIPAL PARTS

TENSE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERATIVE	INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
Pres. { Act. Pass.					
Imperf. { Act. Pass.					
Fut. { Act. Pass.					
Perf. { Act. Pass.					
Plup. { Act. Pass.					
Fut. Perf. { Act. Pass.					

(READING SELECTION 463)

LESSON 70

READING LESSON

CHAPTER X

CAESAR PREPARES TO DEFEAT THE PLANS OF THE
HELVETII

412. Caesarī renūtiātur Helvētiis esse in animō per agrum Sēquanōrum et Haeduōrum iter in Santonum finēs

¹ This form is merely suggested as a model for writing the synopsis of a verb.

facere, quī nōn longē ā Tolosātium fīnibus absunt, quae civitās est in prōvinciā. Caesar nōlēbat hominēs bellicōsōs, populī Rōmānī inimicōs, prōvinciae esse finitimōs. Ob eās rēs eī mūnitiōnī quam fēcerat T. Labiēnum lēgātum praefēcit, et ipse in Ītaliā magnīs itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōscribit et trēs, quae circum Aquilēiam hiemābant,¹ ex hibernīs ēdūcit et cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus ire in ulteriōrem Galliam contendit. Ibi nōnnullae nātiōnēs, locīs superiōribus occupātīs, itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. Hīs complūribus proeliīs² pulsīs, ab Ocelō, quod est citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum, in finēs Vocontiōrum in ulteriōrem prōvinciam diē² septimō pervenit; inde in Allobrogum finēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum primī.

¹ Can you not infer its meaning from *hiems* ?

² Why ablative ?



Roman Harbor and Ships (Restoration)

SUPPLEMENTARY LESSONS

NOTE TO THE TEACHER. — These lessons are designed to meet the needs of those teachers who wish a more extensive treatment of syntax than has been attempted in the previous lessons. They are so arranged that they may be taken up in connection with the previous lessons, or in any order that the teacher wishes.

LESSON 71

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES. PRESENT AND PAST TIME

413. Conditional sentences are complex sentences. They consist of two clauses, the *condition* (or protasis) introduced by "if," "if not," "unless," and the *conclusion* (or apodosis). For example :

If it rains, I shall not go.

If he had not seen me, I should have gone.

You will not do this unless I command you.

Observe that a condition may be expressed in English without using "if," "if not," "unless," by merely placing the subject after the verb in the condition. For example :

Had he not seen me, I should have gone.

414. Various classifications of conditional sentences are possible, but for convenience they will be considered as follows :

I. Conditions referring to *present* or *past* time.

1. Simple.
2. Contrary to Fact.

II. Conditions referring to *future* time.

1. Vivid Future.
2. Less Vivid Future.

415.

SIMPLE CONDITION

Examine the following :

1. *Sī hoc faciunt, bene est, if they are doing this, it is well.*
 2. *Sī hoc fēcērunt, bene fuit, if they did this, it was well.*
- a.* Observe that the condition (or protasis) does not imply whether the statement is true or not, *i.e.* whether "they did this" or not; it *merely makes a supposition.*
- b.* That the present or past tenses of the indicative are used in both condition and conclusion.

416.

CONTRARY TO FACT CONDITIONS

Examine the following :

1. *Sī hoc facerent, bene esset, if they were (now) doing this, it would be well.*
 2. *Sī hoc fēcissent, bene fuisset, if they had done this, it would have been well.*
- a.* Observe that the condition (or protasis) makes a supposition that is obviously contrary to the actual facts of the case; *i.e.* the first sentence implies that they are *not* now doing this, and the second sentence, that they had not done this. So too the conclusion (or apodosis) makes a statement contrary to the facts; *i.e.* the first sentence implies that it is *not* now well, the second sentence that it was not well.
- b.* That the *imperfect subjunctive* is used in both condition and conclusion, when the time is present, and the *pluperfect subjunctive*, when the time is past.

417.

EXERCISES

(In these and the succeeding exercises, the student should use the general vocabularies whenever it is necessary. But see Hints for Translation, 136.)

I. 1. Sī meus amīcus Rōmae est, laetus sum. 2. Sī Helvētīi ācrius Rōmānis restitissent, nōn victī essent. 3. Sī adesset, exīre Rōmā parātī essēmus. 4. Laetus fuit pater, sī quis liberōs laudāvit. 5. Caesar, sī accēdere hostēs arbitrātus esset, aciem īstrūxisset. 6. Plūrēs Gallī occīsī essent, sī nostrī celerius cōsecūtī essent. 7. Sī imperātor essēs, darēsne proelī committendī sīgnum?

II. 1. If they had been at home, I should have been glad. 2. I am glad, if they are at home. 3. If anything happened, it was reported to the general. 4. That soldier would leave the battle, if he were not a brave man. 5. Who would not have done the same thing, had he been present? 6. If the general commands, the soldiers obey him. 7. If you were in Rome, should you wish to be a soldier?

LESSON 72

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES (CONTINUED). FUTURE TIME

418.

VIVID FUTURE CONDITIONS

Examine the following:

Sī hoc facient, bene erit, *if they do this (i.e. shall do this), it will be well.*

- a. Observe that the condition (or protasis) states a future supposition vividly or strongly (*i.e.* by using "shall").
- b. That the conclusion (or apodosis) states positively what will be the result, if the condition shall prove to be true.
- c. That the future indicative is used in both condition and conclusion.

- d.* That the present tense in English may often refer to future time (*i.e.* "if they do this" means "if they shall do this").

419. LESS VIVID FUTURE CONDITIONS

Examine the following :

Sī hoc faciant, bene sit, if they should do this, it would be well.

- a.* Observe that the condition (or protasis) here states a future supposition in a less distinct and vivid fashion (*i.e.* by using "should").
- b.* That the conclusion (or apodosis) states less positively, as a mere possibility, what the result would be, should the condition prove to be true.
- c.* That the present subjunctive is used in both condition and conclusion.

420. SUMMARY OF CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

I. Present or Past Time.

1. Simple. Present or past tenses of the indicative in both parts.
2. Contrary to Fact.
- a.* Present time — imperfect subjunctive in both parts.
- b.* Past time — pluperfect subjunctive in both parts.

II. Future Time.

1. Vivid Future — Future¹ indicative in both parts.
2. Less Vivid Future — Present¹ subjunctive in both parts.

421. It has been indicated in 311, 5, 315, 2, and 316 that the condition (or protasis) may be expressed by the participle without the use of *sī* or *nisi*. For example :

¹For the sake of clearness the use of other tenses in the protasis of future conditions is not here treated.

Prīncipēs Gallōrum victī Rōmam mittentur, the chiefs of the Gauls, if they are conquered (literally, having been conquered), will be sent to Rome.

422.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Sī equitēs cōnsequentur, magnum hostium numerum occīdent. 2. Sī equitēs cōnsequantur, magnum hostium numerum occīdant. 3. Caesare imperātōre, numquam terēbimur. 4. Helvētīi flūmen Rhodanum trānsissent, nisi Caesar in Galliam contendisset. 5. Obsidēs liberātī domum redeant. 6. Incolae, armīs trādītis, sēsē dēfendere nōn poterunt. 7. Sī hostēs flūmen trānseant, nostrī nōn cōnsequantur.

II. 1. If we should go to Athens, we should see many beautiful buildings. 2. If we go to Athens, we shall see many beautiful buildings. 3. Had the Helvetii tried to cross the river, Caesar would have attacked them. 4. If Labienus hurries, he will be able to seize the top of the hill. 5. If Caesar should attack that town, the inhabitants would not be able to defend it. 6. If you were in the town, you would be alarmed at Caesar's approach. 7. Who will be afraid, if the soldiers fortify the town well?

(READING SELECTION 464)

LESSON 73

WISHES

423. Wishes may be divided into two classes :

I. Those that refer to the future. For example :

May my friend come !

Would that my friend would come !

O that my friend would come !

Observe that the above expressions are different ways of expressing the same desire.

II. Those that refer to present or past time, and that wish for something which (it is implied) is not or was not attained. They are, therefore, sometimes called hopeless wishes. For example :

O that my friend were here !	}	referring to present time, and implying that he is not here.
I wish (that) my friend were here !		
Would that my friend were here !		
O that my friend had been here !	}	referring to past time, and implying that he was not here.
I wish (that) my friend had been here !		
Would that my friend had been here !		

424. Examine the following :

1. (**Utinam**) **meus amicus veniat**, *may my friend come!* (a wish about the future).
 2. **Utinam meus amicus adesset**, *would that my friend were here!* (a wish hopeless in present time, implying that he is not here).
 3. **Utinam meus amicus adfuisset**, *O that my friend had been here!* (a wish hopeless in past time, implying that he was not here).
- a. Observe that the subjunctive is used to express a wish.
- b. That the present (or perfect) subjunctive expresses a wish relating to the future, that the imperfect subjunctive expresses a wish that is hopeless in present time, and the pluperfect a wish hopeless in past time.
- c. That hopeless wishes employ the same mood and tenses as contrary to fact conditions (416).

Utinam is often omitted with the present tense, but is regularly used with the imperfect or pluperfect. The negative is **nē**.

425. RULE. — Subjunctive in Wishes. — *Wishes relating to the future are expressed by the present (or perfect) subjunctive, with or without **utinam**; wishes hopeless in present time by **utinam** with the imperfect subjunctive; wishes hopeless in past time by **utinam** with the pluperfect subjunctive. In wishes the negative is **nē**.*

426.

EXERCISES

I. 1. *Utinam nē Galli coniūratiōnem fēcissent!* 2. *Miles ē proeliō nē discēdat!* 3. *Utinam hoc facerent!* 4. *Helvētīi “Utinam” inquit¹ “nē altissimīs montibus continērēmur!”* 5. *Utinam nē Germānī populō Rōmānō bellum intulissent!* 6. *Utinam Rōmam veniāmus!*

II. 1. *May he always obey the general!* 2. *I wish we had gone to Athens!* 3. *Would that we were with Caesar in Gaul!* 4. *O that he had not persuaded me!* 5. *May we be killed, if we surrender our arms!* 6. *Would that we were able to go with you!*

LESSON 74

INDIRECT DISCOURSE. COMPLEX SENTENCES

427. Review 327–330, 349. When a complex sentence is quoted indirectly, its principal or main verb, if the main clause makes a statement (affirmative or negative),² follows the rule stated in 329. Its dependent verb follows this law:

Each dependent verb becomes subjunctive. Its tense depends upon the tense of the introductory verb of saying, thinking, etc., in accordance with the principle of sequence of tenses (374).

428. Pronouns in Indirect Discourse. — In changing from direct to indirect discourse, pronouns of the first and

¹ Plural of *inquit*.

² The treatment of main clauses involving commands and questions has been purposely excluded from this book.

second persons are generally changed to pronouns of the third person. The reflexive pronouns refer commonly to the subject of the introductory verb, but sometimes to the subject of the verb of their own clause.

429. Examine the following :

DIRECT DISCOURSE

Vir quem videō meus amicus est, *the man whom I see is my friend.*

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

Present Time

Dicit virum quem videat suum amicum esse, *he says that the man whom he sees is his friend.*

Past Time

Dixit virum quem vidēret suum amicum esse, *he said that the man whom he saw was his friend.*

Observe

- a. That the main verb **est** becomes **esse** with its subject **virum** in the accusative.
- b. That the dependent (or subordinate) verb **videō** becomes present subjunctive, **videat**, when the introductory verb, **dicit**, is a primary tense, and imperfect subjunctive, **vidēret**, when the introductory verb, **dixit**, is a secondary tense.
- c. That the person of the dependent verb changes to the third person, and that **meus** becomes **suum**, because it refers to the subject of the introductory verb.

430. RULE. — Moods in Indirect Discourse. — *In indirect discourse the main verbs, if the clauses in which they stand make statements, are in the infinitive with subject accusative, and the subordinate (or dependent) verbs are in the subjunctive.*

431.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Militēs quōs mēcum habuī fortissimī fuērunt. 2. Dixit militēs quōs sēcum habuisset fortissimōs fuisse. 3. Ubi ad nostrum exercitum pervēnimus, Caesar castra mūnivit. 4. Dixērunt Caesarem, ubi ad suum exercitum pervēnissent, castra mūnivisse. 5. Caesar dixit suōs flūmen, quod¹ altissimum esset, trānsire nōn posse. 6. Ariovistus Caesarī “Volō” inquit “hīs dē rēbus, quae inter nōs agī² coeptae neque perfectae sunt, agere² tēcum.” 7. Ariovistus Caesarī dixit sē velle dē eis rēbus, quae inter eōs agī coeptae neque perfectae essent, agere cum eō.

II. 1. The river that we see is very wide. 2. They said that the river that they saw was very wide. 3. The lieutenant is frightened because the enemy are approaching. 4. Write 3 indirectly in Latin after audiō. 5. When I arrived, I saw my friend. 6. Write 5 indirectly in Latin after dixit. 7. Ariovistus replied that those who had conquered ought to rule³ those whom they had conquered.

LESSON 75

IMPERSONAL USE OF VERBS. SUPINE. DIFFERENT
WAYS OF EXPRESSING PURPOSE

432. Verbs are said to be used impersonally when they do not have a personal subject. This impersonal use is more common in Latin than in English. There are some verbs in Latin that are used only impersonally, while others are used both personally and impersonally.

EXAMPLES

Ācrit̄er pugnātum est, *the battle was fought sharply, or there was sharp fighting* (literally, *it was sharply fought*).

¹ because. ² agō, treat. ³ imperō.

Vōs hoc facere oportet, *you ought to do this* (more literally, *it is proper that you do this*).

Vōbis hoc facere licet, *you may do this* (literally, *it is permitted to you to do this*).

433. The supine is a verbal noun of the fourth declension, and has forms only in **-um** and **-ū**. These forms are used only in the following constructions :

Lēgātī vērūrnt ad Caesarem grātulātum, *ambassadors came to congratulate Caesar*.

Hoc difficile est factū, *this is difficult to do*.

The supine in **-um** is used to express purpose, but only after verbs of motion ; the supine in **-ū** is used with a few adjectives and indeclinable nouns, as ablative of specification.

434. VARIOUS WAYS OF EXPRESSING PURPOSE

Review 351, 364, 406, 3. Are there several ways of expressing purpose in English ?

EXAMPLES

Helvētīī lēgātōs mīsērunt	{	ut pācem peterent, quī pācem peterent, pācis petendae causā, ad pācem petendam, pācem petitum,	}	<i>the Helvetii sent ambassadors to seek peace.</i>
------------------------------	---	--	---	---

Militēs mittuntur	{	ad pugnandum, pugnandī causā,	}	<i>the soldiers are sent to fight.</i>
-------------------	---	----------------------------------	---	--

435. RULE. — Supine in **-um**. — *The supine in -um is used to express purpose after verbs of motion.*

436. EXERCISES

I. 1. Hoc est mīrābile dictū. 2. Ariovistus respondit, "Tē ad mē venīre oportet." 3. Prīncipēs Gallōrum ad

Caesarem vērunt auxiliū petītum. 4. Sī volunt, eīs ex oppidō exīre licet. 5. In utram partem¹ flūmen Arar fluat oculis iūdicārī nōn potest. 6. Helvētīi rogant ut iter per prōvinciam sibi facere liceat. 7. Gallī coniūrātiōnem facere dīcuntur. 8. Gallōs coniūrātiōnem facere nūntius dīcit.

II. 1. He went to Rome to² see his daughters. 2. This is easier to say than to do. 3. We ought to obey the general. 4. There is sharp fighting on the right wing. 5. The soldiers may go to Rome. 6. It was reported that the enemy were returning home.

(READING SELECTION 465)

LESSON 76

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS

437. The first or active periphrastic conjugation is formed by the future active participle and the verb **sum**. It is future in its meaning, and expresses the idea conveyed in English by the phrases "about to," "going to," "intend to." For example :

Laudātūrus est, he is about to praise, or is going to praise, or intends to praise.

For all forms of this conjugation, see 529.

It has been noticed that there is no future or future perfect tense in the subjunctive. The subjunctive of the first periphrastic conjugation may be used in their place. For example :

Sciō quem visūrus sit, I know whom he is going to see, or whom he will see.

438. The second or passive periphrastic conjugation is formed by the gerundive and the verb **sum**. It is passive

¹ direction. ² to see his daughters: express in three ways.

in its meaning, and expresses the idea of *obligation or necessity*. For example :

Laudandus est, *he ought to be praised, or he must be praised* (literally, *he is to be praised*).

For all forms of this conjugation, see 530.

439. USES OF THE PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

1. The person for whom the obligation or necessity exists is expressed by the dative.
2. Since the conjugation is passive, all active English sentences must be recast before they are the equivalent literally of this Latin construction. Thus: "I must do this" = "For me this is to be done," *id mihi agendum est*.
3. Intransitive verbs are used impersonally in this conjugation in Latin. Thus: "We ought to come," *nōbīs veniendum est*.

EXAMPLES

Urbs est mūnienda, the city must be fortified.

Nōbīs fortiter pugnandum est, we ought to (or must) fight bravely (literally, *for us it is to be fought bravely*).

Caesari omnia erant agenda, Caesar had to do everything (literally, *for Caesar everything was to be done*).

440.

EXERCISES

- I. 1. *Vīsūrī erāmus; amātūra fuit; monitūrae erant.*
2. *Nōbīs cum Gallīs bellum gerendum est.* 3. *Incolae oppidī ēruptionem erant factūrī.* 4. *Caesari omnia ūnō tempore agenda erant; aciēs instruenda, sīgnum dandum, militēs ab opere revocandī erant.* 5. *Sī victūrī sumus, nōbīs fortissimē contendendum erit.* 6. *Sciēbam quid vōs factūrī*

essētis. 7. Sciēbam quid vōs facerētis. 8. Incolīs quīnque diēs oppidum dēfendendum fuit.

II. 1. We intend to go to Rome. 2. They were about to fortify the top of the hill. 3. They must fortify the camp. 4. It was reported to Caesar that the Gauls were about to attack him. 5. We ought to hurry to the city. 6. Labienus had to cross the river. 7. Caesar asked who was going to remain with him. 8. The ambassadors will have to answer.

NOTE

THE following exercises are intended to provide additional material for the rapid reading of connected prose. Each selection is based on the vocabulary and constructions already acquired. Nothing has been admitted that has not been previously studied, with the exception of a very few necessary words, all of which are indicated by superior figures and translated in footnotes. Such words, however, present no additional difficulty in form or construction. Proper names which have no English form, or are readily recognizable, are used without explanation; *e. g.*, *Coriolanus*, *Washingtonius*.

The exercises have been prepared for use after every third lesson. The subject matter chosen is intentionally largely non-classical, in order that the beginner may realize as early as possible that the Latin language is adapted to the expression of modern as well as ancient thought.

SELECTIONS FOR RAPID READING

(To follow Lesson 3)

441. A DIALOGUE

Ubi est tua patria? America mea patria est; estne tua? Nōn est; mea patria Gallia est. Est terra Eurōpae. Pulchrane Gallia est? Pulchra et lāta terra est ubi longae viae sunt. Suntne silvae tuae patriae magnae? Magnae nōn sunt, parvae sunt. Nōnne vīta fēminārum tuae patriae pulchra est? Fēminārum bonārum vīta semper pulchra et bona est.

(To follow Lesson 6)

442. A FAITHFUL SERVANT

Lūdus est fidus servus agricolae bonī in insulā. Frūmentum domini et vīnum in oppidum portat, ubi cibus incolis superbis grātus est. Malus nauta et amīcus in hortō sunt. Nauta servum vocat. “Cūr vīnum, serve, in hortum nōn portās?” Lūdus amīcis vīnum in pōculō¹ parvō dat. Nauta vīnum bonum laudat sed pōculum parvum et inopiam vīni culpat. Pugnant. Lūdus nautam et amīcum superat.² Servō pecūniam dant, et Lūdus, servus fidus, vīnum et frūmentum servat.

(To follow Lesson 9)

443. ROMAN CHILDREN

Eurōpae terra Ītalia est. Rōma magnum in Ītaliā oppidum est. Multae portae, bonae et lātae viae, alba aedificia in oppidō sunt. Hortī incolārum superbōrum magni sunt.

¹ cup.

² overcome.

In hortis Mārci lūdus¹ est. Magister, vir peritus, liberōs convocat. Equi validi parvōs liberōs in hortōs magistrī portant. Cūr malī puerī pugnant? Asperī sunt. Puerī amant bella et proelia et sagittās et gladiōs. Puellās
 5 tenerās rosae albae in hortis, nova lūna, parvae stellae dēlectant. Magister malōs et pigrōs discipulōs culpat, sed bonōs (discipulōs) amat. Pulchrōs librōs dōna bonis pueris et puellis dat. In libris multae fābulae Rōmam oppidum laudant.

(To follow Lesson 12)

444. A ROUGH WOOING

10 Rōma parvum oppidum erat, ubi Rōmulus in terris erat. Incolae viri erant, sed fēminae in oppidō nōn erant. Rōmulī lēgātī multōs agricolās et multās fēminās et pulchrās puellās in oppidum convocāvērunt. Tēlis idōneis, pilis, gladiis, hastis, incolae pugnābant. Fēminās asperum
 15 proelium dēlectābat. Sed Rōmulī cōnsilium malum erat. Viri validi puellās tenerās in aedificia portāvērunt. Tum² superbī agricolae armis Rōmānōs oppugnāvērunt. Sed Rōmulus et Rōmulī amicī agricolās superābant. Tum miserae agricolārum filiae parvōs liberōs in proelium portāvērunt et virōs³ vocāvērunt: "Semper virōs³ et liberōs amābimus. Cūr pugnatīs? Nōne filiās et filiārum liberōs amātīs?"

(To follow Lesson 15)

445. HOW TIBERIUS WON A WIFE

Mārcus, dux cōpiārum Rōmānārum, miles peritus erat. In Galliā cum Helvētiis Rōmānī pugnābant et Mārcus
 15 locum hibernis idōneum parāverat. Helvētiī castra Rō-

¹ school.

² then.

³ husbands.

mānōrum oppugnāre mātūrāvērunt et in silvis et agris semper dīmicābant. Rōmānōrum perīculum magnum erat. Multī in castris equitēs erant, multae et tenerae fēminae, multī et parvī liberī, sed nōn erat cibī cōpia.

Tiberium, fidum lēgātum, Mārcus dux vocat. “Nōne perīculum vidēs? Cōpiae Helvētiōrum magnae sunt et castra expugnābunt. Tulliam, pulchram filiam meam, amās. Nōne caput ferī Helvētiōrum ducis in castra portābis? Tullia tuum praemium erit.”

Mox Tiberium cum paucis militibus albī equī ad castra 10 Helvētiōrum portābant. Longa et aspera via erat, sed validī equī et virī erant. Helvētīi magnam praedam, vīnum, frūmentum in castra portāverant. Superāverat vīnum ducem Helvētiōrum. Magnum in vīnō perīculum est. Tiberius gladiō ducem oppugnat, et mox ducis caput 15 ad Mārcum portat. Mārcus Tiberium laudat et lēgātō fidō Tulliam, filiam pulchram, dat. Sed Tiberī virtūs militum Rōmānōrum virtūtem auget. Helvētiōs in fugam dant; magnam frūmentī cōpīam et magnam praedam in castra Rōmāna portant. 20

(To follow Lesson 18)

446. THE DEFENSE OF THE BRIDGE

Porsena, rēx Clūsī,¹ hostis Rōmānōrum erat. Magnis cōpiis militēs Rōmānōs in fugam dederat et Rōmam urbem oppugnābat. Longus pōns in flūmine Tiberī lātō et altō erat. Valerius pontem occupāre mātūrat, et cum feris hostibus dīmicat. Magnā virtūte Rōmānī in ponte 25 pugnābant, sed proeliō hostēs cōnsulem superāvērunt. Cōnsul pontem dēlēre² parābat. Tum vir validus, Horātius Cocles, trāns flūmen cum hostibus dīmicāvit. Magnum perīculum erat, magna caedēs. Multis corporis vulneribus

¹ *Clusium*, a town of Etruria.

² *destroy*.

Horātius labōrābat, sed pedem nōn mōvit et multā nocte hostēs in fugam dedit. Laeti Rōmānī Horātiō lātōs agrōs dedērunt.

(To follow Lesson 21)

447. A STERN FATHER

Brūtus et Valerius cōsulēs Rōmānī erant et cum Tar-
 5 quiniō¹ rēge pugnābant. Sed malī filii Brūtī contrā
 patrem ā Tarquiniō incitābantur. Cum paucis coniūrātis
 Rōmae imperium Tarquiniō dominō dare parābant. Sed
 per Brūtī servum fidum, quod periculō terrēbātur, cōn-
 suli nōmina coniūrātōrum nūntiantur.² Ā cōnsule filii
 10 cum coniūrātis in collem Capitōlinum³ magnā cum celeri-
 tāte convocantur. Tum Brūtus hominēs superbōs cul-
 pat quod contrā urbem armantur. Pater miser filiōrum
 vitam nōn servāvit. Tum militēs hominēs malōs gladiis
 necāvērunt. Sed Brūtī, patris fortissimī,⁴ magna virtūs ā
 15 Rōmānis grātis semper laudābitur.

(To follow Lesson 24)

448. THE ROMANS AND THE ELEPHANTS

Pyrrhum, Ēpirī⁵ rēgem, quod fortis vir bonusque
 imperātor erat, Tarentī⁶ civēs in Ītaliā vocāvērunt.
 Cum Rōmānis multīs proeliis dīmīcāvit Rōmānōsque supe-
 rāvit, quod elephantōs⁷ in Ītaliā portāverat, quae animālia
 20 ante Pyrrhī tempus ā Rōmānis nōn vīsa erant. Sed Rōmānī,
 virī audācēs, pedēs elephantōrum pilīs vulnerābant magna-
 que animālium caedēs fuit. Parī virtūte militēs cum
 Pyrrhī cōpiīs dīmīcāvērunt. Omnia corpora necātōrum
 Rōmānōrum vulnera in capitibus habuērunt.

¹ *Tarquin.*

² *report.*

³ *Capitoline.*

⁴ *very brave.*

⁵ *Epirus*, a country northwest of Greece.

⁶ *Tarentum*, a Greek city on the southern coast of Italy; now Taranto.

⁷ *elephants.*

(To follow Lesson 27)

449. CHARLEMAGNE AND HIS SCHOOL

Carolus¹ Magnus, Francōrum² rēx, imperātorque³ Rōmānus, multōs in patriā lūdōs conlocāvit. Ibi filiī et potentium et reliquōrum litterās⁴ discēbant.⁵ Saepe in lūdō rēx magnus erat, pigrōs discipulōs culpābat, ācrēs laudābat. Sed potentium liberī discere nōn cupiēbant, quod Carolī⁵ temporibus ā potentibus bella semper gerēbantur. Pigrōs liberōs rēx in aedificium vocāvit et “Quod primōrum,” inquit,⁶ “filiī estis, fidī discipulī nōne eritis? Omnēs meī civēs in lūdō parēs sunt et ad parem cūram ā magistrīs incitābuntur. Patriae nostrae laudem⁷ augēre cupiō,⁸ quod¹⁰ fortēs meī Francī sunt, sed ā Rōmānīs librīs et litteris superantur. Magnā cum celeritāte magnōque cum studiō discētis, quod pigri discipulī nōn servābunt dōna mea meaque amicitiam.”

(To follow Lesson 30)

450. BRENNUS, THE GALLIC GENERAL, IN ROME

Rōmānī antiquis temporibus cum Gallis, Ītaliae partis¹⁵ incolis, bellum gerēbant. Dux Gallōrum Brennus erat et Ītaliā vāstābat. Ad Alliam flūmen Rōmānī cum Gallis contendērunt, sed hostēs Rōmānōs superāvērunt. Tum ad urbem Rōmam contendērunt. In urbe neque in portis neque in viis hominēs vidērunt, sed aedificia alta et pulchra²⁰ laudābant. In Forō⁹ sedilia vidērunt, ubi principēs Rōmānī sedēbant.¹⁰ Gladiīs Galli principēs Rōmānōrum necāvērunt. Rōmānī lēgātōs ad Brennum mīsērunt et pecūniae cōpiam prō libertāte Gallis dedērunt. Sed superbus

¹ Charles.² the Franks.³ here emperor.⁴ letters.⁵ study.⁶ said (he).⁷ praise, reputation.⁸ wish, desire.⁹ market place, Forum.¹⁰ sit.

Gallōrum dux gladium in librā¹ conlocāvit et “Vae² victis!” exclāmāvit.³ Tum Camillus, fortis Rōmānōrum dux, legiōnēs in Forum dūxit et patriam ab hostibus servāvit.

(To follow Lesson 33)

451. SIR PHILIP SIDNEY

Proeliō asperō militēs contendēbant, multaque corpora
5 et vulnerātōrum et interfectōrum hominum in terrā fuērunt.
In quibus erat ūnus ē principibus quī ab omnibus propter
virtūtem amābātur. Sed vulnerātus ille et vulnere et siti⁴
labōrābat. Cui amīcī auxilium dare mātūrāvērunt. Miles
illi aquam⁵ in pōculō portāvit. Tum “Hanc aquam,” inquit,
10 “dux Philippe, quam ex flūmine portāvī habēbis. Grāta
miserō hominī aqua erit.” Sed Philippus mox militem
vulnerātum vidit quī illam aquam habēre cupiēbat. “Huic
militi hanc aquam dabis,” inquit. Nōne hoc pulchrum
factum erat, quod omnēs semper laudābimus?

(To follow Lesson 36)

452. WILLIAM TELL

15 Helvētia⁶ hodiē libera civitās est, sed nōn semper erat.
Temporibus antiquis superbus homō, quī Gesslerus ap-
pellābātur, Helvētiaē imperium habēbat. Is lignum⁷ in
viā cōstituit, in quō pilleum⁸ posuit, omnēsque quī illā viā
iter faciēbant pillei auctōritātem cōgnōscere iussit. Illud
20 sōlus ex incolīs Guglielmus⁹ Tellius nōn fēcit. Audivit
Gesslerus et territus est. “Quem ille nōn movēbit?” inquit.
“Alii idem facient. Tōta Helvētia nostrō imperiō liberābi-
tur.”

Ab omnibus Tellius, quod sagittārius peritus erat, laudā-

¹ *balance, pair of scales.*

² *woe.*

³ *cry out.*

⁴ *thirst.*

⁵ *water.*

⁶ *Switzerland.*

⁷ *pole.*

⁸ *cap.*

⁹ *William*

bātur. Quā dē causā Gesslerus malum cōsiliū cēpit. Parvum Tellī puerum in viā conlocārī et mālum¹ in capite pōnī iussit. In mālum Tellius sagittam mittere iussus est. Pater territus id quod Gesslerus iusserat facere parātus nōn erat. Sed malus ille homō ei dixit: “Nōne hoc faciēs? 5 Si² nōn faciēs, filium tuum interficiam.” Itaque Tellius sagittam mīsīt, quae in mālum vēnit. Clāmōre magnō omnēs quī viderant Telli factum laudāvērunt. Sed Gesslerus “Cūr alteram cēpisti sagittam?” inquit. “Haec sagitta,” inquit Tellius, “in³ tuam mortem servāta est, quod post 10 puerī mei mortem nūllis moenibus dēfēnsus eris.” Audivit Gesslerus et magnā celeritāte Tellium in vinculis nāve ēripuit. Sed liberātus mox Tellius superbum hominem alterā illā sagittā necāvit Helvētiōsque liberāvit.

(To follow Lesson 39)

453. ARNOLD WINKELRIED

Helvētia Tellī virtūte libera facta erat. Sed incolae,¹⁵ propter pecūniae parvam cōpiam, multōs milītēs nōn habebant quī patriam dēfendēbant. Quā dē causā principēs et equitēs, Helvētiaē finitimī, terram occupāre incolāsque prō servis habēre cupiēbant. Magnus militum exercitus in Helvētiam missus est. His milītibus longae hastae, magnī²⁰ gladii, incolis Helvētiaē sagittae et saxa erant. Sed omnibus dē montibus Helvētiī convēnērunt et in hostēs asperōs impetum fēcērunt. Diū pugnātum est, sed hastis longīs agricolae ab exercitū prohibēbantur, neque sagittae quās in milītēs mittēbant eōs vulnerābant. Et ā dextrō et ā²⁵ sinistrō cornū agricolae hostēs oppugnābant, sed nūllum militem interfēcērunt. Tum ūnus ex illis, cui Arnoldus Winkelriedius nōmen erat, in viam exiit itaque⁴ dixit:

¹ *apple.*

² *if.*

³ *for.*

⁴ *and thus, and so.*

“Trāns illum montem mihi domus cum liberis et uxōre¹ est. Hōs omnēs cum meā vitā patriae meae civibusque meis prō libertāte dabō. Viam libertāti faciam.” Tum, nūllis armīs armātus, in hastās multās hostium corpus
 5 suum, ūnus prō omnibus, mīsit. Amicī fortissimī trāns corpus virī audācis, quod humī erat, impetum magnā cum virtūte fēcērunt. Hostēs hōc ācri animō territi et in fugam datī sunt. Sed Helvētii per omne futūrum tempus liberi remānsērunt, quod Winkelriedi virtūte, quam omnēs semper
 10 laudābunt, servāti sunt.

(To follow Lesson 42)

454. THE FIRST ERUPTION OF MT. VESUVIUS

Vesuvius mōns in Campāniā, Ītaliae prōvinciā, trium millium pedum in altitudinem est. Ex eō et ignis et flūmen saxōrum, quod ā nōbis “lava” appellātur, saepe in agrōs mittitur. Sed temporibus antiquōrum Rōmānōrum pulcher
 15 mōns erat, sub quō multī et agricolae et mercātōrēs vīcos et oppida incolēbant. Undique multum frūmentum, vīnum multum in agrīs et in collibus erat, multae in portubus nāvēs. Saepe principēs Rōmānī multōs diēs in hīs oppidīs mānsērunt et hiemem fūgērunt. Sed haec omnia LXXIX
 20 post Christum annīs, mēse Augustō, cāsū miserō dēlēta sunt. Eō annō Plinius,² Rōmānārum nāvium longārum³ dux, cum Pliniō alterō, nepōte⁴ suō, Misēni, quī portus Rōmānus fuit, erat. Eī ēruptiō Vesuvī facta esse nūntiātur. Et ipse vidit. Nam lūce diēs caruit propter fūmum.⁵
 25 Itaque nāve ad Vesuvium Plinius vēnit incolisque miseris auxilium parāvit. Undique clāmōrem miserum audiēbat hominum quī aliī aliam in partem fugiēbant. Et ipse discēdere coāctus est. Sed saxīs illis, dē quibus diximus, in itinere interfectus est.

¹ wife. ² Pliny. ³ nāvis longa, a warship. ⁴ grandson. ⁵ smoke.

Omnēs agrī, omnēs vicī, oppida omnia ēruptiōne incēnsa sunt. Post paucōs diēs nihil in terrā reliquī erat. Saxa omnēs agrōs complēverant. Neque oppida illa tria sub monte conlocāta, Stabiae, Herculāneum, Pompēii, per multōs annōs ab ūllō homine visa sunt. Hodiē autem eī quī in 5
 Ītaliā iter faciunt omnēs in Campāniā veniunt. Nam vident in hīs locīs quae ex illis oppidīs remanent — portas, vias cum aedificiīs suis, templa deōrum. Multae et pulchrae rēs, quae in incolārum domibus fuērunt, servātae sunt multaue dē antiquōrum hominum vitā et fortunā cōgnōscet 10
 quī illās rēs viderit.

(To follow Lesson 45)

455. THE TREACHEROUS SCHOOLMASTER

Faleriī,¹ Etrūriā oppidum, ā Rōmānis diū obsidēbantur. Sed fortissimī incolae magnā virtūte patriam tūtā ab hostibus servābant. Quōdam diē senex plūrimis cum pueris ex oppidī portā ad castra Rōmāna exiit. 15
 Cuius adventum inter castra et oppidum nōbilissimus Rōmānōrum dux, Camillus nōmine, exspectāvit. Ille autem ad imperātōrem accessit dixitque: “Lūdi magister in oppidō Faleriīs sum. Cārissimōs potentium civium filiōs tuae potestātī permittō. Brevi tempore superbī 20
 incolae, quī liberōs suōs amant, et ipsī in castra tua pervenient et prō liberōrum libertāte Rōmānis civitātem suam dabunt.” Turpī magistrī cōsiliō lēnis Camillī animus permōtus est. Puerōs convocāvit eōsque flagellis² malum magistrum pūnīre et patrēs suōs dē illius malō animō 25
 certiōrēs facere iussit. Grātiōr Faliscīs³ Camillī magnitūdō

¹ In Latin, when names of towns that are plural in form are used as subject, the verb is plural; in English the verb is singular, as, Athens was a great city.

² whips.

³ Falisci, the inhabitants of Falerii.

animī quam victōria ipsōrum erat. Itaque pācem cūm Rōmānis cōfirmāvērunt rei que pūblica Rōmānae clientēs factī sunt.

(To follow Lesson 48)

456. STORIES OF CAESAR

Caesar, summus Rōmānōrum imperātor, dē quō omnēs
 5 vōs multa iam audīvistis plūraque audiētis, iuvenis iter per
 Hispāniam prōvinciam faciēbat. Nocte ad vicum per-
 vēnit, ubi ā pīncipe bene receptus est. Superbior ille
 omni cīve Rōmānō erat, quod in suō vicō plūrimum poterat.
 Propter quod Caesaris amīcī eum culpābant. Sed Caesar,
 10 prūdentissimus vir, dixit: "Superbus pīnceps nōn est.
 Pīnceps vicī maior est omnibus quī post pīmum Rōmae
 cīvem sunt."

Idem Caesar cum Pompēiō, duce summō, et cum suis
 cīvibus bellum gessit. Eō tempore in Galliam prōvinciam
 15 prō cōsule missus erat. Finis autem prōvinciae et Ītalīae
 flūmen minimē¹ lātum erat, quod Rubicō² appellātur.
 Cuius flūminis in rīpā aciem suam Caesar instrūxit diūque
 exspectāvit lēgātōrum, quī dē pāce missī erant, adven-
 tum. Postea autem, Rubicōnem ubi exercitū trānsiit,
 20 "Alea³ iacta est!" exclāmāvit. Ex eō tempore ācritur cum
 Pompēiō bellum gessit.

In illō ipsō bellō Pompēius, cuius militēs parēs numerō
 Caesaris nōn erant, Brundisiō, quod nōmen est portūs
 Ītalīae, in Graeciam trānsiit. Caesar ipse mare trānsire
 25 cupiēbat. Sed ventus⁴ asperrimus nāvem in aliam partem
 ēgit. Nautae territi ad terram sē recipere cupiēbant.
 Quibus Caesar, fortissimus vir, respondit:⁵ "Fortiter faci-
 ētis et tūtī eritis, quod Caesarem Caesarisque fortūnās por-
 tātis."

¹ adverb of minimus.

² Rubicon.

³ die.

⁴ wind.

⁵ answer.

(To follow Lesson 51)

457. CORIOLANUS AND HIS MOTHER

Prīmis rei pūblicae liberae temporibus Rōmae iuvenis quīdam erat, cui Gnaeus Mārcius Coriolānus nōmen erat, vir maximā virtūte sed nōn cōsiliō prūdēns. Hunc, quod superbissimus erat, populus Rōmānus ex urbe exire iussit. Ille autem ad Volscōs exiit, quōs dē antiquā potestāte 5 monuit. Itaque illi cum populō Rōmānō bellum gerere mātūrāvērunt, cuius belli imperium Coriolānō dedērunt. Maximā militum multitudīne ad urbem accesserant eamque castris et vāllō obsidēbant. Saepe proelium commīsērunt, neque tamen hostēs superāre potuērunt. Sed fēminae 10 Rōmānae ad Veturiam, Coriolānī mātrem, eiusque uxōrem Volumniam convēnērunt. Quae cum Mārci duōbus filiis parvis in hostium castra iērunt, urbem, quam viri dēfendere nōn poterant, lacrimis¹ suis dēfēnsūrae. Ubi Coriolānō fēminārum agmen accēdere nūntiātur, primō superbissimē 15 eās recēpit. Ubi autem ā sedili suō mātrem vīdit, maximē permōtus ad illam accessit. Cui Veturia “Hostisne filius,” inquit, “ad mē venit captaque ā militibus mātēr tua in tuīs castris sum? Grāta mihi vīta esse iam nōn poterit, quod tē patriae tuae hostem, cīvibus nōn amīcum reperiō. Nōnne in 20 mē, mātrem tuam, uxōrem, filiōs tuum amōrem dēmōstrābis et cum exercitū tuō in Volscōs redībīs atque urbi Rōmānae libertātem reddēs? Nihil turpius, nihil miserius ego tōtā in vītā vīdī nec vidēre poterō.”

His mātris verbis² permōtus Coriolānus ab urbe castra 25 mōvit cīvitatēque liberam servāvit. Ipse autem culpātus ā Volscis postea interfectus est. Fēminis fortissimis summam laudem Rōmānī dedērunt templumque Fortūnae prō eārum subsidiō in urbe conlocāvērunt.

¹ tears.² words.

(To follow Lesson 54)

458. THE FAITHFUL WIVES OF WEINSBERG

Imperātor quīdam Germānus oppidum mūnitissimum, quod Weinsberg appellātur, quod cīvēs liberī esse cupiēbant, obsidēbat. Cottidiānis proeliis oppidi incolae cum militibus imperātōris pugnantēs nec vincere poterant nec vincī. At¹ post longum tempus rei frūmentāriae inopiā oppidum labōrābat, quod commeātū omnī prohibēbātur. Quā dē causā litterās ad imperātōrem scripsērunt, quibus oppidum in eius potestātem dēdidērunt. Ille autem haec dē pāce cōstituit. Mulierēs omnēs exire iussit. “Portābitis ex oppidō,” inquit, “vōbiscum quae tollere poteritis. Sed virōs omnēs occidī iubēbō.” Diē proximō, signō datō, exeunt ē portā mulierēs, quārum quaeque virum suum portābat. Tum miserae fēminae sē ad imperātōris pedēs iaciunt. At¹ ille permōtus viris vītam dōnāvit² oppidum- que tūtum ā militibus asperis servāvit.

(To follow Lesson 57)

459. TALES OF THE WAR OF INDEPENDENCE

Colōnī³ Americānī, quī rēgis Britannōrum imperia sibi nocēre crēdebant, litterās ad rēgem mittere cōstituērunt, et eīs summās Britannōrum iniūriās⁴ dēmōstrāre. Quās litterās cōficere ūnus ex nōbiliōribus, Samuel Adams nōmine, ab iis iussus ēst. Fīlia autem Samuēlis parva literis vīsīs patri “Spērō,” inquit, “brevi tempore litterās rēgis in manibus futūrās esse.” Cui pater respondit: “Ego, mea fīlia, existimō rēgem superbissimum pedēs suōs in nostrīs litterīs positūrum esse.” Militum Britannōrum dux, Gāgius⁵ nōmine, ā colōnis frūmentum cōferri audiverat, quō sē potitūrum esse spērābat.

¹ but.² give.³ colonists.⁴ wrongs.⁵ Gage.

Erant autem Bostōnī¹ virī patriae amantissimī, quī igne plēbī dēmōnstrātūrī erant Britannum ducem profectum esse. Itaque nocte hī ignēs ā civibus visī sunt. Inter quōs Paulus Revērius, perītissimus eques, nihil morātus, equum cōnscendit² et maximā celeritāte per vicōs³ iter fēcit Britannōs iam ventūrōs esse vocāns. Sic tandem⁴ ad oppidum Lexingtōnium pervēnit, ubi et Samuel Adams et Ioannes⁵ Hancock in amicōrum domibus erant. Hōs captōs sēcum redūcere Gagius quā maximē cupiēbat. Sed ā Revēriō monitī militēs Britannōs fūgērunt. 10

Fortissimī erant militēs Americānī, sed ducibus male pārēbant. Centuriō⁶ quidam ūnum ex suis militibus aquam in castra portāre iussisse dicitur. Cui ille superbē respondit: “Ego nōn portābō, quod complūra iam pōcūla portāvī. Quā rē tū tibi ipse hodiē illam comparābis.” 15 Nec meliōre ipsī centuriōnēs animō erant. Washingtōnius arborem⁶ maximam militēs quōsdam magnō labōre moventēs vidit et eis centuriōnem auxiliū ferre iussit. Ille autem “Num mē centuriōnem,” inquit, “esse tū scīs?”

(To follow Lesson 60)

460. MORE TALES OF THE WAR OF INDEPENDENCE

Multī inter Americānōs Washingtōniō, maximō duci, tam 20 inimicī erant ut ei imperium ēripere cōnārentur. Quae omnia fortissimō animō ille tulit. Cīvis quidam aliquem in silvā sē moventem audivisse dicitur. Summā cum diligentīā accessit ut causam cōgnōsceret. Quid autem eum vidisse arbitrāminī? Washingtōnius humī Deum multīs 25 cum lacrimīs rogābat ut patriam auxiliō servāret. Cōnspectū permōtus, cīvis rediit neque ab illō visus est. Post multōs annōs, rē nūntiātā, crēdidisse sē dixit virum tam bonum Deō persuādere dēbuisse.

¹ locative, at Boston. ² mount. ³ at length. ⁴ John. ⁵ captain. ⁶ tree.

Philadelphiae¹ exercitus Britannōrum in hibernis erat. Illō tempore Howius,² exercitūs dux, ut cōpiās Washing-
tōnī, quae praesidiō finitimīs castris erant, pelleret cōnsi-
lium cēpit. Semper autem eius cōsiliīs duci Americānō
5 nūntiātis nē ea perficeret impeditus est. Itaque multā
nocte lēgātī et dux domum mulieris cuiusdam, Lȳdiae
Darrah nōmine, convēnerunt. Nē cōsilia audirentur eam
cum omnibus suis in domūs superiōrem partem ire coēgit.
Ipse in parte inferiōre lēgātōs imperiīs suis summā cum
10 diligentīā pārēre iussit. Lȳdia autem, ut omnia quae
dicēbantur audiret, ad ōstium³ accesserat. Ubi lēgātī do-
mum reliquērunt, eam nihil dē cōsiliīs scire crēdentēs,
virō sē ad vicum quendam profectūram esse dīxit ut
rem frūmentāriam suis comparāret. Quem in vicum ubi
15 vēnit, centuriōnī Americānō ea quae audiverat nūntiāvit
ita ut Washingtonius dē periculō monitus exercitūi Bri-
tannōrum fortiter resistere posset. Neque quisquam quae
Lȳdia tam fortiter fēcerat ante bellī finem audīvit.

In proeliō quōdam ad Cowpens vicum factō Tarletōnius,
20 lēgātus Britannōrum, quī dux exercitūs erat, ā Guglielmō
Washingtoniō, lēgātō Americānō, vulnerātus est. Postea
mulieri cuidam Washingtonium tam ferum esse dixit ut
nōmen suum scribere nōn sciret. Cui illa vulnus dēmōns-
trāns "At optimē," inquit, "suum sīgnum facere scit."
25 Illis autem temporibus eī quī scribere nōn sciēbant sīgnum
prō nōmine faciēbant.

(To follow Lesson 63)

461. THE BURNT HAND

Porsena, Etruscōrum rēx, magnō cum exercitū Rōmam
urbem obsidēbat. Magnus Rōmānōrum timor erat, quod

¹ locative.

² *Howe*.

³ *door* (of house or room).



Mūcius Scaevola dextram manum in ignī pōnit

frūmentum nōn multum in urbe erat. Patriam tamen hostibus trādere nōlēbant. Quā dē causā iuvenēs quīdam bellum cōficere cōstituērunt ūnumque ex suō numerō qui rēgem gladiō necāret misērunt. Agricola sē esse simulāns¹ Mūcius in Etruscōrum castra profectus rēgem petivit. 5 Rogāre autem quis rēx esset nōluit, nē hostēs Rōmānum sē esse cōgnōscerent, sed nōbilem quendam pulcherrimē armātum prō rēge interfēcit. Captus et ad rēgem ductus est. Rogātus quis esset aut cūr ūnum ē rēgis lēgātis interfēcisset, “Rōmānus sum,” inquit, “quī patriae meae 10 hostem necāre voluī.” Quae ubi rēx audīvit, ut ignī cremārētur imperāvit. Sed nōn territus prōcessit Rōmānus et dextrā manū in ignī positā, “Ignem tuum,” inquit, “minimē vereor. Plūrimī mihi sunt sociī, quī tē interficient, nisi in Etrūriam redibis.” Quibus verbis 15 superbissimīs auditis Porsena iuvenī libertātem dōnāvit, magnō civis Rōmāni animō maximē permōtus. Rōmam ille rediit, et posteā ā plēbe Scaevola vocābātur, quod est, is quī manum sōlam sinistram habet.

(To follow Lesson 66)

462. FOLLOW THE FLAG

Cum ē Galliā Caesar in Britanniam dē tertiā vigiliā pro- 20 fectus esset, proximō diē in cōspectum terrae Britannicae vēnit. Ibi hostēs sē ad mare exspectantēs vidit. Tantaē autem magnitudinis nāvēs Rōmānae erant ut terrae appropinquāre nōn possent. Quā rē territī hostiumque tēla veritī militēs Rōmāni nōn eādē quā solēbant² virtūte in 25 proeliō utēbantur. Quod ubi Caesar intellēxit, militēs ē nāvibus ad terram per mare accēdere iussit. Cum militēs, novam rem timentēs, quae imperāverat facere nōllent, is quī decimae legiōnis sīgnum ferēbat, postquam deōs ut sibi

¹ *pretending.*

² *be accustomed.*

praesidiō essent rogāvit, “Mē,” inquit, “sequēminī, militēs, nisi vultis signum nostrum in hostium manibus esse. Ego quae ab imperātōre iussus sum faciam.” Haec cum dixisset, ē nāve per mare in hostēs signum ferre coepit. Tum
 5 Rōmānī cohortātī inter sē, nē illum in hostium potestāte relinquerent, signum secūtī in Britannōs impetum fēcērunt. Ācrit̄er ab utrisque pugnātum est. Rōmānīs tamen arma multum prōderant, ita ut summā vī pugnāntēs hostēs in fugam darent.

(To follow Lesson 69) .

463. TWO BRAVE RIVALS

10 Caesar ē Britannīā in Galliam reversus Cicerōnem lēgātum suum hibernīs praefēcit. Ipse in Ītaliā profectus est. Gallī autem absente Rōmānōrum imperātōre libertāte suā iterum potirī cōnātī sunt. Cum castra Rōmāna plūrimīs cōpiīs circumvēnissent, tantā vī in ea impetum
 15 fēcērunt ut ad multam noctem pugnārētur, neque tamen Rōmānōrum castra expugnāre potuērunt. Erant in exercitū duo virī fortissimī, Titus Pullō et Lūcius Vorēnus. Hī inter sē omnibus annīs dē ōrdine contendēbant. Ē quibus Pullō, cum ācerrimē prō castris pugnārētur, “Quid,
 20 Vorēne,” inquit, “exspectās? Hīc diēs dē nostrā virtūte iūdicābit.”¹ Haec cum dixisset, ē castris prōcessit et, ubi plūrimī hostēs vidēbantur, ibi dīmīcāvit. Neque Vorēnus sē castris tenuit, sed nē timēre vidērētur veritus illum secutus est. Pilum Pullō in hostēs mittit atque ūnum ex illis
 25 interficit. Omnēs autem hostēs tēlis in Pullōnem missis prōgredi eum prohibuērunt. Gladiō ūtī cōnantem circumveniunt vulnerantque. Sed illi auxiliō Vorēnus adest, in quem hostēs sē convertunt. Gladiō Vorēnus sē dēfendit et ūnō ex hostibus interfectō reliquōs in fugam dat. Sed iterum

¹ *decide.*



Rōmānī in Britanniam ēgrediuntur

ā Gallis circumventus cadit. Huic subsidium fert Pullō tam fortiter ut uterque complūribus hostibus interfectis summō cum clamōre militum sē in castra reciperet. Sic fortunā factum est ut inimicī alter alterī auxiliō essent.

(To follow Lesson 72)

464. IN LIGHTER VEIN

Ennius, vetus Rōmānus poēta,¹ Scīpiōnī, summō Rōmānōrum ducī, amīcissimus erat. Quōdam autem diē Scīpiō Ennī ad domum cum vēnisset, ut cum poētā conloquerētur, servus quī ōstium servābat “Dominus,” inquit, “meus abest.” Visus tamen erat Ennius ā Scīpiōne, in domūs superiōre parte sē tenēns. Post paucōs diēs Ennius Scīpiōnis ad domum vēnit. Cui ille accēdentī “Domī,” inquit, “ego nōn sum.” Tum Ennius “Ego autem tē et videō et audiō.” “Quid?” Scīpiō respondit, “ego servō tuō crēdidī: tū mihi ipsī nōn crēdēs?”

Lincolnius, nōbilissimus optimusque vir, per bellum illud quod cīvēs nostrī alterī cum alterīs gessērunt, civitātī praeerat. Is fābulis saepe ūtēbātur, ut eīs quī ad sē veniēbant persuādēret. Cum plūrimī ab eō ut aliquid sibi daret rogārent, saepe quid respondēret nōn habuit. Dēnique tamen morbō² quōdam labōrābat, quī ā nobis “variola”³ appellātur. Tum medicō⁴ ille “Laetus,” inquit, “sum, quod tandem habeō quod ūnī cuique dare possim quī habēre cupiat.”

Centuriō quīdam, quī ante bellī finem ab exercitū discēdere volēbat, hoc nē faceret ā Shermānō duce impeditus est. Cum pārēre nōllet, Shermānus illi “Nisi tū,” inquit, “in castra redieris, tē interficī iubēbō.” Post paucōs diēs cum Lincolnius ad exercitum vēnisset, centuriō ad eum vēnit dixitque: “Lēgātus mē discēderē nōluit et, nisi ad legiōnem

¹ poet. ² illness. ³ varioloid (a mild form of smallpox). ⁴ physician.

rediissem, mē interfici iussisset.” Lincolnius et ad lēgātum et ad centuriōnem sē convertit, tum illi “Scīsne,” inquit, “quid ego putem? Si Shermānus sē mē interfectūrum esse dixisset, celeriter id quod vult facerem. Crēdō eum
5 id facere et velle et posse.”

(To follow Lesson 75)

465. AN EXAMPLE OF ROMAN FORTITUDE

Summa omnibus temporibus Rōmānōrum virtūs fuit, ita ut fortissimus quisque semper maximē ab iis laudārētur. Inter multa alia nōbilissimum Rēgulī factum semper erit. Is bellō Pūnicō primō Carthāginiēnsēs terrā marique
10 vicerat, sed tandem proeliō superātus ab illis in vincula coniectus est. Cum pācem cum Rōmānis Carthāginiēnsēs cōfirmāre vellent, Rēgulum Rōmam mīsērunt, qui dē pāce cōfirmandā civēs certiōrēs facerēt. Postulāvērunt autem ut sibi pollicērētur sē, si Rōmānis persuādere
15 nōn posset, in Āfricam reversūrum esse. Rōmam profectus Rēgulus in senātum vēnit, sed patrēs cohortātus est nē pācem cōfirmārent. Haec sunt quae illis dixit: “Utinam nē ad vōs venire coāctus essem! Rēs mihi turpissima vidēbātur cum nostrōs vīdī ab hostibus manibus
20 vinctis in urbem dūcī. Num spērātis eōs fortiōrēs futūrōs esse, si pecūniā datā libertātem recēperint? Mortem mihi huius cōsili praemium exspectandam esse ego sciō. Sed utinam plūrēs mihi vitae essent, ut omnēs patriae prō victōriā darem. Morte meā incitātī, civēs, bellum fortis-
25 tissimē gerite.” Itaque senātui persuāsit. Cum autem amīci nē in Āfricam in vincula rediret postulārent, vir fortissimus pārere nōluit. Ubi Carthāginem rediit, ā Carthāginiēnsibus interfectus est. Sed eius morte Rōmāni quam maximē incitātī Carthāginiēnsēs vicērunt. Utinam nostra
30 patria semper in suis finibus tantae virtūtis virōs habeat!

SELECTIONS FOR READING

STORIES¹ FROM ROMAN HISTORY

466. EARLY BOYHOOD OF ROMULUS AND REMUS

Proca, rēx Albānōrūm, Numitōrem et Amūlium filiōs habuit. Numitōrī, quī nātū maior erat, rēgnūm reliquit; sed Amūlius, pulsō² frātre, rēgnāvit et Rhēam Silviam, eius filiā, Vestae sacerdotem fēcit, quae³ tamen Rōmulum et Remum geminōs ēdidit. Quārē Amūlius ipsam in vincula⁵ coniēcit, parvulōs alveō impositōs⁴ abiēcit in Tiberim, quī tunc forte super rīpās erat effūsus; sed, relābente flūmine, eōs aqua in siccō reliquit. Vāstae tum in iīs locīs sōlitūdīnēs erant. Lupa ad vāgītum accurrit, mātremque⁵ sē gessit.

10

Cum lupa saepius⁶ ad parvulōs velutī ad catulōs reverteretur, Faustulus, pāstor rēgius, rē animadversā eōs tulit in casam et Accae Lārentiae coniugī dedit. Adultī⁷ deinde hī inter pāstorēs prīmō lūdicrīs⁸ certāminibus vīrēs⁹ auxerunt, deinde vēnandō saltūs peragrāre et latrōnēs ā 15

¹ These stories are from the traditional accounts of Rome's early history. Little faith should be put in them as a true historical record, at least as far as details are concerned. ² *pulsō (pellō) frātre*, abl. absolute, *after he had driven out his brother*. ³ *but she*. ⁴ See 311, 7. *impositōs abiēcit*: translate as if they were two coördinated verbs, *imposuit et abiēcit*. ⁵ *mātremque sē gessit*, *acted like a mother*. ⁶ *very often*. ⁷ *adultī (adolēscō)*, *when grown (literally, having grown)*. ⁸ *lūdicrīs certāminibus*, *with playful contests*. ⁹ From *vīs*; do not confuse with *vir, virī*.

pecoribus arcēre coepērunt. Quārē cum iīs insidiātī essent latrōnēs, Remus captus est, Rōmulus vī sē dēfendit. Tum Faustulus indicāvit Rōmulō quis esset¹ eōrum avus, quae māter. Rōmulus statim armātīs pāstōribus Albam² pro-
5 perāvit.

467. THE FOUNDING OF ROME

Intereā Remum latrōnēs ad Amūlium rēgem perdūxērunt, eum accūsantēs quasi³ Numitōris agrōs infēstāre solitus esset; itaque Remus ā rēge Numitōrī ad supplicium trādītus est; at Numitor, adulēscentis vultum cōn-
10 sīderāns, haud⁴ procul erat quīn nepōtem āgnōsceret. Nam Remus ōris līnēamentīs⁵ erat mātī simillimus aetās-
que expositiōnis temporibus congruēbat. Ea rēs dum Numitōris animum anxium tenet,⁶ repente Rōmulus supervenit, frātrem liberat, avum Numitōrem in rēgnum
15 restituit.⁷

Deinde Rōmulus et Remus urbem in iisdem locīs, ubi expositī ubique educātī erant, condidērunt⁸; sed ortā inter eōs contentiōne, uter⁹ nōmen novae urbī daret¹⁰ eamque regeret, auspicia dēcrēvērunt¹¹ adhibēre. Remus prior sex
20 vulturēs, Rōmulus postea duodecim vidit. Sic Rōmulus, victor auguriō, urbem Rōmam vocāvit. Ad novae urbis tūtēlam sufficere vāllum vidēbātur. Cuius¹² angustias inrīdēns cum Remus saltū id trāiēcisset, eum irātus¹³ Rōmulus interfēcit, hīs increpāns verbīs: “Sic¹⁴ deinde, quī-
25 cumque alius trānsiliet moenia mea!” Ita sōlus potitus est imperiō¹⁵ Rōmulus.

¹ For mood and tense, see 369-374. ² See 237. ³ *on the ground that.* ⁴ *haud . . . āgnōsceret, came very near recognizing his grandson.* ⁵ See 157. ⁶ *dum, while, regularly takes the pres. ind. where the English uses the imperfect; translate “was keeping.”* ⁷ *restituō.* ⁸ *condō.* ⁹ *as to which of the two.* ¹⁰ Why subjunctive? ¹¹ *dēcernō.* ¹² *its.* ¹³ *in anger.* ¹⁴ Supply *pereat, let him perish*, or some similar verb. ¹⁵ For case, see 337.

468. ROMULUS, FIRST KING OF THE ROMANS

War with the Sabines

Rōmulus imāginem urbis magis quam urbem fēcerat; incolae deerant. Erat in¹ proximō lūcus; hunc asȳlum fēcit. Et statim eō mīra vīs² latrōnum pāstōrumque cōnfūgit. Cum vērō uxōrēs ipse populusque nōn habērent, lēgātōs circā vīcīnās gentēs mīsīt, quī societātem cōnū-
biumque novō populō peterent.³ Nusquam benignē audīta lēgātīō est; lūdibrium etiam additum: “Cūr nōn fēminīs quoque asȳlum aperuistis? Id enim compār foret⁴ cōnū-
bium.” Rōmulus, aegritūdinem animī dissimulāns, lūdōs parat; indīcī⁵ deinde fīnitimīs spectāculum iubet. Multī¹⁰ convēnērunt studiō videndae novae urbis, maximē Sabīnī cum liberīs et coniugibus. Ubi spectāculī tempus vēnit eōque⁶ conversae mentēs⁷ cum oculīs erant, tum signō datō iuvenēs Rōmānī discurrunt, virginēs rapiunt.⁸

Haec fuit statim causa bellī. Sabīnī enim ob virginēs¹⁵ raptās⁹ bellum adversus Rōmānōs sūmpsērunt, et cum Rōmae appropīnquārent, Tarpēiam virginem nactī sunt,¹⁰ quae aquam forte extrā moenia petītum¹¹ ierat. Huius pater Rōmānae praeerat arcī. Titus Tatius, Sabīnōrum dux, Tarpēiae optiōnem mūneris dedit, sī¹² exercitum suum²⁰ in Capitōlium perdūxisset. Illa petiit quod Sabīnī in sinistrīs manibus gererent,¹³ vidēlicet aureōs ānulōs et armillās. Quibus dolōsē prōmissīs, Tarpēia Sabīnōs in arcem per-

¹ in proximō, near by. ² number. ³ See 364. ⁴ = esset, would be. ⁵ Pres. pass. infin. of indīcō, to be announced. ⁶ eō = in spectāculum. ⁷ mentēs cum oculīs, minds and eyes alike (literally, minds with eyes). ⁸ The connective, et, is often omitted in rapid historical narrative. ⁹ ob virginēs raptās, on account of the seizure of the maidens (literally, on account of the seized maidens). ¹⁰ nancīscor. ¹¹ Supine to denote purpose; see 435. ¹² sī . . . perdūxisset, if she would lead. ¹³ wore.

dūxit, ubi Tatius scūtīs eam¹ obruī iussit; nam et² ea in laevis habuerant. Sic impia prōditiō celerī poenā vindicāta est.

469. ROMULUS, FIRST KING OF THE ROMANS

Peace with the Sabines. Death of Romulus

Deinde Rōmulus ad certāmen prōcessit, et in eō locō ubi
 5 nunc Forum Rōmānum est pugnam cōseruit. Primō impetū vir inter Rōmānōs īnsignis, nōmine Hostilius, fortissimē dīmīcāns³ cecidit⁴; quārē Rōmānī fugere coepērunt. Iam Sabīnī clāmitābant: "Vīcimus perfidōs hospitēs,⁵ imbellēs hostēs. Nunc sciunt longē⁶ aliud esse virginēs
 10 rapere, aliud pugnāre cum virīs." Tunc Rōmulus, arma ad caelum tollēns, Iovī aedem vōvit, et exercitus restitit.⁷ Itaque proelium redintegrātur; sed raptae mulierēs ausae sunt sē inter tēla volantia īferre et, hinc patrēs, hinc virōs ōrantēs,⁸ pācem conciliāvērunt.

15 Rōmulus Sabīnōs in urbem recēpit et rēgnum cum Tatiō sociāvit. Vērūm haud ita multō post, occīsō Tatiō, ad Rōmulum potentātus omnis recidit. Centum deinde ex seniōribus ēlēgit, quōs senātōrēs nōmināvit propter senectūtem. Trēs equitum centuriās cōstituit, populum in trī-
 20 gintā cūriās distribuit. Hīs ita ōrdinātis, cum ad⁹ exercitum lūstrandum cōntiōnem in campō habēret, subitō coorta est tempestās et Rōmulus ē cōspectū ablātus est.¹⁰ Ad deōs trānsisse vulgō crēditus est.¹¹ Aedēs in colle Quirīnālī Rōmulō¹² cōstitutā, ipse prō deō cultus¹³ et Quirīnus est
 25 appellātus.

¹ eam obruī iussit, *ordered her to be buried.* ² et ea, *these also.* ³ while fighting. ⁴ cadō. ⁵ hosts. ⁶ longē aliud esse . . . aliud, *that it is one thing . . . quite another.* ⁷ resistō, *held its ground.* ⁸ by beseeching. ⁹ See 406, 3. ¹⁰ auferō. ¹¹ crēditus est, *he was believed.* ¹² in honor of Romulus. ¹³ colō.

470. NUMA POMPILIUS, SECOND KING OF THE ROMANS

(716-673 B.C.)

Successit Rōmulō Numa Pompilius, vir inclutā iūstitiā¹ et religiōne. Is Curibus,² ex oppidō Sabīnōrum, accītus est. Quī cum Rōmam vēnisset, ut populū ferum religiōne mītigāret, sacra plūrima instituit. Āram Vestae cōsecrāvit, et ignem in ārā perpetuō alendum³ virginibus dedit. Flāminem⁴ Iovis sacerdotem creāvit eumque insīgnī veste et curūlī sellā adōrnāvit. Dīcitur quondam ipsum Iovem ē caelō ēlicuisse. Hīc, ingentibus fulminibus in urbem dēmīssīs, dēscendit in nemus Aventīnum, ubi Numam docuit quibus sacrīs fulmina essent⁵ prōcūranda, et praetereā imperī certa pīgnora populō Rōmānō datūrum sē esse prōmīsīt. Numa laetus rem populō nūntiāvit. Postrīdiē omnēs ad aedēs⁶ rēgiās convēnērunt silentēsque exspectābant quid futūrum esset. Atque sōle ortō⁷ delābitur ē caelō scūtum, quod ancīle appellāvit Numa. Id nē fūrtō auferrī¹⁵ posset, Māmurium fabrum undecim scūta eādē fōrmā⁸ fabricāre iussit. Duodecim autem Saliōs Mārtis sacerdotēs lēgit, quī ancīlia, sēcrēta illa imperī pīgnora, cūstōdīrent.

471. NUMA POMPILIUS, SECOND KING OF THE ROMANS

Annū in duodecim mēnsēs ad cursum lūnae Numa Pompilius dēscripsit; nefāstōs⁹ fāstōsque diēs fēcīt; portās²⁰ Iānō¹⁰ geminō aedificāvit ut esset index pācis et bellī; nam

¹ For case, see 303. ² Curibus . . . Sabīnōrum, from Cures, a town of the Sabines; why is the prep. omitted with Curibus? ³ to be kept. ⁴ Flāminem . . . creāvit, he appointed a priest as flamen for Jupiter. ⁵ essent: prōcūranda, should be taken care of (i.e. averted). ⁶ aedēs rēgiās, the palace. ⁷ sōle ortō (orior), at sunrise. ⁸ eādē fōrmā: see 303. ⁹ nefāstōs . . . fēcīt, he made a distinction between sacred days and business days. ¹⁰ Iānō geminō, in honor of two-headed Janus.

apertus,¹ in armīs esse cīvitātem, clausus, pācātōs circā omnēs populōs, sīgnificābat.

Lēgēs quoque plūrimās et ūtilēs tulit Numa. Ut vērō maiōrem īnstitūtīs sūīs auctōritātem conciliāret, simulāvit sibi² cum deā Ēgeriā esse conloquia nocturna eiusque³ monitū sē omnia quae ageret facere. Lūcus erat, quem⁴ medium fōns perennī⁵ rigābat aquā; eō saepe Numa sine arbitrīs sē īferēbat, velut ad congressum deae; ita omnium animōs eā⁶ pietāte imbuit, ut fidēs ac iūsiūrandum
 10 nōn minus quam lēgum et poenārum metus cīvēs continēret. Bellum quidem nūllum gessit, sed nōn minus cīvitātī prōfuit quam Rōmulus. Morbō exstinctus in Iāniculō monte sepultus⁷ est. Ita duo deinceps rēgēs, ille bellō, hīc pāce, cīvitātem auxērunt. Rōmulus septem et trīgintā
 15 rēgnāvit annōs, Numa trēs et quadrāgintā.

472. MUCIUS SCAEVOLA

(507 B.C.)

Cum Porsena Rōmam obsidēret, Mūcius, vir Rōmānae cōstantiae, senātum adiit et veniam⁸ trānsfugiendī petiit, necem rēgis reprōmittēns. Acceptā potestāte⁹ cum in castra Porsenae vēnisset, ibi in cōnfertissimā turbā prope
 20 tribūnal cōstitit.¹⁰ Stīpendium tunc forte mīlitibus dabātur et scrība cum rēge parī ferē ōrnātū sedēbat. Mūcius, īgnōrāns uter rēx esset, illum prō rēge occīdit. Apprehēnsus et ad rēgem pertrāctus¹¹ dextram accēnsō¹² ad sacrificium foculō iniēcit, velut manum pūniēns, quod in caede peccās-

¹ Agrees with Iānus understood, subject of sīgnificābat, when opened.

² sibi esse, that he had: why is sibi dative? ³ eiusque monitū, at her suggestion. ⁴ quem medium, the middle of which. ⁵ perennī aquā: see 303.

⁶ eā pietāte, with such piety. ⁷ sepeliō. ⁸ veniam trānsfugiendī, permission to go over (to the enemy). ⁹ privilegia. ¹⁰ cōnsistō. ¹¹ pertrahō.

¹² accēnsō foculō, in a brazier that was burning.

set. Attonitus mīrāculō rēx iuvenem āmovērī ab altāribus iussit. Tum Mūcius, quasi beneficium remūnerāns, ait trecentōs adversus eum suī¹ similēs coniūrāvisse. Quā rē ille territus bellum acceptīs obsidibus dēposuit. Mūciō prāta trāns Tiberim data, ab eō Mūcia appellāta. Statua quoque eī honōris grātiā cōstitutā est.

473. PUBLIUS DECIUS

(343 B.C.)

P. Decius, Valeriō² Maximō et Cornēliō Cossō cōsulis, tribūnus militum fuit. Exercitū Rōmānō in angustiīs Gaurī montis clausō Decius ēditum collem cōspēxit imminentem hostium castrīs. Acceptō praesidiō verticem³ ¹⁰ occupāvit, hostēs terruit, cōsulī spatium dedit ad subdūcendum agmen in aequiōrem locum. Ipse, colle quem insēderat undique armātis circumdatō, intempestā nocte per⁴ mediās hostium cūstōdiās somnō oppressās incolumis⁵ ēvāsit. Quā rē ab exercitū dōnātus est coronā civicā, quae ¹⁵ dabātur eī quī⁶ cīvēs in bellō servāsset. Cōsul fuit bellō Latīnō cum Mānliō Torquātō. Hōc bellō cum⁷ utrique cōsulī somniō obvēnisset, eōs victōrēs futūrōs, quōrum dux in proeliō cecidisset, convēnit inter eōs ut,⁸ utrius cornū⁹ in aciē labōrāret, is diīs sē Mānibus dēvovēret. ²⁰ Inclīnante suā parte Decius sē et hostēs diīs Mānibus dēvōvit. Armātus in equum insiluit ac sē in mediōs hostēs immisit; corruit obrutus tēlis et victōriam suīs reliquit.

¹ Refers to Mūcius. ² Valeriō . . . cōsulis, *in the consulship of*, etc., abl. absolute; see 316. ³ *the summit of the hill*. ⁴ *per . . . cūstōdiās, through the midst of the enemy's pickets*. ⁵ *safely*. ⁶ *one who*. ⁷ *cum . . . obvēnisset; when the two consuls had dreamed (literally, when it had come to each of the two consuls by a dream)*. ⁸ *ut . . . dēvovēret* is subject of *convēnit*; translate "*it was agreed among them that he whose (utrius), etc., should,*" etc. ⁹ Nominative.

474. GAIUS DUILIUS

(260 B.C.)

I. Gāius Duilius Poenōs nāvālī pugnā prīmus¹ dēvīcit. Quī cum vidēret nāvēs Rōmānās ā Pūnicīs vēlōcitāte superārī, manūs² ferreās, māchinam ad comprehendendās hostium nāvēs tenendāsque ūtilem, excōgitāvit. Quae
 5 manūs² ubi hostilem apprehenderant nāvem, superiectō ponte trānsgridiēbātur Rōmānus³ et in ipsōrum ratibus comminus dīmīcābant, unde⁴ Rōmānīs, quī rōbore praestābant, facilis victōria fuit. Celeriter sunt expugnātae nāvēs Pūnicāe trīgintā, mersae⁵ tredecim.

10 Duilius victor Rōmam reversus prīmus nāvālem triumphum ēgit. Nulla victōria Rōmānīs grātior fuit, quod invictī⁶ terrā iam etiam marī plūrimum⁷ possent. Itaque Duiliō⁸ concessum est ut per omnem vītam praelūcente fūnālī et praecinente tībīcine ā cēnā rediret.

15 II. Hannibal, dux classis Pūnicāe, ē nāvī quae iam capiēbātur, in scapham saltū sē dēmīttēns Rōmānōrum manūs effūgit. Veritus autem nē in patriā classis⁹ āmissae poenās daret, civium odium astūtiā āvertit, nam ex illā infēlicī pugnā priusquam clādis nūntius domum perveniret
 20 quendam ex amicīs Carthāginem mīsīt. Quī postquam cūriam intrāvit, "Cōnsulit"¹⁰ inquit "vōs Hannibal, cum dux Rōmānōrum magnīs cōpiīs maritimīs īnstrūctīs advēnerit, num cum eō cōnfligere dēbeat?" Acclāmāvit ūniversus senātus nōn esse dubium quīn¹¹ cōnfligī oportē-

¹ prīmus dēvīcit, *was the first to conquer.* ² manūs ferreās, *grappling irons.* ³ the Romans, a collective noun. ⁴ and as a consequence.

⁵ mersae. ⁶ invictī terrā, *victorious on land.* ⁷ plūrimum possent, *they were supreme.* ⁸ Duiliō concessum est ut, etc., *Duilius was allowed to, etc.*

⁹ classis āmissae, *for losing the fleet.* ¹⁰ Cōnsulit . . . vōs . . . num, *asks your advice as to whether.* ¹¹ that.

ret. Tum ille "Cōnflīxit" inquit "et superātus est." Ita nōn potuerunt factum damnāre, quod ipsī fieri dēbuisse iūdicāverant. Sic Hannibal victus crucis supplicium effūgit: nam eō poenae genere dux rē male gestā apud Poenōs adficiēbātur.

5

475. APPIUS CLAUDIUS PULCHER

(249 B.C.)

Appius Claudius, vir stultae temeritātis, cōsul adversus Poenōs profectus priōrum ducum cōsilia palam reprehēbat sēque, quō¹ diē hostem vīdisset, bellum cōfectūrum esse iactitābat. Quī cum, antequam nāvāle proelium committeret, auspicia² habēret pullāriusque eī nūntiāset,¹⁰ pullōs nōn exīre ē caveā neque vēscī, inrīdēns iussit eōs in aquam mergī, ut saltem biberent, quoniam ēsse³ nōllent. Ea rēs cum, quasi⁴ irātis diīs, militēs ad omnia sēgniōrēs timidiōrēsque fēcisset, commissō proeliō magna clādēs ā Rōmānīs accepta est: octō eōrum mīllia caesa sunt,¹⁵ vīgintī mīllia capta. Quā rē Claudius postea ā populō condemnātus est damnātiōnisque ignōminiam voluntāriā morte praevēnit. Ea rēs calamitātī⁵ fuit etiam Claudiae,⁵ cōsulis sorōrī: quae ā lūdīs pūblicīs revertēns in cōfertā multitudine aegrē prōcēdente carpentō, palam optāvit²⁰ ut frāter suus Pulcher revīvīsceret atque iterum classem āmitteret, quō⁶ minor turba Rōmae foret.⁷ Ob vōcem illam impiam Claudia quoque damnāta gravisque⁸ eī dicta est multa.

¹ quō diē, on the same day that. ² auspicia habēret, was consulting the auspices. ³ Infinitive of edō, to eat. ⁴ quasi irātis diīs, because (as they thought) the gods were angry. ⁵ See 294, 295. ⁶ quō, so that. ⁷ = esset.

⁸ gravisque . . . multa, and a heavy fine was imposed upon her.

CAESAR. GALLIC WAR. BOOK II (*Adapted*)

CHAPTER I

476. THE BELGAE FORM A CONFEDERACY AGAINST THE ROMANS

Dum Caesar in Galliā in hibernīs est,¹ omnēs Belgae contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrābant obsidēsque inter² sē dabant. Coniūrandī³ hae erant causae: primum nōlēbant⁴ nostrum exercitum ad sē⁵ addūcī,⁶ deinde ab nōnnullīs Gallīs sollicitābantur. Hī populī Rōmānī exercitum hiemāre atque inveterāscere in Galliā nōlēbant. Nōnnullī mōbilitāte et levitāte animī novīs⁷ imperiīs studēbant. Ab nōnnullīs etiam sollicitābantur, quod in Galliā ā potentibus atque ab iīs quī condūcere hominēs poterant⁸ vulgō rēgna occupābantur, quī minus facile eam rem⁹ imperiō¹⁰ nostrō cōsequī poterant.

CHAPTER II

477. CAESAR PROCEEDS AGAINST THE BELGAE

Hīs nūntiīs litterisque commōtus est Caesar. Duās legiōnēs in citeriōre¹¹ Galliā novās cōscripsit.¹² In interiōrem¹³ Galliam cum hīs legiōnibus Quintum Pedium lēgātum mīsit. Ipse paucīs post¹⁴ diēbus ad exercitum vēnit. Senonēs, quī finitimī Belgīs erant, ea quae apud Belgās geruntur cōgnōscunt, atque Caesarī omnēs nūntiant manum cōgī et exercitum Belgārum in ūnum locum condūcī. Tum vērō Caesar contendit ad eōs proficīscī.¹⁵

¹ was. ² inter sē, one another (literally, between themselves). ³ of conspiring. ⁴ From nōlō. ⁵ them. ⁶ Present passive infinitive, to be led. ⁷ novīs imperiīs, revolution. ⁸ Imperfect of possum. ⁹ eam rem . . . cōsequī, to do this. ¹⁰ imperiō nostrō, under our rule. ¹¹ See map, page 22. ¹² From cōscribō. ¹³ the interior of. ¹⁴ afterwards. ¹⁵ to set out.

Itaque castra movet diēbusque circiter quīndecim ad finēs Belgārum pervenit.

CHAPTER III

478. THE REMI IMMEDIATELY SUBMIT TO CAESAR

Eō¹ dē imprōvisō celeriterque vēnit Caesar. Rēmī, quī proximī Galliae ex² Belgīs sunt, ad eum lēgātōs Iccium et Audecumborium mīsērunt, quī “Nōs” inquirunt “omnia in 5 fidem atque in potestātem populī Rōmānī permittimus, neque contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāvimus. Parātī sumus obsidēs dare et tua imperāta facere et tē oppidīs³ recipere et frūmentō cēterisque rēbus iuvāre. Reliquī omnēs Belgae in armīs sunt. Germānī, quī cis Rhēnum¹⁰ incolunt, sēsē cum hīs coniūnxērunt.⁴ Maximus est eōrum omnium furor, neque potuimus prohibēre Suessiōnēs, frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque nostrōs, cum hīs cōsentīre.⁵”

CHAPTER IV

479. CAESAR LEARNS FROM THE REMI THE STRENGTH OF THE ENEMY'S FORCES

Caesar ab hīs lēgātīs sic reperiēbat; plērōsque Belgās esse ortōs ab Germānīs Rhēnumque antīquitus trāductōs¹⁵ propter locī fertilitātem ibi cōnsēdisse Gallōsque expulisse, atque Teutonīs⁶ Cimbrīsque intrā finēs suōs ingredi⁷ prohibētis eārum rērum⁸ memoriā magnam auctōritātem sibi in rē militārī sūmere. Dē numerō eōrum omnia⁹ sē habēre

¹ *there, i.e. ad finēs Belgārum.* ² *ex Belgīs, of the Belgae.* ³ *oppidīs recipere = in oppida recipere.* ⁴ *From coniungō.* ⁵ *from conspiring.* ⁶ *Teutonīs . . . prohibētis, abl. absolute, stating the reason or cause.* ⁷ *from entering.* ⁸ *deeds; refers to repelling the Teutones and Cimbri.* ⁹ *omnia explorāta, full information.*

explōrāta Rēmī dīcēbant. Plūrimum inter eōs Bellovacōs et virtūte et auctōritāte et hominū numerō posse; hōs posse cōficere armāta millia centum. Suessiōnēs suōs esse finitimōs; lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possidēre. 5 Apud eōs fuisse rēgem nostrā etiam memoriā¹ Dīviciācum, tōtīus Galliae potentissimum: nunc esse rēgem Galbam; ad² hunc propter iūstitiam prūdentiāque tōtīus bellī summam omnium voluntāte dēferri.

CHAPTER V

480. CAESAR RECEIVES HOSTAGES FROM THE REMI AND ENCAMPS ON THE BANKS OF THE AXONA

Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus omnem senātum ad sē con-
10 venīre prīncipumque liberōs obsidēs ad sē addūcī iussit. Quae omnia ab hīs diligenter ad³ diem facta sunt. Ipse Dīviciācum Haeduum magnopere cohortātus monet ut manūs hostium distineantur. Id fierī potest, sī suās cōpiās Haeduī in finēs Bellovacōrum intrōdūxerint⁴ et eōrum
15 agrōs populārī coeperint. Hīs mandātis eum ab sē dīmittit. Postquam omnēs Belgārum cōpiās in ūnum locum coactās ad sē venīre neque iam longē abesse vīdit, flūmen Axonam exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit atque ibi castra posuit. Quae⁵ rēs et latus ūnum castrōrum rīpīs flūminis mūniēbat
20 et quae⁶ post eum essent tūta ab hostibus reddēbat. In eō flūmine pōns erat. Ibi praesidium pōnit et in alterā parte flūminis Q. Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum cum sex cohortibus relinquit; castra in altitudinem pedum duodecim vāllō fossāque duodēvīginti pedum mūnīre iubet.

¹ Ablative of time within which. Why is *memoriā*, 479, line 18, ablative? ² *on.* ³ *ad diem*, to the very day. ⁴ Future perfect indicative. ⁵ *Quae rēs*, this position, i.e. crossing the river. ⁶ *quae . . . essent*, the rear.

CHAPTER VI

481. THE BELGAE LAY SIEGE TO BIBRAX, A TOWN OF THE REMI

Ab hīs castrīs oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Bibrax aberat millia passuum octō. Id ex itinere magnō impetū Belgae oppugnāre coepērunt. Aegrē eō diē sustentātum¹ est. Gallōrum atque Belgārum oppugnātiō est haec. Circumiectā multitudīne hominū tōtīs moenibus² undique in mūrū lapidēs iacī coeptī sunt. Ubi mūrus dēfēnsōribus nūdātus est, testūdine³ factā portās succēdunt mūrūque subruunt. Quod tum facile fiēbat. Nam cum tanta multitudō lapidēs ac tēla conicerent, in mūrō cōsistendī potestās erat nullī.⁴ Cum finem oppugnandī nox fēcisset, Iccius Rēmus, quī tum oppidō praecerat, nūntium ad Caesarem mittit, nisi subsidium sibi submittātur, sēsē diūtius sustinēre nōn posse.⁵

CHAPTER VII

482. THE BELGAE ABANDON THE SIEGE OF BIBRAX

Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar isdem⁶ ducibus ūsus⁷ quī nūntiū ab Icciō vēnerant, Numidās et Crētās sagittāriōs et funditōrēs Baleārēs subsidiō⁸ oppidānis mittit; quōrum adventū hostibus spēs potiundī oppidī discessit. Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morātī agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulātī, multīs vicīs aedificiisque incēnsīs, ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiīs contendērunt et ab⁹ millibus passuum

¹ sustentātum est, *the attack was sustained* (literally, *it was sustained*).

² Dative, governed by circumiectā. ³ This was done by placing the shields over the heads of the soldiers. ⁴ Dative of possession. ⁵ Infinitive in indirect discourse after the idea of saying implied in nūntium mittit. ⁶ Isdem ducibus, *the same persons as guides*.

⁷ using. ⁸ For construction, see 294, 295. ⁹ An adverb, *away, off*.

minus duōbus castra posuērunt; quae castra, ut¹ fūmō atque ignibus sīgnificābātur, amplius mīllibus passuum octō in lātitudinem patēbant.

CHAPTER VIII

483. DESCRIPTION OF CAESAR'S CAMP. HE AWAITS THE
ATTACK OF THE BELGAE

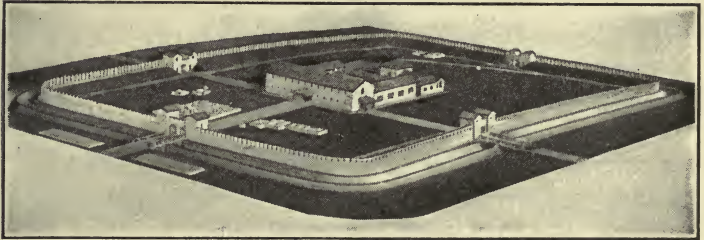
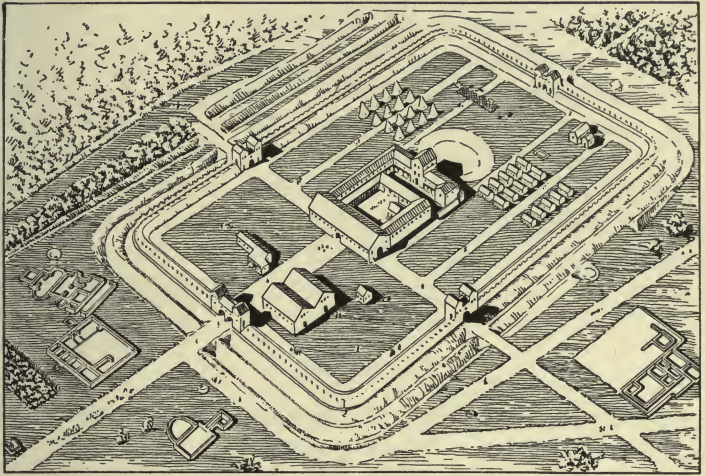
Caesar propter multitudinem hostium et propter opīniō-
nem virtūtis proeliō supersedēre statuit, cottidiē tamen
equestribus proeliīs quid² hostis virtūte posset et quid nos-
trī audērent periclitābātur.³ Nostrōs nōn esse inferiōrēs
intellēxit. Locus prō castrīs ad aciem instruendam erat
nātūrā idōneus, quod is collis, ubi castra posita erant, pau-
lulum ex plānitīē ēditus tantum⁴ adversus in lātitudinem
patēbat quantum locī aciēs instrūcta occupāre poterat. Ab⁵
utrōque latere eius collis trānsversam fossam obdūxit cir-
citer passuum quādringentōrum et ad⁶ extrēmās fossās
castella cōstituit ibique tormenta conlocāvit, nē, cum
15 aciem instrūxisset, hostēs ab⁵ lateribus pugnantes suōs
circumvenīre possent. Hōc factō, duābus legiōnibus quās
proximē cōscripserat in castrīs relictīs, reliquās sex legiōnēs
prō castrīs in aciē cōstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex
castrīs ēductās⁷ instrūxerant.

CHAPTER IX

484. THE BELGAE TRY TO CROSS THE AXONA

20 Palūs erat nōn magna inter nostrum atque hostium exer-
citurum. Hanc sī nostrī trānsīrent hostēs expectābant⁸;

¹ *as*; ut with the indicative means "as" or "when." ² *quid . . . posset*, what the enemy could do by their valor. ³ *he tried to ascertain.* ⁴ *tantum patēbat quantum locī*, spread over as much space as. ⁵ *on.* ⁶ *ad extrēmās fossās*, at the ends of the trenches. ⁷ See 311, 7. ⁸ *were waiting to see.*



A Roman Camp

(The lower view is based on a model of a reconstructed camp at Saalburg, Germany. The upper view is a sketch representing the same camp occupied by troops)

nostrī autem, sī ab illīs initium trānseundī fieret, ut¹ impedītōs aggredērentur, parātī in armīs erant. Interim proeliō equestrī inter duās aciēs contendēbātur. Ubi neutrī trānseundī initium faciunt, secundiōre² equitum proeliō nostrīs Caesar suōs in castra redūxit. Hostēs⁵ prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt, quod esse post nōstra castra dēmōnstrātum est. Ibi partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnātī sunt, ut, sī possent, castellum, cui praeerat Quīntus Titūrius lēgātus, expugnārent pontemque interscinderent; sī minus³ potu-¹⁰ issent, ut agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur⁴ commeātūque nostrōs prohibērent.⁴

CHAPTER X

485. THE BELGAE ARE DEFEATED IN THE BATTLE THAT FOLLOWS

Caesar omnem equitātum et funditōrēs sagittāriōsque pontem trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Ācriter in eō locō pugnātum est. Nostrī hostēs impedītōs in flūmine aggressī¹⁵ magnum eōrum numerum occidērunt; reliquōs per eōrum corpora audācissimē trānsire cōnantēs multitudīne tēlōrum reppulērunt; prīmōs, quī trānsierant, equitātū circumventōs⁵ interfēcērunt. Hostēs, ubi et dē⁶ expugnandō oppidō et dē flūmine trānseundō spem sē fefellisse intellēxērunt²⁰ neque nostrōs in locum inīquiōrem⁷ prōgredī pugnandī causā vīdērunt atque ubi ipsōs rēs frūmentāria dēficere

¹ ut . . . aggredērentur, *to attack*, depending upon parātī erant. ² secundiōre . . . nostrīs, abl. absolute; *since the cavalry battle was more favorable to our men.* ³ not. ⁴ These subjunctives also express the purpose of trādūcere cōnātī sunt. ⁵ See 311, 7. ⁶ dē . . . spem sē fefellisse, *that they had been disappointed in the hope of . . .* (literally, *that hope had failed them about . . .*). ⁷ unfavorable

coepit, conciliō convocātō cōstituērunt optimum¹ esse domum suam quemque revertī ad suōs fīnēs dēfendendōs, ut potius in suīs quam in aliēnīs fīnibus dēcertārent et domesticīs cōpiīs rei frūmentāriae ūterentur. Ad eam
 5 sententiam haec ratiō² eōs dēdūxit, quod Dīviciācum atque Haeduōs fīnibus Bellovacōrum appropīnquāre cōgnōverant. Hīs³ persuādēri ut diūtius morārentur neque suīs auxilium ferrent nōn poterat.

CHAPTER XI

486. THE ROMANS PURSUE THE BELGAE AS THEY
DISPERSE

Eā rē cōstitutā secundā vigiliā magnō cum strepitū ac
 10 tumultū castrīs ēgressī nullō certō ōrdine neque imperiō fēcērunt⁴ ut cōnsimilis fugae profectiō vidērētur. Hāc rē statim Caesar per speculātōrēs cōgnitā insidiās veritus, quod quā⁵ dē causā discēderent nōndum perspēxerat, exercitum equitātumque castrīs continuit. Primā lūce, cōn-
 15 fīrmātā rē ab explōrātōribus, omnem equitātum, quī novissimum agmen morārētur,⁶ praemisit. Titum Labiēnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus subsequi iussit. Hī novissimōs adorti et multa mīllia passuum prōsecūti magnam multitudinem eōrum fugientium concidērunt.

20 Ita sine ūllō periculō tantam eōrum multitudinem nostrī interfēcērunt quantum⁷ fuit diēi spatium, sub occāsum sōlis dēstitērunt, sēque in castra, ut⁸ erat imperātum, recēpērunt.

¹ optimum esse, *that it was best.* ² consideration. ³ Hīs persuādēri nōn poterat, *these could not be persuaded* (literally, *it could not be persuaded these*). ⁴ fēcērunt ut . . . profectiō vidērētur, *they made their departure seem.* ⁵ quā dē causā, *why.* ⁶ See 364. ⁷ quantum . . . spatium, *as the length of the day allowed.* ⁸ as.

CHAPTER XII

487. CAESAR MARCHES AGAINST THE SUESSIONES, AND CAPTURES THE TOWN NOVIODUNUM

Postridīe eius diē Caesar in finēs Suessiōnum, quī proximī Rēmīs erant, exercitum dūxit, et magnō itinere cōfectō ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id ex itinere oppugnāre cōnātus, quod vacuum dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātitudinem fossae mūrique altitudinem expugnāre nōn potuit. Celeriter vineīs¹ ad oppidum āctis,² aggere³ iactō, turribusque cōstitūtis, magnitudine operum et celeritate Rōmānōrum permōti Suessiōnēs lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditione mittunt et petentibus⁴ Rēmīs ut cōservārentur impetrant.

10

CHAPTER XIII

488. THE BELLOVACI ALSO SURRENDER TO CAESAR

Caesar obsidibus acceptis armisque omnibus ex oppidō trādītis in dēditionem Suessiōnēs accēpit exercitumque in Bellovacōs dūcit. Quī cum sē suaque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent, atque cum ab eō oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter millia passuum quīnque abesset, omnēs¹⁵ maiōrēs⁵ nātū ex oppidō ēgressi manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce significāre coepērunt sēsē in eius fidem ac potestātem venīre neque contrā populum Rōmānum armīs contendere. Item cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, pueri mulierēsque ex mūrō passīs⁶ manibus²⁰ suō mōre pācem ab Rōmānīs petiērunt.

¹ Wooden frames covered with hides, to protect the besiegers. ² *moved*, from *agō*. ³ The principal work for a formal siege. It was begun at a distance from the wall and gradually built up until it was equal to the height of the fortification. ⁴ *petentibus Rēmīs*, at the request of the Remi, abl. absolute. ⁵ For comparison, see 272. ⁶ *pandō*.

CHAPTER XIV

489. DIVICIACUS SPEAKS IN BEHALF OF THE BELLOVACI

Prō hīs Dīviciācus facit verba : Bellovacōs omnī tempore in fidē atque amīcitiā cīvitātis Haeduae fuisse : impulsōs ab suīs prīncipibus ab Haeduīs dēfēcisse et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Eōs quī eius cōnsilī prīncipēs¹ fuissent,²
 5 quod³ intellexerent² quantam calamitātem cīvitātī intulissent, in Britanniam profūgisse. Petere nōn solum Bellovacōs, sed etiam prō hīs Haeduōs, ut suā clēmentīā ac mānsuētūdine in eōs ūtātur. Quod⁴ sī fēcērit,² Haeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnēs Belgās amplificātūrum,
 10 quōrum auxiliīs atque opibus, sī⁵ qua bella inciderint,² sustentāre cōsuērīnt.²

CHAPTER XV

490. CAESAR'S REPLY. DESCRIPTION OF THE NERVII

Caesar honōris Dīviciācī atque Haeduōrum causā sēsē eōs in fidem receptūrum et cōservātūrum dīxit ; quod erat cīvitās magnā inter Belgās auctōritāte⁶ atque hominum
 15 multītūdine praestābat, sexcentōs obsidēs poposcit. Hīs trādītīs omnibusque armīs ex oppidō conlātīs ab eō locō in finēs Ambiānōrum pervēnit, quī sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdidērunt. Eōrum finēs Nervii attingēbant ; quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sic reperiēbat :
 20 nūllum aditum esse ad eōs mercātōribus⁷ ; patī nihil vīnī⁸ reliquārumque rērum ad lūxuriam pertinentium īferrī : esse hominēs ferōs magnaēque virtūtis ; increpitāre atque incūsāre reliquōs Belgās, quī⁹ sē populō Rōmānō dēdidis-

¹ *authors.* ² For the construction of these subjunctives, see 427. — cōnsuērīnt = cōnsuēverint. ³ *because.* ⁴ Quod . . . fēcērit, *if he should do this.* ⁵ sī . . . inciderint, *whatever wars occurred.* ⁶ For construction, see 303. ⁷ See 231. ⁸ See 251. ⁹ *because.*

sent patriamque virtūtem prōiēcissent; cōnfirmāre sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque ūllam condiōnem pācis acceptūrōs.

CHAPTER XVI

491. THE NERVII AWAIT THE APPROACH OF CAESAR

Cum per eōrum fīnēs trīduum iter fēcisset, inveniēbat ex captīvīs Sabim flūmen ab castrīs suis nōn amplius mīllia pas-
sum decem abesse; trāns id flūmen omnēs Nervīōs cōn-
sēdisse adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum exspectāre ūnā¹ cum
Atrebātibus et Viromanduis, fīnitimīs suis; exspectārī etiam
ab hīs Aduātucōrum cōpiās atque esse in itinere; mulierēs
quīque² per aetātem³ ad pugnam inūtilēs vidērentur in
eum locum coniēcisse quō⁴ propter palūdēs exercitū⁵
aditus nōn esset.

CHAPTER XVII

492. THE NERVII PLAN TO TAKE CAESAR BY SURPRISE

Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs explōrātōrēs centuriōnēsque praemittit
quī locum idōneum castrīs dēligant. Cum complūrēs ex
Belgīs reliquīsque Gallīs Caesarem secūtī ūnā⁶ iter face-
rent, quīdam ex hīs nocte ad Nervīōs pervēnērunt. Hīs
dēmōnstrāvērunt inter singulās⁷ legiōnēs impedimentōrum
magnum numerum intercēdere, neque esse quicquam⁸
negōtī, cum prīma legiō in castra vēnisset, hanc sub sar-
cinīs adorīrī; quā pulsā impedimentisque dīreptīs futūrum⁹
ut reliquae contrā cōsistere nōn audērent. Nervīi autem
antīquitus, quō¹⁰ facilius fīnitimōrum equitātum impedīrent,

¹ ūnā cum, along with. ² and those who. ³ Do not confuse this word with aestās, -ātis. ⁴ where. ⁵ Dative of possession, 231. ⁶ along with him. ⁷ inter singulās legiōnēs, between each two legions. ⁸ quicquam negōtī, any trouble. ⁹ futūrum ut, the result would be that. ¹⁰ quō facilius, that they might the more easily.

fēcerant saepēs¹ quae instar mūrī mūnimenta praebērent. Hīs rēbus iter agminis nostrī impedītum² īrī Nervī existimāvērunt.

CHAPTER XVIII

493. DESCRIPTION OF THE ROMAN CAMPING GROUND

Locī nātūra erat haec, quem locum nostrī castrīs dēlēgerant. Collis ab summō aequālīter dēclivis ad flūmen Sabim, quod suprā nōmināvimus, vergēbat. Ab eō flūmine parī acclivitate collis nāscēbātur, passūs circiter ducentōs infimus³ apertus, ab⁴ superiōre parte silvestris, ut nō facile intrōsus perspicī posset. Intrā eās silvās hostēs in
10 occultō sēsē continēbant; in apertō locō secundum⁵ flūmen paucae statiōnēs equitum vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitūdō circiter pedum trium.

CHAPTER XIX

494. THE NERVII CARRY OUT THEIR PLAN OF ATTACK

Caesar equitātū praemissō subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiīs. Sed quod ad hostēs appropinquābat, cōsuētūdine suā
15 Caesar sex legiōnēs expeditās dūcēbat; post eās tōtius exercitūs impedimenta conlocāverat; inde duae legiōnēs, quae proximē cōscriptae erant, tōtum agmen claudēbant praesidiōque⁶ impedimentīs erant. Equitēs nostrī, cum funditōribus sagittāriisque flūmen trāsgressī, cum hostium
20 equitātū proelium commiserunt. Cum sē illī identidem in silvās ad suōs reciperent ac rursus ex silvā in nostrōs impetum facerent, nostrī cēdentēs⁷ insequi nō audēbant.

¹ *Hedges*, made by bending down young trees and allowing brambles and briars to grow among them. ² *impeditum iri*; future passive infinitive. ³ *at the foot*. ⁴ *ab superiōre parte, in the upper part*. ⁵ *along*. ⁶ See 294, 295. ⁷ Agrees with *hostēs* understood.

Interim legiōnēs sex, quae primae vēnerant, opere¹ dīmēnsō castra mūnīre coepērunt. Ubi prima impedīmenta nostrī exercitūs ab iīs quī in silvīs abditī latēbant vīsa sunt, subitō omnibus cōpiīs prōvolāvērunt impetumque in nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt. Hīs facile pulsīs ac prōturbātīs, incredibilī celeritāte ad flūmen dēcucurrērunt, ut paene ūnō tempore et ad silvās et in flūmine et iam in manibus² nostrīs hostēs vidērentur. Eādem autem celeritāte adversō³ colle ad nostra castra atque ad eōs quī in opere occupātī erant contendērunt.

10

CHAPTER XX

495. QUICK WORK BY CAESAR. SPLENDID DISCIPLINE OF THE TROOPS

Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda⁴: vēxillum prōpōnendum, sīgnum tubā dandum, ab opere revocandī milītēs, aciēs instruenda, milītēs cohortandī, sīgnum dandum. Quārum rērum magnam partem temporis brevitas et successus hostium impediēbat. Hīs difficultātibus duae⁵ rēs erant subsidiō⁶ — scientia⁶ atque ūsus⁶ militem, quod superiōribus proeliīs exercitātī nōn minus commodē ipsī⁷ sibi praescribere quam ab aliīs docērī poterant; et quod ab opere singulisque⁸ legiōnibus singulōs⁹ lēgātōs Caesar discēdere nisi mūnītis castrīs vetuerat. Hī propter propīnquitātem et celeritātem hostium nihil¹⁰ iam Caesaris imperium exspectābant, sed per sē quae¹¹ vidēbantur administrābant.

¹ opere dīmēnsō, *after laying out the work*. Dīmēnsō from dīmētior.
² in manibus nostrīs, *close upon us*. ³ adversō colle, *up the hill*. ⁴ See 438, 439. ⁵ See 294, 295. ⁶ in apposition with rēs. ⁷ ipsī sibi praescribere . . . poterant, *they could direct themselves on their own responsibility (ipsī)*. ⁸ his (respectively). ⁹ each. ¹⁰ not . . . at all. ¹¹ quae vidēbantur, *whatever seemed best*.

APPENDIX

TABLES OF DECLENSION, CONJUGATION, ETC.

NOUNS

496. FIRST DECLENSION OR STEMS IN -ā-

	SINGULAR	CASE ENDINGS	PLURAL	CASE ENDINGS
NOM.	stella	-a	stellae	-ae
GEN.	stellae	-ae	stellārum	-ārum
DAT.	stellae	-ae	stellis	-is
ACC.	stellam	-am	stellās	-ās
ABL.	stellā	-ā	stellis	-is

497. SECOND DECLENSION OR STEMS IN -o-

SINGULAR				
	MASC.	CASE ENDINGS	NEUT.	CASE ENDINGS
NOM.	hortus	-us	dōnum	-um
GEN.	hortī	-ī	dōnī	-ī
DAT.	hortō	-ō	dōnō	-ō
ACC.	hortum	-um	dōnum	-um
ABL.	hortō	-ō	dōnō	-ō
PLURAL				
NOM.	hortī	-ī	dōna	-a
GEN.	hortōrum	-ōrum	dōnōrum	-ōrum
DAT.	hortīs	-īs	dōnīs	-īs
ACC.	hortōs	-ōs	dōna	-a
ABL.	hortīs	-īs	dōnīs	-īs

a. The vocative singular of nouns in **-us** of the second declension has a special form in **-e**: **horte**.

SINGULAR

NOM.	puer	ager	vir	filius
GEN.	puerī	agrī	virī	filī, -ī
DAT.	puerō	agrō	virō	filīō
ACC.	puerum	agrum	virum	filium
ABL.	puerō	agrō	virō	filīō

PLURAL

NOM.	puerī	agrī	virī	filī
GEN.	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	filīorum
DAT.	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	filīs
ACC.	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	filīos
ABL.	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	filīs

a. The vocative singular of **filius** is **filī**.

498.

THIRD DECLENSION

a. CONSONANT STEMS

SINGULAR

CASE ENDINGS FOR
CONSONANT STEMS
M. AND F. N.

NOM.	dux	miles	virtūs	caput	(-s)	
GEN.	ducis	militis	virtūtis	capitis	-is	-is
DAT.	ducī	militī	virtūtī	capitī	-ī	-ī
ACC.	ducem	militem	virtūtem	caput	-em	
ABL.	duce	militē	virtūte	capite	-e	-e

PLURAL

NOM.	ducēs	militēs	virtūtēs	capita	-ēs	-a
GEN.	ducum	militum	virtutum	capitum	-um	-um
DAT.	ducibus	militibus	virtutibus	capitibus	-ibus	-ibus
ACC.	ducēs	militēs	virtūtēs	capita	-ēs	-a
ABL.	ducibus	militibus	virtutibus	capitibus	-ibus	-ibus

SINGULAR				
NOM.	cōnsul	homō	pater	corpus
GEN.	cōnsulis	hominis	patris	corporis
DAT.	cōnsulī	hominī	patrī	corporī
ACC.	cōnsulem	hominem	patrem	corpus
ABL.	cōnsule	homine	patre	corpore
PLURAL				
NOM.	cōsulēs	hominēs	patrēs	corpora
GEN.	cōnsulum	hominum	patrum	corporum
DAT.	cōsulibus	hominibus	patribus	corporibus
ACC.	cōsulēs	hominēs	patrēs	corpora
ABL.	cōsulibus	hominibus	patribus	corporibus

b. -I- STEMS					CASE ENDINGS FOR -i- STEMS	
SINGULAR					M. AND F. N.	
NOM.	collis	caedēs	mōns	animal	(-s)	
GEN.	collis	caedis	montis	animālis	-is	-is
DAT.	collī	caedi	montī	animālī	-ī	-ī
ACC.	collem	caedem	montem	animal	-em	
ABL.	colle	caede	monte	animālī	-e	-ī
PLURAL						
NOM.	collēs	caedēs	montēs	animālia	-ēs	-ia
GEN.	collium	caedium	montium	animālium	-ium	-ium
DAT.	collibus	caedibus	montibus	animālibus	-ibus	-ibus
ACC.	collis, ēs	caedis, ēs	montis, ēs	animālia	-īs, ēs	-ia
ABL.	collibus	caedibus	montibus	animālibus	-ibus	-ibus

499. **FOURTH DECLENSION OR STEMS IN -u-**

SINGULAR				
	MASC.	CASE ENDINGS	NEUT. -	CASE ENDINGS
NOM.	cāsus	-us	cornū	-ū
GEN.	cāsūs	-ūs	cornūs	-ūs
DAT.	cāsuī, ū	-uī, ū	cornū	-ū
ACC.	cāsum	-um	cornū	-ū
ABL.	cāsū	-ū	cornū	-ū

	MASC.	PLURAL CASE ENDINGS	NEUT.	CASE ENDINGS
NOM.	cāsūs	-ūs	cornua	-ua
GEN.	cāsuum	-uum	cornuum	-uum
DAT.	cāsibus	-ibus	cornibus	-ibus
ACC.	cāsūs	-ūs	cornua	-ua
ABL.	cāsibus	-ibus	cornibus	-ibus

500. FIFTH DECLENSION OR STEMS IN -ē-

	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	CASE ENDINGS	
					SING.	PLUR.
NOM.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs	-ēs	-ēs
GEN.	diēi	diērum	rei	rērum	-ēi	-ērum
DAT.	diēi	diēbus	rei	rēbus	-ēi	-ēbus
ACC.	diem	diēs	rem	rēs	-em	-ēs
ABL.	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus	-ē	-ēbus

501. SPECIAL PARADIGMS

SINGULAR			
NOM.	vir	vīs	deus
GEN.	virī	—	dei
DAT.	virō	—	deō
ACC.	virum	vīm	deum
ABL.	virō	vī	deō
PLURAL			
NOM.	virī	vīrēs	dei, dii, di
GEN.	virōrum	vīrium	deōrum, deum
DAT.	virīs	vīribus	deīs, diīs, diīs
ACC.	virōs	vīrēs	deōs
ABL.	virīs	vīribus	deīs, diīs, diīs
SINGULAR			
NOM.	senex	iter	domus
GEN.	senis	itineris	domūs
DAT.	senī	itinerī	domuī, ō
ACC.	senem	iter	domum
ABL.	sene	itinere	domō, ū

		PLURAL	
NOM.	senēs	itinerā	domūs
GEN.	senum	itinerum	domuum, ōrum
DAT.	senibus	itineribus	domibus
ACC.	senēs	itinerā	domōs, ūs
ABL.	senibus	itineribus	domibus

ADJECTIVES

502.

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

		SINGULAR	
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	bonus	bona	bonum
GEN.	bonī	bonae	bonī
DAT.	bonō	bonae	bonō
ACC.	bonum	bonam	bonum
ABL.	bonō	bonā	bonō
		PLURAL	
NOM.	bonī	bonae	bona
GEN.	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
DAT.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
ACC.	bonōs	bonās	bona
ABL.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
		SINGULAR	
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	līber	lībera	līberum
GEN.	līberī	līberae	līberī
DAT.	līberō	līberae	līberō
ACC.	līberum	līberam	līberum
ABL.	līberō	līberā	līberō
		PLURAL	
NOM.	līberī	līberae	lībera
GEN.	līberōrum	līberārum	līberōrum
DAT.	līberīs	līberīs	līberīs
ACC.	līberōs	līberās	lībera
ABL.	līberīs	līberīs	līberīs

SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	niger	nigra	nigrum
GEN.	nigrī	nigrae	nigrī
DAT.	nigrō	nigrae	nigrō
ACC.	nigrum	nigram	nigrum
ABL.	nigrō	nigrā	nigrō

PLURAL

NOM.	nigrī	nigrae	nigra
GEN.	nigrōrum	nigrārum	nigrōrum
DAT.	nigrīs	nigrīs	nigrīs
ACC.	nigrōs	nigrās	nigra
ABL.	nigrīs	nigrīs	nigrīs

503.

THIRD DECLENSION .

SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	ācer	ācris	ācre
GEN.	ācris	ācris	ācris
DAT.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
ACC.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre
ABL.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī

PLURAL

NOM.	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
GEN.	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
DAT.	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
ACC.	ācrīs, ēs	ācrīs, ēs	ācria
ABL.	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

SINGULAR

	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	facilis	facile	ferāx	ferāx
GEN.	facilis	facilis	ferācis	ferācis
DAT.	facilī	facilī	ferācī	ferācī
ACC.	facilem	facile	ferācem	ferāx
ABL.	facilī	facilī	ferācī, e	ferācī, e

	PLURAL			
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	facilēs	facilia	ferācēs	ferācia
GEN.	facilium	facilium	ferācium	ferācium
DAT.	facilibus	facilibus	ferācibus	ferācibus
ACC.	facilīs, ēs	facilia	ferācīs, ēs	ferācia
ABL.	facilibus	facilibus	ferācibus	ferācibus

504.

PRESENT ACTIVE PARTICIPLES

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	amāns	amāns	amantēs	amantia
GEN.	amantis	amantis	amantium	amantium
DAT.	amantī	amantī	amantibus	amantibus
ACC.	amantem	amāns	amantīs, ēs	amantia
ABL.	amante, ī	amānte, ī	amantibus	amantibus
NOM.	iēns	iēns	euntēs	euntia
GEN.	euntis	euntis	euntium	euntium
DAT.	euntī	euntī	euntibus	euntibus
ACC.	euntem	iēns	euntīs, ēs	euntia
ABL.	eunte, ī	eunte, ī	euntibus	euntibus

505.

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	alius	alia	aliud	aliī	aliae	alia
GEN.	aliūs	aliūs	aliūs	aliōrum	aliārum	aliōrum
DAT.	aliī	aliī	aliī	aliīs	aliīs	aliīs
ACC.	alium	aliam	aliud	aliōs	aliās	alia
ABL.	aliō	aliā	aliō	aliīs	aliīs	aliīs
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	
NOM.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	trēs	tria	
GEN.	ūnius	ūnius	ūnius	trium	trium	
DAT.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	tribus	tribus	
ACC.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	trīs, trēs	tria	
ABL.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	tribus	tribus	

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES (*Continued*)

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	SING.	PLUR.
NOM.	duo	duae	duo	mille	mīllia
GEN.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	mille	mīllium
DAT.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	mille	mīllibus
ACC.	duōs, duo	duās	duo	mille	mīllia
ABL.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	mille	mīllibus

506. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
lātus (lāt-)	lātiōr, lātiūs	lātissimus, a, um
fortis (fort-)	fortiōr, fortiūs	fortissimus, a, um
vēlōx (vēlōc-)	vēlōciōr, vēlōciūs	vēlōcissimus, a, um
pulcher (pulchr-)	pulchriōr, pulchriūs	pulcherrimus, a, um
similis (simil-)	similiōr, similiūs	simillimus, a, um

507. • DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. AND F.	N.	M. AND F.	N.
NOM.	lātiōr	lātiūs	lātiōrēs	lātiōra
GEN.	lātiōris	lātiōris	lātiōrum	lātiōrum
DAT.	lātiōrī	lātiōrī	lātiōribus	lātiōribus
ACC.	lātiōrem	lātiūs	lātiōrēs, īs	lātiōra
ABL.	lātiōre, ī	lātiōre, ī	lātiōribus	lātiōribus
NOM.	—	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
GEN.	—	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
DAT.	—	—	plūribus	plūribus
ACC.	—	plūs	plūrēs, īs	plūra
ABL.	—	—	plūribus	plūribus

508.

IRREGULAR COMPARISON

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bonus, a, um	melior, melius	optimus, a, um
malus, a, um	peior, peius	pessimus, a, um
magnus, a, um	maior, maius	maximus, a, um
parvus, a, um	minor, minus	minimus, a, um
multus, a, um	—, plūs	plūrimus, a, um
multī, ae, a	plūrēs, plūra	plūrimī, ae, a
vetus, veteris	vetustior, vetustius	veterrimus, a, um
senex, senis	senior (maior nātū)	maximus nātū
iuvenis, e	iūnior (minor nātū)	minimus nātū
exterus	exterior	extrēmus, extimus
īferus	īferior	īfimus, īmus
posterus	posterior	postrēmus
		postumus
superus	superior	suprēmus
(Lacking positive supplied by adverb or preposition)		summus

POSITIVE

COMPARATIVE

SUPERLATIVE

[cis, citrā, <i>this side</i>]	citerior	cītimus
[in, intrā, <i>within</i>]	interior	ītimus
[prae, prō, <i>before</i>]	prior	prīmus
[prope, <i>near</i>]	propior	proximus
[ultrā, <i>beyond</i>]	ulterior	ultimus

509.

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

POSITIVE

COMPARATIVE

SUPERLATIVE

cārē (carus)	cārius	cārissimē
pulchrē (pulcher)	pulchrius	pulcherrimē
fortiter (fōrtis)	fortius	fortissimē
facile (facilis)	facilius	facillimē
bene (bonus)	melius	optimē
male (malus)	peius	pessimē

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS (*Continued*)

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
multum (multus)	plūs	plūrimum
parum, <i>little</i>	minus	minimē
diū, <i>long, for a long time</i>	diūtius	diūtissimē
saepe, <i>often</i>	saepius	saepissimē

510.

CARDINALS	NUMERALS	ORDINALS
1. ūnus, a, um		prīmus, a, um
2. duo, duae, duo		secundus (<i>or</i> alter)
3. trēs, tria		tertius
4. quattuor		quārtus
5. quīnque		quīntus
6. sex		sextus
7. septem		septimus
8. octō		octāvus
9. novem		nōnus
10. decem		decimus
11. ūndecim		ūndecimus
12. duodecim		duodecimus
13. tredecim		tertius decimus
14. quattuordecim		quartus decimus
15. quīndecim		quīntus decimus
16. sēdecim		sextus decimus
17. septendecim		septimus decimus
18. duodēvīgintī		duodēvīcēsīmus
19. ūndēvīgintī		ūndēvīcēsīmus
20. vīgintī		vīcēsīmus
21. { vīgintī ūnus <i>or</i> ūnus et vīgintī		{ vīcēsīmus prīmus <i>or</i> ūnus et vīcēsīmus
22. { vīgintī duo <i>or</i> duo et vīgintī		{ vīcēsīmus secundus <i>or</i> alter et vīcēsīmus

CARDINALS		ORDINALS
28.	duodētrīgintā	duodētrīcēsīmus
29.	ūndētrīgintā	ūndētrīcēsīmus
30.	trīgintā	trīcēsīmus
40.	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsīmus
50.	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsīmus
60.	sexāgintā	sexāgēsīmus
70.	septuāgintā	septuāgēsīmus
80.	octōgintā	octōgēsīmus
90.	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsīmus
100.	centum	centēsīmus
101.	{ centum ūnus <i>or</i> centum et ūnus	{ centēsīmus prīmus <i>or</i> centēsīmus et prīmus
200.	ducentī, ae, a	ducentēsīmus
300.	trecentī	trecentēsīmus
400.	quadrīngentī	quadrīngentēsīmus
500.	quīngentī	quīngentēsīmus
600.	sescentī	sēscentēsīmus
700.	septīngentī	septīngentēsīmus
800.	octīngentī	octīngentēsīmus
900.	nōngentī	nōngentēsīmus
1,000.	mīlle	mīllēsīmus
2,000.	duo mīllia	bis mīllēsīmus
100,000.	centum mīllia	centiēs mīllēsīmus

PRONOUNS

511. PERSONAL (AND REFLEXIVE)

REFLEXIVE (3D PERS.)

	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
NOM.	ego	nōs	tū	vōs	—	—
GEN.	meī	{ nostrum, nostrī	tuī	{ vestrum, vestrī	suī	suī
DAT.	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs	sibi	sibi
ACC.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs	sē (sēsē)	sē (sēsē)
ABL.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs	sē (sēsē)	sē (sēsē)

512.

DEMONSTRATIVE

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
NOM.	hīc	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
GEN.	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
DAT.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
ACC.	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
ABL.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
NOM.	iste	ista	istud	istī	istae	ista
GEN.	istīus	istīus	istīus	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
DAT.	istī	istī	istī	istīs	istīs	istīs
ACC.	istum	istam	istud	istōs	istās	ista
ABL.	istō	istā	istō	istīs	istīs	istīs

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
NOM.	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
GEN.	illīus	illīus	illīus	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
DAT.	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
ACC.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
ABL.	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
NOM.	is	ea	id	eī, iī	eae	ea
GEN.	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
DAT.	eī	eī	eī	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
ACC.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
ABL.	eō	eā	eō	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
NOM. <i>īdem</i>	<i>eādem</i>	<i>īdem</i>		{ <i>eīdem</i> <i>īdem</i>	<i>eaedem</i>	<i>eādem</i>
GEN. <i>eiusdem</i>	<i>eiusdem</i>	<i>eiusdem</i>		{ <i>eōrun-</i> <i>dem</i>	<i>eārun-</i> <i>dem</i>	<i>eōrun-</i> <i>dem</i>
DAT. <i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>		{ <i>eīsdem</i> <i>īsdem</i>	<i>eīsdem</i>	<i>eīsdem</i> <i>īsdem</i>
ACC. <i>eundem</i>	<i>eandem</i>	<i>īdem</i>		<i>eōsdem</i>	<i>eāsdem</i>	<i>eādem</i>
ABL. <i>eōdem</i>	<i>eādem</i>	<i>eōdem</i>		{ <i>eīsdem</i> <i>īsdem</i>	<i>eīsdem</i>	<i>eīsdem</i> <i>īsdem</i>

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
NOM. <i>ipse</i>	<i>ipsa</i>	<i>ipsum</i>		<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsae</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
GEN. <i>ipsīus</i>	<i>ipsīus</i>	<i>ipsīus</i>		<i>ipsōrum</i>	<i>ipsārum</i>	<i>ipsōrum</i>
DAT. <i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsī</i>		<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>
ACC. <i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsam</i>	<i>ipsum</i>		<i>ipsōs</i>	<i>ipsās</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
ABL. <i>ipsō</i>	<i>ipsā</i>	<i>ipsō</i>		<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>

513.

RELATIVE

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM. <i>quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quod</i>		<i>quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quae</i>
GEN. <i>cuius</i>	<i>cuius</i>	<i>cuius</i>		<i>quōrum</i>	<i>quārum</i>	<i>quōrum</i>
DAT. <i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>		<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>
ACC. <i>quem</i>	<i>quam</i>	<i>quod</i>		<i>quōs</i>	<i>quās</i>	<i>quae</i>
ABL. <i>quō</i>	<i>quā</i>	<i>quō</i>		<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>

514.

INTERROGATIVE

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM. <i>quis (quī)</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quid (quod)</i>		<i>quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quae</i>
GEN. <i>cuius</i>	<i>cuius</i>	<i>cuius</i>		<i>quōrum</i>	<i>quārum</i>	<i>quōrum</i>
DAT. <i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>		<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>
ACC. <i>quem</i>	<i>quam</i>	<i>quid (quod)</i>		<i>quōs</i>	<i>quās</i>	<i>quae</i>
ABL. <i>quō</i>	<i>quā</i>	<i>quō</i>		<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>

515.

INDEFINITE

SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	aliquis, aliquī	aliqua	aliquid, aliquod
GEN.	alicuius	alicuius	alicuius
DAT.	alicui	alicui	alicui
ACC.	aliquem	aliquam	aliquid, aliquod
ABL.	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō

PLURAL

NOM.	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
GEN.	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
DAT.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
ACC.	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
ABL.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	quīdam	quaedam	quiddam, quoddam
GEN.	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	cuiusdam
DAT.	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam
ACC.	quendam	quandam	quiddam, quoddam
ABL.	quōdam	quādam	quōdam

PLURAL

NOM.	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
GEN.	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
DAT.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
ACC.	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
ABL.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

REGULAR VERBS

516. FIRST CONJUGATION. VERBS IN *ā*PRIN. PARTS: *amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus* — *love*

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
<i>I love, am loving, do love</i>		<i>I am loved, am being loved</i>	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>amō</i>	<i>amāmus</i>	<i>amor</i>	<i>amāmur</i>
<i>amās</i>	<i>amātis</i>	<i>amāris, re</i>	<i>amāmini</i>
<i>amat</i>	<i>amant</i>	<i>amātur</i>	<i>amantur</i>
<i>I was loving, loved, did love</i>		<i>IMPERFECT I was loved, was being loved</i>	
<i>amābam</i>	<i>amābāmus</i>	<i>amābar</i>	<i>amābāmur</i>
<i>amābās</i>	<i>amābātis</i>	<i>amābāris, re</i>	<i>amābāmini</i>
<i>amābat</i>	<i>amābant</i>	<i>amābātur</i>	<i>amābantur</i>
<i>I shall love</i>		<i>FUTURE I shall be loved</i>	
<i>amābō</i>	<i>amābimus</i>	<i>amābor</i>	<i>amābimur</i>
<i>amābis</i>	<i>amābitis</i>	<i>amāberis, re</i>	<i>amābimini</i>
<i>amābit</i>	<i>amābunt</i>	<i>amābitur</i>	<i>amābuntur</i>
<i>I have loved, loved</i>		<i>PERFECT I have been loved, was loved</i>	
<i>amāvī</i>	<i>amāvimus</i>	<i>amātus sum</i>	<i>amātī, sumus</i>
<i>amāvistī</i>	<i>amāvistis</i>	<i>(a, um) es</i>	<i>(ae, a) estis</i>
<i>amāvit</i>	<i>amāvērunt</i>	<i>est</i>	<i>sunt</i>
<i>I had loved</i>		<i>PLUPERFECT I had been loved</i>	
<i>amāveram</i>	<i>amāverāmus</i>	<i>amātus eram</i>	<i>amātī erāmus</i>
<i>amāverās</i>	<i>amāverātis</i>	<i>(a, um) erās</i>	<i>(ae, a) erātis</i>
<i>amāverat</i>	<i>amāverant</i>	<i>erat</i>	<i>erant</i>
<i>I shall have loved</i>		<i>FUTURE PERFECT I shall have been loved</i>	
<i>amāverō</i>	<i>amāverimus</i>	<i>amātus erō</i>	<i>amātī erimus</i>
<i>amāveris</i>	<i>amāveritis</i>	<i>(a, um) eris</i>	<i>(ae, a) eritis</i>
<i>amāverit</i>	<i>amāverint</i>	<i>erit</i>	<i>erunt</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

<i>amem</i>	<i>amēmus</i>	<i>amer</i>	<i>amēmur</i>
<i>amēs</i>	<i>amētis</i>	<i>amēris, re</i>	<i>amēmini</i>
<i>amet</i>	<i>ament</i>	<i>amētur</i>	<i>amentur</i>

ACTIVE

IMPERFECT

PASSIVE

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
amārem	amārēmus	amārer	amārēmur
amārēs	amārētis	amārēris, re	amārēmini
amāret	amārent	amārētur	amārentur

PERFECT

amāverim	amāverīmus	amātus sim	amātī sīmus
amāveris	amāverītis	(a, um) sis	(ae, a) sītis
amāverit	amāverint	sit	sint

PLUPERFECT

amāvissem	amāvissēmus	amātus essem	amātī essēmus
amāvissēs	amāvissētis	(a, um) essēs	(ae, a) essētis
amāvisset	amāvissent	esset	essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

2. amā, <i>love thou</i>	2. amāte, <i>love ye</i>	2. amāre, <i>be thou loved</i>	2. amāmini, <i>be ye loved</i>
--------------------------	--------------------------	--------------------------------	--------------------------------

FUTURE

2. amātō, <i>thou shalt love</i>	2. amātōte, <i>you shall love</i>	2. amātor, <i>thou shalt be loved</i>	2. ———
3. amātō, <i>he shall love</i>	3. amantō, <i>they shall love</i>	3. amātor, <i>he shall be loved</i>	3. amantor, <i>they shall be loved</i>

INFINITIVE

amāre, <i>to love</i>	PRESENT	amārī, <i>to be loved</i>
amātūrus (a, um) esse, <i>to be about to love</i>	FUTURE	amātum irī, <i>to be about to be loved</i>
amāvisse, <i>to have loved</i>	PERFECT	amātus (a, um) esse, <i>to have been loved</i>

PARTICIPLES

amāns, <i>antis, loving</i>	PRESENT	—————
amātūrus, a, um, <i>about to love</i>	FUTURE	GER. amandus, a, um, <i>to be loved</i>
—————	PERFECT	amātus, a, um, <i>having been loved, loved</i>

GERUND

GEN. amandī, <i>of loving</i>	ACC. amandum, <i>loving</i>
DAT. amandō, <i>for loving</i>	ABL. amandō, <i>by loving</i>

SUPINE

amātum

amātū

517. SECOND CONJUGATION. VERBS IN *ē*PRIN. PARTS: *moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus* — *advise*

ACTIVE		INDICATIVE		PASSIVE	
		PRESENT			
<i>I advise, am advising, do advise</i>		<i>I am advised, am being advised</i>			
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>	
<i>moneō</i>	<i>monēmus</i>	<i>moneor</i>		<i>monēmur</i>	
<i>monēs</i>	<i>monētis</i>	<i>monēris, re</i>		<i>monēminī</i>	
<i>monet</i>	<i>monent</i>	<i>monētur</i>		<i>monentur</i>	
<i>I was advising, advised, did advise</i>		IMPERFECT		<i>I was advised, was being advised</i>	
<i>monēbam</i>	<i>monēbāmus</i>	<i>monēbar</i>		<i>monēbāmur</i>	
<i>monēbās</i>	<i>monēbātis</i>	<i>monēbāris, re</i>		<i>monēbāminī</i>	
<i>monēbat</i>	<i>monēbant</i>	<i>monēbātur</i>		<i>monēbantur</i>	
<i>I shall advise</i>		FUTURE		<i>I shall be advised</i>	
<i>monēbō</i>	<i>monēbimus</i>	<i>monēbor</i>		<i>monēbimur</i>	
<i>monēbis</i>	<i>monēbitis</i>	<i>monēberis, re</i>		<i>monēbiminī</i>	
<i>monēbit</i>	<i>monēbunt</i>	<i>monēbitur</i>		<i>monēbuntur</i>	
<i>I have advised, advised</i>		PERFECT		<i>I have been advised, I was advised</i>	
<i>monuī</i>	<i>monuimus</i>	<i>monitus sum</i>		<i>monitī sumus</i>	
<i>monuistī</i>	<i>monuistis</i>	(<i>a, um</i>) <i>es</i>		(<i>ae, a</i>) <i>estis</i>	
<i>monuit</i>	<i>monuērunt</i>	<i>est</i>		<i>sunt</i>	
<i>I had advised</i>		PLUPERFECT		<i>I had been advised</i>	
<i>monueram</i>	<i>monuerāmus</i>	<i>monitus eram</i>		<i>monitī erāmus</i>	
<i>monuerās</i>	<i>monuerātis</i>	(<i>a, um</i>) <i>erās</i>		(<i>ae, a</i>) <i>erātis</i>	
<i>monuerat</i>	<i>monuerant</i>	<i>erat</i>		<i>erant</i>	
<i>I shall have advised</i>		FUTURE PERFECT		<i>I shall have been advised</i>	
<i>monuerō</i>	<i>monuerimus</i>	<i>monitus erō</i>		<i>monitī erimus</i>	
<i>monueris</i>	<i>monueritis</i>	(<i>a, um</i>) <i>eris</i>		(<i>ae, a</i>) <i>eritis</i>	
<i>monuerit</i>	<i>monuerint</i>	<i>erit</i>		<i>erunt</i>	
SUBJUNCTIVE					
PRESENT					
<i>moneam</i>	<i>moneāmus</i>	<i>monear</i>		<i>moneāmur</i>	
<i>moneās</i>	<i>moneātis</i>	<i>moneāris, re</i>		<i>moneāminī</i>	
<i>moneat</i>	<i>moneant</i>	<i>moneātur</i>		<i>moneantur</i>	

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
		IMPERFECT	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
monērem	monērēmus	monērer	monērēmur
monērēs	monērētis	monērēris, re	monērēmini
monēret	monērent	monērētur	monērentur
		PERFECT	
monuerim	monuerīmus	monitus sim	monitī sīmus
monueris	monuerītis	(a, um) sīs	(ae, a) sitis
monuerit	monuerint	sit	sint
		PLUPERFECT	
monuissem	monuissēmus	monitus essem	monitī essēmus
monuissēs	monuissētis	(a, um) essēs	(ae, a) essētis
monuisset	monuissent	esset	essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

2. monē, <i>ad-</i> <i>vise thou</i>	2. monēte, <i>ad-</i> <i>vise ye</i>	2. monēre, <i>be</i> <i>thou advised</i>	2. monēmini, <i>be ye advised</i>
---	---	---	--------------------------------------

FUTURE

2. monētō, <i>thou</i> <i>shalt advise</i>	2. monētōte, <i>you</i> <i>shall advise</i>	2. & 3. monētor, <i>thou shalt (he</i> <i>shall) be ad-</i> <i>vised</i>	2. ——— 3. monentor, <i>they shall be</i> <i>advised</i>
---	--	---	--

INFINITIVE

monēre, <i>to advise</i>	PRESENT	monērī, <i>to be advised</i>
monitūrus (a, um) esse, <i>to be</i> <i>about to advise</i>	FUTURE	monitum irī, <i>to be about to be</i> <i>advised</i>
monuisse, <i>to have advised</i>	PERFECT	monitus (a, um) esse, <i>to have</i> <i>been advised</i>

PARTICIPLES

monēns, entis, <i>advising</i>	PRESENT	—————
monitūrus, a, um, <i>about to</i> <i>advise</i>	FUTURE	GER. monendus, a, um, <i>to</i> <i>be advised</i>
—————	PERFECT	monitus, a, um, <i>having been</i> <i>advised, advised</i>

GERUND

GEN. monendī, <i>of advising</i>	ACC. monendum, <i>advising</i>
DAT monendō, <i>for advising</i>	ABL. monendō, <i>by advising</i>

SUPINE

monitum

monitū

518. THIRD CONJUGATION. VERBS IN *e*PRIN. PARTS: *dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus* — *lead*

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
<i>I lead, am leading, do lead</i>		PRESENT <i>I am led, am being led</i>	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>dūcō</i>	<i>dūcimus</i>	<i>dūcor</i>	<i>dūcimur</i>
<i>dūcis</i>	<i>dūcitis</i>	<i>dūceris, re</i>	<i>dūcimini</i>
<i>dūcit</i>	<i>dūcunt</i>	<i>dūcitur</i>	<i>dūcuntur</i>
<i>I was leading, led, did lead</i>		IMPERFECT <i>I was led, was being led</i>	
<i>dūcēbam</i>	<i>dūcēbāmus</i>	<i>dūcēbar</i>	<i>dūcēbāmur</i>
<i>dūcēbās</i>	<i>dūcēbātis</i>	<i>dūcēbāris, re</i>	<i>dūcēbāmini</i>
<i>dūcēbat</i>	<i>dūcēbant</i>	<i>dūcēbātur</i>	<i>dūcēbantur</i>
<i>I shall lead</i>		FUTURE <i>I shall be led</i>	
<i>dūcam</i>	<i>dūcēmus</i>	<i>dūcar</i>	<i>dūcēmur</i>
<i>dūcēs</i>	<i>dūcētis</i>	<i>dūceris, re</i>	<i>dūcēmini</i>
<i>dūcet</i>	<i>dūcent</i>	<i>dūcētur</i>	<i>dūcentur</i>
<i>I have led, led</i>		PERFECT <i>I have been led, was led</i>	
<i>dūxī</i>	<i>dūximus</i>	<i>ductus sum</i>	<i>ductī sumus</i>
<i>dūxistī</i>	<i>dūxistis</i>	<i>(a, um) es</i>	<i>(ae, a) estis</i>
<i>dūxit</i>	<i>dūxērunt</i>	<i>est</i>	<i>sunt</i>
<i>I had led</i>		PLUPERFECT <i>I had been led</i>	
<i>dūxeram</i>	<i>dūxerāmus</i>	<i>ductus eram</i>	<i>ductī erāmus</i>
<i>dūxerās</i>	<i>dūxerātis</i>	<i>(a, um) erās</i>	<i>(ae, a) erātis</i>
<i>dūxerat</i>	<i>dūxerant</i>	<i>erat</i>	<i>erant</i>
<i>I shall have led</i>		FUTURE PERFECT <i>I shall have been led</i>	
<i>dūxerō</i>	<i>dūxerimus</i>	<i>ductus erō</i>	<i>ductī erimus</i>
<i>dūxeris</i>	<i>dūxeritis</i>	<i>(a, um) eris</i>	<i>(ae, a) eritis</i>
<i>dūxerit</i>	<i>dūxerint</i>	<i>erit</i>	<i>erunt</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT			
<i>dūcam</i>	<i>dūcāmus</i>	<i>dūcar</i>	<i>dūcāmur</i>
<i>dūcās</i>	<i>dūcātis</i>	<i>dūcāris, re</i>	<i>dūcāmini</i>
<i>dūcat</i>	<i>dūcant</i>	<i>dūcātur</i>	<i>dūcantur</i>
IMPERFECT			
<i>dūcerem</i>	<i>dūcerēmus</i>	<i>dūcerer</i>	<i>dūcerēmur</i>
<i>dūcerēs</i>	<i>dūcerētis</i>	<i>dūcerēris, re</i>	<i>dūcerēmini</i>
<i>dūceret</i>	<i>dūcerent</i>	<i>dūcerētur</i>	<i>dūcerentur</i>

ACTIVE

PERFECT

PASSIVE

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
dūxerim	dūxerimus	ductus sim	ductī sīmus
dūxeris	dūxeritis	(a, um) sīs	(ae, a) sītis
dūxerit	dūxerint	sit	sint
PLUPERFECT			
dūxissem	dūxissēmus	ductus essem	ductī essēmus
dūxissēs	dūxissētis	(a, um) essēs	(ae, a) essētis
dūxisset	dūxissent	esset	essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

2. dūc, ¹ <i>lead</i> <i>thou</i>	2. dūcite, <i>lead</i> <i>ye</i>	2. dūcere, <i>be</i> <i>thou led</i>	2. dūciminī, <i>be ye led</i>
---	-------------------------------------	---	----------------------------------

FUTURE

2. dūcitō, <i>thou</i> <i>shalt lead</i>	2. dūcitōte, <i>ye</i> <i>shall lead</i>	2. dūcitor, <i>thou</i> <i>shalt be led</i>	2. ———
3. dūcitō, <i>he</i> <i>shall lead</i>	3. dūcuntō, <i>they</i> <i>shall lead</i>	3. dūcitor, <i>he</i> <i>shall be led</i>	3. dūcuntor, <i>they</i> <i>shall be led</i>

INFINITIVE

dūcere, <i>to lead</i>	PRESENT	dūcī, <i>to be led</i>
ductūrus (a, um) esse, <i>to be</i> <i>about to lead</i>	FUTURE	ductum irī, <i>to be about to be</i> <i>led</i>
dūxisse, <i>to have led</i>	PERFECT	ductus (a, um) esse, <i>to have</i> <i>been led</i>

PARTICIPLES

dūcēns, entis, <i>leading</i>	PRESENT	—————
ductūrus, a, um, <i>about to lead</i>	FUTURE	GER. dūcendus, a, um, <i>to be</i> <i>led</i>
—————	PERFECT	ductus, <i>having been led, led</i>

GERUND

GEN. dūcendī, <i>of leading</i>	ACC. dūcendum, <i>leading</i>
DAT. dūcendō, <i>for leading</i>	ABL. dūcendō, <i>by leading</i>

SUPINE

ductum

ductū

¹ dīcō, dūcō, faciō, ferō, have as present imperatives dīc, dūc, fac, fer; the regular form of other verbs ends in -e, as gerō, imperative gere.

519. FOURTH CONJUGATION. VERBS IN *i*PRIN. PARTS: *audiō, ire, audivī, auditus* — *hear*

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
<i>I hear, am hearing, do hear</i>		PRESENT	<i>I am heard, am being heard</i>
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>audiō</i>	<i>audīmus</i>	<i>audior</i>	<i>audīmur</i>
<i>audis</i>	<i>audītis</i>	<i>audiris, re</i>	<i>audīminī</i>
<i>audit</i>	<i>audiunt</i>	<i>audītur</i>	<i>audiuntur</i>
<i>I was hearing, heard, did hear</i>		IMPERFECT	<i>I was heard, was being heard</i>
<i>audiēbam</i>	<i>audiēbāmus</i>	<i>audiēbar</i>	<i>audiēbāmur</i>
<i>audiēbās</i>	<i>audiēbātis</i>	<i>audiēbāris, re</i>	<i>audiēbāminī</i>
<i>audiēbat</i>	<i>audiēbant</i>	<i>audiēbātur</i>	<i>audiēbantur</i>
<i>I shall hear</i>		FUTURE	<i>I shall be heard</i>
<i>audiam</i>	<i>audiēmus</i>	<i>audiar</i>	<i>audiēmur</i>
<i>audiēs</i>	<i>audiētis</i>	<i>audiēris, re</i>	<i>audiēminī</i>
<i>audiet</i>	<i>audient</i>	<i>audiētur</i>	<i>audientur</i>
<i>I have heard, heard</i>		PERFECT	<i>I have been heard, I was heard</i>
<i>audivī</i>	<i>audivimus</i>	<i>audītus sum</i>	<i>audītī sumus</i>
<i>audivistī</i>	<i>audivistis</i>	<i>(a, um) es</i>	<i>(ae, a) estis</i>
<i>audivit</i>	<i>audivērunt</i>	<i>est</i>	<i>sunt</i>
<i>I had heard</i>		PLUPERFECT	<i>I had been heard</i>
<i>audiveram</i>	<i>audiverāmus</i>	<i>audītus eram</i>	<i>audītī erāmus</i>
<i>audiverās</i>	<i>audiverātis</i>	<i>(a, um) erās</i>	<i>(ae, a) erātis</i>
<i>audiverat</i>	<i>audiverant</i>	<i>erat</i>	<i>erant</i>
<i>I shall have heard</i>		FUTURE PERFECT	<i>I shall have been heard</i>
<i>audiverō</i>	<i>audiverimus</i>	<i>audītus erō</i>	<i>audītī erimus</i>
<i>audiveris</i>	<i>audiveritis</i>	<i>(a, um) eris</i>	<i>(ae, a) eritis</i>
<i>audiverit</i>	<i>audiverint</i>	<i>erit</i>	<i>erunt</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

<i>audiam</i>	<i>audiāmus</i>	<i>audiar</i>	<i>audiāmur</i>
<i>audiās</i>	<i>audiātis</i>	<i>audiāris, re</i>	<i>audiāminī</i>
<i>audiat</i>	<i>audiant</i>	<i>audiātur</i>	<i>audiantur</i>

ACTIVE

IMPERFECT

PASSIVE

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
audīrem	audīrēmus	audīrer	audīrēmur
audīrēs	audīrētis	audīrēris, re	audīrēminī
audiret	audirent	audirētur	audirentur

PERFECT

audīverim	audīverīmus	audītus sim	audītī simus
audiveris	audiveritis	(a, um) sīs	(ae, a) sitis
audiverit	audiverint	sit	sint

PLUPERFECT

audīvissem	audīvissemus	audītus essem	audītī essemus
audivissēs	audivissētis	(a, um) essēs	(ae, a) essētis
audivisset	audivissent	esset	essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

2. audī, <i>hear thou</i>	2. audīte, <i>hear ye</i>	2. audire, <i>be thou heard</i>	2. audīminī, <i>be ye heard</i>
---------------------------	---------------------------	---------------------------------	---------------------------------

FUTURE

2. audītō, <i>thou shalt hear</i>	2. audītōte, <i>you shall hear</i>	2. auditor, <i>thou shalt be heard</i>	2. ———
3. audītō, <i>he shall hear</i>	3. audiuntō, <i>they shall hear</i>	3. auditor, <i>he shall be heard</i>	3. audiuntor, <i>they shall be heard</i>

INFINITIVE

audire, <i>to hear</i>	PRESENT	audīrī, <i>to be heard</i>
audītūrus (a, um) esse, <i>to be about to hear</i>	FUTURE	audītum irī, <i>to be about to be heard</i>
audivisse, <i>to have heard</i>	PERFECT	audītus (a, um) esse, <i>to have been heard</i>

PARTICIPLES

audiēns, ientis, <i>hearing</i>	PRESENT	—————
audītūrus, a, um, <i>about to hear</i>	FUTURE	GER. audiendus, a, um, <i>to be heard</i>
—————	PERFECT	audītus, <i>having been heard, heard</i>

GERUND

GEN. audiendī, <i>of hearing</i>	ACC. audiendum, <i>hearing</i>
DAT. audiendō, <i>for hearing</i>	ABL. audiendō, <i>by hearing</i>

SUPINE

audītum

audītū

520. THIRD CONJUGATION. VERBS IN *iō*PRIN. PARTS: *capiō, ere, cēpī, captus*

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

*I take, am taking, do take*PRESENT *I am taken, am being taken**Singular**Plural**Singular**Plural**capiō**capiamus**capior**capimur**capis**capitis**caperis, re**capimini**capit**capiunt**capitur**capiuntur*

IMPERFECT

*I was taking, took, did take**I was taken, was being taken**capiēbam**capiēbāmus**capiēbar**capiēbāmur**capiēbās**capiēbātis**capiēbāris, re**capiēbāmini**capiēbat**capiēbant**capiēbātur**capiēbantur**I shall take*

FUTURE

*I shall be taken**capiam**capiemus**capiar**capiemur**capies**capietis**capieris, re**capiemini**capiet**capient**capientur**capientur*

PERFECT

*I have taken, took**I have been taken, I was taken**cēpī**cēpimus**captus sum**capti sumus**cēpisti**cēpistis**(a, um) es**(ae, a) estis**cēpit**cēperunt**est**sunt**I had taken*

PLUPERFECT

*I had been taken**cēperam**cēperāmus**captus eram**capti erāmus**cēperās**cēperātis**(a, um) erās**(ae, a) erātis**cēperat**cēperant**erat**erant*

FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have taken**I shall have been taken**cēperō**cēperimus**captus erō**capti erimus**cēperis**cēperitis**(a, um) eris**(ae, a) eritis**cēperit**cēperint**erit**erunt*

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

*capiam**capiamus**capiar**capiamur**capias**capiatis**capiaris, re**capiamini**capiat**capiant**capiantur**capiantur*

ACTIVE

IMPERFECT

PASSIVE

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
cap ^{er} em	cap ^{er} ēmus	cap ^{er} er	cap ^{er} ēmur
cap ^{er} ēs	cap ^{er} ētis	cap ^{er} ēris, re	cap ^{er} ēmini
cap ^{er} et	cap ^{er} ent	cap ^{er} ētur	cap ^{er} entur

PERFECT

cap ^{er} im	cap ^{er} īmus	cap ^{er} tus sim	cap ^{er} tī sīmus
cap ^{er} is	cap ^{er} ītis	(a, um) sīs	(ae, a) sītis
cap ^{er} it	cap ^{er} erint	sit	sint

PLUPERFECT

cap ^{er} issem	cap ^{er} issemus	cap ^{er} tus essem	cap ^{er} tī essemus
cap ^{er} isēs	cap ^{er} isētis	(a, um) essēs	(ae, a) essētis
cap ^{er} isset	cap ^{er} issent	esset	essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

2. cap ^{er} e, <i>take thou</i>	2. cap ^{er} ite, <i>take ye</i>	2. cap ^{er} e, <i>bethou taken</i>	2. cap ^{er} imini, <i>be ye taken</i>
--	--	---	--

FUTURE

2. cap ^{er} tō, <i>thou shalt take</i>	2. cap ^{er} tōte, <i>ye shall take</i>	2. cap ^{er} itor, <i>thou shalt be taken</i>	2. ———
3. cap ^{er} tō, <i>he shall take</i>	3. cap ^{er} untō, <i>they shall take</i>	3. cap ^{er} itor, <i>he shall be taken</i>	3. cap ^{er} untor, <i>they shall be taken</i>

INFINITIVE

cap ^{er} e, <i>to take</i>	PRESENT	cap ^{er} ī, <i>to be taken</i>
cap ^{er} tūrus (a, um) esse, <i>to be about to take</i>	FUTURE	cap ^{er} tum irī, <i>to be about to be taken</i>
cap ^{er} isse, <i>to have taken</i>	PERFECT	cap ^{er} tus (a, um) esse, <i>to have been taken</i>

PARTICIPLES

cap ^{er} iēns, ientis, <i>taking</i>	PRESENT	—————
cap ^{er} tūrus, a, um, <i>about to take</i>	FUTURE	GER. cap ^{er} iendus, a, um, <i>to be taken</i>
—————	PERFECT	cap ^{er} tus, a, um, <i>having been taken, taken</i>

GERUND

GEN. cap ^{er} iendī, <i>of taking</i>	ACC. cap ^{er} iendum, <i>taking</i>
DAT. cap ^{er} iendō, <i>for taking</i>	ABL. cap ^{er} iendō, <i>by taking</i>

SUPINE

cap ^{er} tum	cap ^{er} tū
-----------------------	----------------------

IRREGULAR VERBS

521. PRIN. PARTS : *sum, esse, fui, futūrus, be*

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

*Singular**Plural**sum, I am**sumus, we are**es, you are**estis, you are**est (he, she, it) is**sunt, they are*

IMPERFECT

*eram, I was**erāmus, we were**erās, you were**erātis, you were**erat, he was**erant, they were*

FUTURE

*erō, I shall be**erimus, we shall be**eris, you will be**eritis, you will be**erit, he will be**erunt, they will be*

PERFECT

*fui, I have been, was**fuimus, we have been, were**fuisti, you have been, were**fuistis, you have been, were**fuit, he has been, was**fuērunt, they have been, were*

PLUPERFECT

*fueram, I had been**fuerāmus, we had been**fuerās, you had been**fuerātis, you had been**fuerat, he had been**fuerant, they had been*

FUTURE PERFECT

*fuerō, I shall have been**fuerimus, we shall have been**fueris, you will have been**fueritis, you will have been**fuerit, he will have been**fuerint, they will have been*

SUBJUNCTIVE

	PRESENT		IMPERFECT	
<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
sim		sīmus	essem	essēmus
sīs		sītis	essēs	essētis
sit		sint	esset	essent
	PERFECT		PLUPERFECT	
fuerim		fuerīmus	fuissem	fuissēmus
fuerīs		fuerītis	fuissēs	fuissētis
fuerit		fuerint	fuisset	fuissent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT	FUTURE
es, <i>be thou</i>	estō, <i>thou shalt be</i>
este, <i>be ye</i>	estō, <i>he shall be</i>
	estōte, <i>ye shall be</i>
	suntō, <i>they shall be</i>

INFINITIVE

PARTICIPLE

PRES.	esse, <i>to be</i>	—
PERF.	fuisse, <i>to have been</i>	—
FUT.	futūrus esse (fore), <i>to be about to be</i>	futūrus, <i>about to be</i>

522. PRIN. PARTS : **possum, posse, potuī, am able, can**

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
PRES. <i>I am able, can</i>				
	possum	possumus	possim	possīmus
	potes	potestis	possīs	possītis
	potest	possunt	possit	possint
IMPF. <i>I was able, could</i>				
	poteram	poterāmus	possem	possēmus
FUT. <i>I shall be able</i>				
	poterō	poterīmus		

PERF. *I have been able, could*

potuī potuimus potuerim potuerimus

PLUP. *I had been able*

potueram potuerāmus potuissem potuissēmus

F. P. *I shall have been able*

potuerō potuerimus

INFINITIVE

PRES. posse, *to be able* PERF. potuisse, *to have been able*

PARTICIPLE

PRES. potēns (used as adjective), *powerful*

523.

PRIN. PARTS: **prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui, prōfutūrus, benefit**

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

Singular

Plural

Singular

Plural

PRES. *I benefit*

prōsum prōsumus prōsim prōsimus

prōdes prōdestis prōsīs prōsītis

prōdest prōsunt prōsit prōsint

IMPF. prōderam prōderāmus prōdessem prōdessēmus

FUT. prōderō prōderimus

PERF. prōfui prōfuiimus prōfuerim prōfuerimus

PLUP. prōfueram prōfuerāmus prōfuissem prōfuissemus

F. P. prōfuerō prōfuerimus

IMPERATIVE

PRES. prōdes, prōdeste FUT. prōdestō, prōdestōte

INFINITIVE

PRES. prōdesse PERF. prōfuisse

FUT. prōfutūrus esse

PARTICIPLE

FUT. prōfutūrus

524. PRIN. PARTS :

Volō, velle, voluī, —, *be willing, will, wish*
 Nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —, *be unwilling, will not*
 Mālō, mālle, māluī, —, *be more willing, prefer*

INDICATIVE

PRES.	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
	vult	nōn vult	māvult
	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
IMPF.	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
FUT.	volam, ēs, etc.	nōlam, ēs, etc.	mālam, ēs, etc
PERF.	voluī	nōluī	māluī
PLUP.	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
F. P.	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.	velim	nōlim	mālim
	velīs	nōlīs	mālīs
	velit	nōlit	mālit
	velīmus	nōlīmus	mālīmus
	velītis	nōlītis	mālītis
	velint	nōlint	mālint
IMPF.	vellem	nōllem	māllem
	vellēs	nōllēs	māllēs
	vellet	nōllet	māllet
	vellēmus	nōllēmus	māllēmus
	vellētis	nōllētis	māllētis
	vellent	nōllent	māllent
PERF.	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
PLUP.	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem

IMPERATIVE

PRES.	—	nōlī	—
		nōlīte	
FUT.	—	[nōlītō, etc.]	—

INFINITIVE

PRES.	velle	nōlle	mālle
PERF.	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

PARTICIPLE

PRES.	volēns	nōlēns	—
-------	--------	--------	---

525. PRIN. PARTS : eō, ire, iī, itum, go

	INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERATIVE	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>		<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
PRES.	eō	īmus	eam	ī	īte
	īs	ītis			
	it	eunt			
IMPF.	ībam, ībās, ībat, etc.		īrem	{ itō	itōte
				{ itō	euntō
FUT.	ībō, ībis, ībit, etc.		—		
PERF.	iī, istī, iit, etc.		ierim		
PLUP.	ieram		īssem		
F. P.	ierō				

	INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLES
PRES.	īre	īēns, euntis
PERF.	īsse	itum
FUT.	itūrus esse	itūrus
	GERUND	SUPINE
GEN.	eundī	
DAT.	eundō	
ACC.	eundum	itum
ABL.	eundō	—

526.

PRIN. PARTS : *fiō, fierī, factus sum, be made, become, happen*

	INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERATIVE	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>		<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
PRES.	<i>fiō</i>	—	<i>fiam</i>	<i>fī</i>	<i>fite</i>
	<i>fīs</i>	—			
	<i>fit</i>	<i>fīunt</i>			
IMPF.	<i>fiēbam</i>		<i>fierem</i>		
FUT.	<i>fīam, fiēs, etc.</i>		—		
PERF.	<i>factus sum</i>		<i>factus sim</i>		
PLUP.	<i>factus eram</i>		<i>factus essem</i>		
F. P.	<i>factus erō</i>				

	INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLES
PRES.	<i>fieri</i>	GER. <i>faciendus</i>
PERF.	<i>factus esse</i>	PERF. <i>factus</i>
FUT.	<i>factum iri</i>	

527. PRIN. PARTS : *ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus, bear, carry*

	INDICATIVE			
	ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
PRES.	<i>ferō</i>	<i>ferimus</i>	<i>feror</i>	<i>ferimur</i>
	<i>fers</i>	<i>fertis</i>	<i>ferris, re</i>	<i>ferimini</i>
	<i>fert</i>	<i>ferunt</i>	<i>fertur</i>	<i>feruntur</i>

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Singular</i>
IMPF.	<i>ferēbam</i>	<i>ferēbar</i>
FUT.	<i>feram, ēs, etc.</i>	<i>ferar, ēris, etc.</i>
PERF.	<i>tuli</i>	<i>lātus sum</i>
PLUP.	<i>tuleram</i>	<i>lātus eram</i>
F. P.	<i>tulerō</i>	<i>lātus erō</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.	feram	ferar
IMPF.	ferrem	ferrer
PERF.	tulerim	lātus sim
PLUP.	tulissem	lātus essem

IMPERATIVE

PRES.	fer	ferte	ferre	ferimini
FUT.	fertō	fertōte	fertor	
	fertō	feruntō	fertor	feruntor

INFINITIVE

PRES.	ferre	ferrī
PERF.	tulisse	lātus esse
FUT.	lātūrus esse	lātum irī

PARTICIPLES

PRES.	ferēns	—
FUT.	lātūrus	GER. ferendus
	—	PERF. lātus

GERUND

SUPINE

GEN.	ferendī	—
DAT.	ferendō	—
ACC.	ferendum	lātum
ABL.	ferendō	lātū

528.

DEPONENT VERBS

PRIN. PARTS : hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum, *urge, entreat*
 vereor, verērī, veritus sum, *fear*
 sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, *follow*
 potior, potirī, potitus sum, *get possession of*

INDICATIVE

PRES.	hortor	vereor	sequor	potior
	hortāris, re	verēris, re	sequeris, re	potīris, re
	hortātur	verētur	sequitur	potītur
	hortāmur	verēmur	sequimur	potīmur
	hortāminī	verēminī	sequiminī	potīminī
	hortantur	verentur	sequuntur	potiuntur
IMPF.	hortābar	verēbar	sequēbar	potiēbar
FUT.	hortābor	verēbor	sequar	potiar
PERF.	hortātus sum	veritus sum	secūtus sum	potītus sum
PLUP.	hortātus eram	veritus eram	secūtus eram	potītus eram
F. P.	hortātus erō	veritus erō	secūtus erō	potītus erō

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.	horter	verear	sequar	potiar
IMPF.	hortārer	verērer	sequerer	potīrer
PERF.	hortātus sim	veritus sim	secūtus sim	potītus sim
PLUP.	hortātus essem	veritus essem	secūtus essem	potītus essem

IMPERATIVE

PRES.	hortāre	verēre	sequere	potīre
FUT.	hortātor	verētor	sequitor	potītor

INFINITIVE

PRES.	hortārī	verērī	sequī	potīrī
PERF.	hortātus esse	veritus esse	secūtus esse	potītus esse
FUT.	hortātūrus esse	veritūrus esse	secūtūrus esse	potītūrus esse

PARTICIPLES

PRES.	hortāns	verēns	sequēns	potiēns
FUT.	hortātūrus	veritūrus	secūtūrus	potītūrus
PERF.	hortātus	veritus	secūtus	potītus
GER.	hortandus	verendus	sequendus	potiendus

GERUND

hortandī, etc. verendī, etc. sequendī, etc. potiendī, etc.

SUPINE

hortātum	veritum	secutum	potitum
hortātū	veritū	secūtū	potitū

529. FIRST OR ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

INDICATIVE

PRES.	amātūrus	sum, <i>I am about to love</i>
IMPF.	amātūrus	eram, <i>I was about to love</i>
FUT.	amātūrus	erō, <i>I shall be about to love</i>
PERF.	amātūrus	fui, <i>I have been or was about to love</i>
PLUP.	amātūrus	fueram, <i>I had been about to love</i>
F. P.	amātūrus	fuerō, <i>I shall have been about to love</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.	amātūrus	sim
IMPF.	amātūrus	essem
PERF.	amātūrus	fuerim
PLUP.	amātūrus	fuissem

INFINITIVE

PRES.	amātūrus	esse
PERF.	amātūrus	fuisse

FOR THE OTHER CONJUGATIONS

PRES.	monitūrus	sum, <i>I am about to advise</i>
	ductūrus	sum, <i>I am about to lead</i>
	captūrus	sum, <i>I am about to take</i>
	auditūrus	sum, <i>I am about to hear, etc.</i>

530. SECOND OR PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

INDICATIVE

PRES.	amandus	sum, <i>I am to be, must be, loved</i>
IMPF.	amandus	eram, <i>I was to be, had to be, loved</i>
FUT.	amandus	erō, <i>I shall have to be loved</i>

INDICATIVE— *Continued*

- PERF. **amandus** fui, *I was to be, had to be, loved*
 PLUP. **amandus** fueram, *I had had to be loved*
 F. P. **amandus** fuerō, *I shall have had to be loved*

SUBJUNCTIVE

- PRES. **amandus** sim
 IMPF. **amandus** essem
 PERF. **amandus** fuerim
 PLUP. **amandus** fuissem

INFINITIVE

- PRES. **amandus** esse, *to have to be loved*
 PERF. **amandus** fuisse, *to have had to be loved*

FOR THE OTHER CONJUGATIONS

- PRES. **monendus** sum, *I am to be, must be, advised*
dūcendus sum, *I am to be, must be, led*
capiendus sum, *I am to be, must be, taken*
audiendus sum, *I am to be, must be, heard, etc.*

SUMMARY OF RULES OF SYNTAX

Nominative Case. — The subject of a finite verb is always in the nominative case. [34, 1.]

A predicate adjective agrees in number, gender, and case with the word to which it refers. — A predicate noun agrees in case (only) with the word to which it refers. [34, 2.]

Genitive Case. — The genitive is used to limit or define the meaning of a noun. [38.]

The genitive of the whole (partitive genitive), denoting the whole from which a part is (or is not) taken is used with nouns, pronouns, adjectives (except numerals), and adverbs. The part taken is denoted by the noun, pronoun, etc., on which the genitive depends. [251.]

The ablative or the genitive of a noun, *if itself modified by an adjective or genitive*, may be used to describe a person or object. The genitive is less common in this use than the ablative; it occurs chiefly in expressions of measure or number, and in phrases consisting of nouns modified by *magnus, maximus, summus, tantus*. [303.]

Dative Case. — The indirect object of a verb is in the dative case. [58, 2.]

The dative is used with adjectives denoting Likeness, Fitness, Nearness, Service, Inclination, and the like, and also with their opposites. [163.]

The dative is used with *est, sunt*, etc., to denote the possessor, the thing possessed being the subject. [231.]

The dative is used with *sum* and a few other verbs to denote the purpose or end of the act or state expressed by the verb. Commonly there is combined with the dative of purpose another dative denoting the person interested in the purpose or end, or affected by it. [295.]

Most verbs signifying to favor, help, please, trust, and their contraries; also to believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon, and spare, take the dative case. [343.]

Many verbs compounded with *ad*, *ante*, *con*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *prae*, *prō*, *sub*, and *super*, often govern the dative. [394.]

Accusative Case. — The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative case. [46, 2.]

The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative. [184, 1.]

Place to which is expressed by the accusative with *ad* or *in*; with names of towns, *domus*, *humus*, and *rūs*, by the accusative without a preposition. [237, 2.]

Extent of time or space is expressed by the accusative. [245.]

Ablative Case. — The means or instrument of an action is expressed by the ablative without a preposition. [94.]

Cause is expressed by the ablative, usually without a preposition. [118.]

Time when or within which is expressed by the ablative without a preposition. [131.]

The personal agent with a passive verb is expressed by the ablative with *ā* or *ab*. [142.]

Manner is expressed by the ablative with the preposition *cum*, but *cum* may be omitted if an adjective is used with the ablative. [148.]

The ablative of specification tells in what respect the meaning of a verb, noun, or adjective applies. No preposition is used. [157.]

Verbs meaning to separate, remove, set free, deprive, lack, etc., are often followed by the ablative of the thing from which separation takes place. *Ab* or *ex* with the ablative is, however, often used with these verbs, regularly when the separation is literal and physical (not figurative) and the ablative denotes a person. But with *careō* a preposition is never used. [211.]

Place where is expressed by the ablative with *in*; but with names of towns, *domus*, *humus*, and *rūs*, by the locative. [237, 1.]

Place from which is expressed by the ablative with *ab*, *dē*, or *ex*; with names of towns, *domus*, *humus*, and *rūs*, by the ablative without a preposition. [237, 3.]

In expressions involving a comparative with *quam* the same case is used after *quam* as before it. After comparatives without *quam* the ablative is used. [260.]

The measure of difference is expressed in connection with the comparative degree by the ablative without a preposition. [267.]

The ablative or the genitive of a noun, *if itself modified by an adjective or genitive*, may be used to describe a person or object. The genitive is less common in this use than the ablative; it occurs chiefly in expressions of measure or number, and in phrases consisting of nouns modified by *magnus*, *maximus*, *summus*, *tantus*. [303.]

The ablative is used with the deponent verbs *ūtor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, and *vēscor*, and their compounds. [337.]

Locative Case. — Place where is expressed by the locative with names of towns, *domus*, *humus*, and *rūs*. [237, 1.]

Agreement. — A predicate noun agrees in case with the word to which it refers, a predicate adjective agrees in number, gender, and case. [34, 2.]

A verb agrees with its subject in number and person. [46, 1.]

An appositive agrees in case with the noun which it limits or explains. [58, 1.]

Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case. [65.]

A predicate adjective with a complementary infinitive agrees with the subject of the main verb. [184, 3.]

A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends upon the construction of the clause in which it stands, not upon the case of its antecedent. [197.]

The Subjunctive. — Purpose may be expressed by the present or imperfect subjunctive with *ut* if the clause is affirmative, and by the subjunctive with *nē* if the purpose clause is negative. [351.]

Result is usually expressed by the subjunctive with *ut* if the result clause is affirmative, and by the subjunctive with *ut nōn* if the result clause is negative. [358.]

Purpose may be expressed by a relative clause in the subjunctive, especially after verbs of motion. [364.]

The verb of an indirect question is in the subjunctive. [370.]

A primary tense in the main clause is followed by a primary tense in the dependent subjunctive clause; a secondary tense in the main clause is followed by a secondary tense in the dependent subjunctive clause. [374.]

The subjunctive with *nē*, that, or *ut*, that not, is used as the object of verbs or expressions of fearing. [385.]

In a *cum* clause expressing time, the verb is usually sub-

junctive if the tense used is imperfect or pluperfect; otherwise, the indicative is used. [387, 1.]

In a *cum* clause expressing cause or concession, the verb is subjunctive. [387, 2.]

Wishes relating to the future are expressed by the present (or perfect) subjunctive, with or without *utinam*; wishes hopeless in present time by *utinam* with the imperfect subjunctive; wishes hopeless in past time by *utinam* with the pluperfect subjunctive. In wishes the negative is *nē*. [425.]

Indirect Discourse. — Simple statements, when quoted indirectly after verbs of saying, knowing, thinking, and perceiving, are expressed by the infinitive with its subject in the accusative. [329.]

The verb of an indirect question is in the subjunctive. [370.]

In indirect discourse the main verbs, if the clauses in which they stand make statements, are in the infinitive with subject accusative, and the subordinate (or dependent) verbs are in the subjunctive. [430.]

Supine. — The supine in *-um* is used to express purpose after verbs of motion. [435.]

Sequence of Tenses. — A primary tense in the main clause is followed by a primary tense in the dependent subjunctive clause; a secondary tense in the main clause is followed by a secondary tense in the dependent subjunctive clause. [374.]

VOCABULARIES

ABBREVIATIONS

<p><i>abl.</i> ablative.</p> <p><i>acc.</i> accusative.</p> <p><i>adj.</i> adjective.</p> <p><i>adv.</i> adverb.</p> <p><i>comp.</i> comparative.</p> <p><i>conj.</i> conjunction.</p> <p><i>dat.</i> dative.</p> <p><i>def.</i> defective.</p> <p><i>dem.</i> demonstrative.</p> <p><i>dép.</i> deponent.</p> <p><i>determ.</i> determinative.</p> <p><i>dim.</i> diminutive.</p> <p><i>f.</i> feminine.</p> <p><i>fut.</i> future.</p> <p><i>gen.</i> genitive.</p> <p><i>impers.</i> impersonal.</p> <p><i>indecl.</i> indeclinable.</p> <p><i>indef.</i> indefinite.</p> <p><i>interrog.</i> interrogative.</p> <p><i>intr.</i> intransitive.</p> <p><i>irr.</i> irregular.</p>	<p><i>loc.</i> locative.</p> <p><i>m.</i> masculine.</p> <p><i>n., neut.</i> neuter.</p> <p><i>neg.</i> negative.</p> <p><i>nom.</i> nominative.</p> <p><i>num.</i> numeral.</p> <p><i>part.</i> participle.</p> <p><i>pass.</i> passive.</p> <p><i>perf.</i> perfect.</p> <p><i>pl., plur.</i> plural.</p> <p><i>pr.</i> proper.</p> <p><i>prep.</i> preposition.</p> <p><i>pres.</i> present.</p> <p><i>pron.</i> pronoun.</p> <p><i>refl.</i> reflexive.</p> <p><i>rel.</i> relative.</p> <p><i>sing.</i> singular.</p> <p><i>subjv.</i> subjunctive.</p> <p><i>subst.</i> substantive.</p> <p><i>sup.</i> superlative.</p> <p><i>tr.</i> transitive.</p>
---	--

VOCABULARY

LATIN — ENGLISH

[Numbers refer to Sections.]

- ā, ab, prep. w. abl.,** from, by, with, at, on, in.
- abditus.** *See* **abdō.**
- abdō, abdere, abdidī, abditus** (ab + **dō**, place), *tr.*, put away, conceal.
- abiciō, ere, abiēcī, abiectus, tr.**, throw, hurl.
- ablātus.** *See* **auferō.**
- absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus, intr.**, be away, be distant, be absent.
- ac.** *See* **atque.**
- Acca, ae, f., pr. name,** Acca Larentia, foster mother of Romulus and Remus.
- accēdō, ere, accessī, accessūrus** (ad + **cēdō**), *intr.*, go near, come near, approach; *w. ad and acc.*
- accendō, ere, accendī, accēnsus** (ad + **candeō**, glow), *tr.*, set on fire; **accēnsus**, burning.
- accidō, ere, accidī, —** (ad + **cadō**), *intr.*, happen.
- acciō, ire, accivī, accītus** (ad + **cieō**, set in motion), *tr.*, summon, invite.
- accipiō, ere, accēpī, acceptus** (ad + **capiō**), *tr.*, receive; suffer, undergo.
- acclāmō, āre, āvī, ātus** (ad + **clāmō**, cry), *tr.*, shout, cry out.
- acclivis, e** (ad + **clivus**, slope), rising.
- acclivitās, ātis** (**acclivis**), *f.*, ascent, slope.
- accurrō, ere, accurrī, accursum** (ad + **currō**, run), *intr.*, run up, hasten to.
- accūsō, āre, āvī, ātus** (ad + **causa**), *tr.*, accuse, reproach.
- ācer, ācris, ācre**, sharp, keen, eager, fierce.
- ācerrimē.** *See* **ācriter.**
- aciēs, aciēī, f.**, edge; line of battle.
- ācriter** (**ācer**), *adv.*, sharply, eagerly, fiercely; *comp.* **ācrius**; *sup.* **ācerrimē.**
- āctus.** *See* **agō.**
- ad, prep. w. acc.,** to, toward, at, near, against; according to; *w. numerals*, about.
- addō, addere, addidī, additus** (ad + **dō**, place), *tr.*, add.
- addūcō, ere, addūxī, adductus** (ad + **dūcō**), *tr.*, lead to, lead, influence.
- adeō, adīre, adīī, aditum** (ad + **eō**), *intr.*, go to, approach.
- adficiō, ere, adfēcī, adfectus** (ad + **faciō**), *tr.*, affect; **poenā** —, punish.
- adhibeō, ēre, adhibuī, adhibitus** (ad + **habeō**), *tr.*, call in, use.
- aditus, ūs** (**adeō**), *m.*, approach, access.

- administrō, āre, āvī, ātus** (ad + ministrō, manage), *tr.*, manage, direct, administer.
adolēscō, ere, adolēvī, adultus (ad + olēscō, grow), *intr.*, grow up.
adorior, irī, adortus sum (ad + orior), *intr.*, attack.
adōrnō, āre, āvī, ātus (ad + ōrnō, equip), *tr.*, equip, adorn.
adsum, adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus (ad + sum), *intr.*, be present, aid.
Aduatucī, ōrum, m., a tribe of Belgic Gaul.
adolēscēns, entis (adolēscō), young; *as subst.*, young man, youth.
adveniō, ire, advēnī, adventum (ad + veniō), *intr.*, come to, arrive, reach.
adventus, ūs (adveniō), *m.*, arrival, approach.
adversus, a, um (advertō, turn to), in front, opposite; **adversō colle**, up the hill.
adversus (adversus), *prep. w. acc.*, opposite, against, facing.
aedificium, ī (aedificō), *n.*, building.
aedificō, āre, āvī, ātus (aedis + faciō), *tr.*, build, construct.
aedis or aedēs, is, f., temple; *pl.*, aedēs rēgiae, palace.
aeger, aegra, aegrum, sick.
aegrē (aeger), *adv.*, scarcely, with difficulty.
aegritūdō, inis (aeger), *f.*, sickness, vexation, mortification.
aequāliter (aequālis, equal), *adv.*, uniformly, equally.
aequus, a, um, equal, favorable.
aestās, ātis, f., summer.
aetās, ātis, f., age.
ager, agrī, m., field, land, territory.
- agger, aggeris** (ad + gerō), *m.*, mound, agger.
aggredior, aggredī, aggressus sum (ad + gradior, go), *tr.*, go against, attack.
agmen, agminis (agō), *n.*, army on the march; **prīmum agmen**, van; **novissimum agmen**, rear.
āgnōscō, ere, āgnōvī, āgnitus (ad + [g]nōscō, know), *tr.*, recognize.
agō, ere, ēgī, āctus, tr., drive, lead, move forward, do, treat; **triumphum agere**, celebrate a triumph.
agricola, ae (ager + colō), *m.*, farmer.
aiō, ais, ait, aiunt, def., say.
Alba or Alba Longa, ae, f., an ancient Latin town.
Albānus, a, um (Alba), Alban; *as subst.*, **Albānus, ī, m.**, an Alban.
albus, a, um, white.
aliēnus, a, um (alius), another's, unfavorable, strange.
aliquis and aliquī, aliqua, aliquid and aliquod, indef. pron., some one, any one.
alius, alia, aliud, other, another; **alius . . . alius**, one . . . another; **aliī . . . aliī**, some . . . some, some . . . others; **aliū aliam in partem**, some in one direction, some in another.
Allobrogēs, um, m., a Celtic tribe of Gaul.
alō, ere, aluī, altus, tr., nourish, strengthen.
altāria, ium, n. pl., altar.
alter, altera, alterum, the other (of two), another, second.
altitūdō, inis (altus), *f.*, height, depth.
altus, a, um (alō), high, deep.
alveus, ī, m., basket, trough.

Ambiānī, ōrum, m. pl., a Belgian tribe.
amīcitiā, ae (amīcus), f., friendship, alliance.

amīcus, ī (amō), m., friend, ally.
āmīttō, ere, amīsī. amīssus (ā + mittō), tr., lose.

amō, āre, āvī, ātus, tr., love, like.
āmoveō, ēre, amōvī, amōtus (ā + moveō), tr., take away, remove.

amplificō, āre, āvī, ātus (amplus + faciō), tr., increase, extend.

amplus, a, um, large, extensive, ample.
Amūlius, ī, m., king of Alba Longa.
ancīle, is, n., a small oval shield.

angustiae, ārum (angustus), f. pl., narrowness, narrow pass. [steep.
angustus, a, um, narrow, contracted;

animadvertō, ere, animadvertī, animadversus (animum + advertō, turn toward), tr., turn one's mind to, notice; **animadvertere in**, punish.

animal, ālis (anima, life), n., animal.
animus, ī, m., mind, disposition, courage, spirit; **in animō esse, in animō habēre**, have in mind, intend.

annus, ī, m., year.
ante, adv. and prep. w. acc., before.

antepōnō, ere, anteposūi, antepositus (ante + pōnō), tr., put before.

antequam, conj., before, until.
antīquus (antīquus), adv., in former times, anciently.

antīquus, a, um, old, ancient.
ānulus, ī, m., ring.

anxius, a, um (angō, vex), troubled, anxious.

aperiō, ire, aperuī, apertus, tr., open.
apertus, a, um (aperiō), open.

appellō, āre, āvī, ātus, tr., call, name.
Appius, ī, m., a Roman surname.

apprehendō, ere, apprehendī, apprehēnsus (ad +prehendō, seize), tr., lay hold of, seize.

appropīnquō, āre, āvī, ātum (ad + propīnquus), intr., w. dat., approach, come near.

apud, prep. w. acc., among, in the presence of, near.

aqua, ae, f., water. [Gaul.

Aquilēia, ae, f., a town of Cisalpine
aquilō, ōnis, m., the north wind.

Aquitānia, ae, f., a division of southern Gaul.

Aquitānus, ī, m., an Aquitanian.

āra, ae, f., altar.

Arar, Araris, m., a river of Gaul, the modern Saône.

arbiter, arbitri, m., witness.

arbitror, āri, ātus sum (arbiter), intr., think, consider, suppose.

arceō, ēre, arcuī, —, tr., shut up, hinder, prevent.

Ariovistus, ī, m., a German king.

arma, ōrum, n. pl., arms, weapons.

armilla, ae, f., bracelet.

armō, āre, āvī, ātus (arma), tr., arm, equip.

arō, āre, āvī, ātus, tr., plow.

ars, artis, f., art.

artūs, artuum, m. pl., joints.

arx, arcis (arceō), f., stronghold, citadel.

asper, aspera, asperum, rough, fierce.

āstūtia, ae (āstūtus, cunning), f., shrewdness, cunning.

asylum, ī, n., asylum, place of refuge.

at, conj., but, yet.

Athēnae, ārum, f., Athens.

atque, ac, conj., and.

Atrebās, ātis, m., one of the Atrebates, a Belgic tribe.

attingō, ere, attigī, attāctus (ad + tangō, touch), *tr.*, touch, join, border on. [astounded.

attonitus, a, um, thunderstruck, auctōritās, ātis (augeō), *f.*, authority, influence, reputation.

audācter (audāx), *adv.*, boldly, courageously; *comp.* audācius; *sup.* audācissimē.

audāx, *adj.*, bold.

Audecumborius, ī, *m.*, an ambassador of the Remi.

audeō, ēre, ausus sum, *intr.*, dare.

audiō, īre, audīvī, audītus, *tr.*, hear.

aufferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus (ab + ferō), *tr.*, take away, carry off.

augeō, ēre, auxī, auctus, *tr.*, increase.

augurium, ī (augur, soothsayer), *n.*, divination, augury.

aureus, a, um (aurum, gold), golden.

auspiciū, ī (avis + speciō, look), *n.*, divination by noting the cries or flight of birds.

ausus. See audeō.

autem, *conj.*, but, moreover, however.

auxiliū, ī, *n.*, help, aid.

Aventīnus, a, um, of the Aventine, one of the seven hills of Rome.

āvertō, ere, āvertī, āversus (ab + vertō), *tr.*, turn away, remove.

avis, is, *f.*, bird.

avus, ī, *m.*, grandfather, ancestor.

Axona, ae, *f.*, a river of Gaul, the modern Aisne.

B

Baleāris, e, Balearic.

Belgae, ārum, *m. pl.*, Belgians, a tribe of northern Gaul.

bellicōsus, a, um (bellum), warlike.

Bellovacī, ōrum, *m.*, a Belgic tribe of Gaul.

bellum, ī, *n.*, war; bellum inferre, make war; bellum gerere, wage war.

bene (bonus), *adv.*, well; *comp.* melius, *sup.* optimē.

beneficiū, ī (bene + faciō), *n.*, favor, service.

benīgnē (benīgnus, kind), *adv.*, kindly.

bibō, ere, bibī, —, *tr.*, drink.

Bibrax, Bibractis, *n.*, a town of the Remi.

Bōiī, ōrum, *m. pl.*, a tribe associated with the Helvetiī.

bonus, a, um, good.

Bratuspantium, ī, *n.*, a town of the Bellovacī.

brevis, e, short, brief.

brevitās, ātis (brevis), *f.*, shortness.

Britannia, ae, *f.*, Britain.

C

cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsūrus, *tr.*, fall, die, perish.

caedēs, is (caedō), *f.*, slaughter.

caedō, ere, cecidī, caesus, *tr.*, cut to pieces, slay.

caelum, ī, *n.*, sky, heavens.

Caesar, aris, *m.*, a family name of the Julian gens; Gāius Iūlius Caesar, 100–44 B.C., the conqueror of Gaul.

calamitās, ātis, *f.*, disaster, defeat.

campus, ī, *m.*, plain.

capiō, ere, cēpī, captus, *tr.*, take, capture, seize; form (a plan).

Capitōlium, ī, *n.*, the Capitol, a great temple of Jupiter at Rome, and the hill on which it stood.

captīvus, ī (capiō), *m.*, captive.

caput, capitis, *n.*, head.

cārē (cārus), *adv.*, dearly.

careō, ēre, caruī, caritūrus, *intr. w. abl.*, be without, be in need of, lack.

- carpentum, ī, n.**, two-wheeled carriage.
carrus, ī, m., wagon, cart.
Carthāgō, inis, f., a great Phoenician city on the northern coast of Africa.
cārus, a, um, dear.
casa, ae, f., hut.
Cassius, ī, m., a Roman name.
castellum, ī (dim. of castrum), n., fort, redoubt.
Casticus, ī, m., a Sequanian chief.
castra, ōrum, n. pl., camp.
cāsus, ūs (cadō), m., falling, chance, misfortune.
catulus, ī, m., cub.
causa, ae, f., reason, cause, case; **quā dē causā**, why, for this reason; **causā, w. gen.**, for the sake of, for, on account of; **causam dīcere**, plead a case.
cavea, ae (cavus, hollow), f., cage.
cecidī. See cadō.
cēdō, ere, cessī, cessum, intr., go, yield, retire, retreat.
celer, celeris, celere, swift, quick.
celeritās, ātis (celer), f., speed, quickness.
celeriter (celer), adv., quickly, swiftly; *comp. celerius; sup. celerrimē.*
Celtae, ārum, m., Celts, *one of the three great peoples of Gaul.*
cēna, ae, f., meal, dinner.
centum, indecl., hundred.
centuria, ae (centum), f., a division of the people, or army, containing one hundred; century.
centuriō, ōnis (centuria), m., centurion, commander of a century.
certāmen, inis (certō, contend), n., contest.
certus, a, um (cernō, perceive), certain, appointed; **certiōrem facere, inform.**
cēteri, ae, a, pl., the rest, the others.
cibus, ī, m., food.
Cimbri, ōrum, m., a Germanic tribe.
circā, prep. w. acc., around, about.
circiter, prep. w. acc., about, nearly.
circum, adv. and prep. w. acc., about, around.
circumdō, circumdare, circumdedī, circumdatus (circum + dō), tr., surround.
circumiciō, ere, circumiēcī, circumiectus (circum + iaciō), tr., throw about, place around.
circumveniō, ire, circumvēnī, circumventus (circum + veniō), tr., come around, surround.
cis, prep. w. acc., on this side of.
citerior, citerius, hither.
citrā, prep. w. acc., on this side of.
cīvicus, a, um (cīvis), civic.
cīvis, is, m. and f., citizen. [state.
cīvitās, ātis (cīvis), f., citizenship,
clādēs, is, f., disaster, destruction.
clāmitō, āre, āvī, ātus (clāmō, cry out), tr., cry out, shout.
clāmor, ōris (clāmō, cry out), m., shouting, cry.
classis, is, f., fleet.
Claudia, ae, f., sister of Appius Claudius Pulcher.
Claudius, ī, m., a Roman family name; **Appius Claudius Pulcher, consul 249 B.C.**
claudō, ere, clausī, clausus, tr., shut, close.
clēmētia, ae (clēmēns, mild), f., kindness, mildness.
cliēns, clientis, m. and f., dependent, vassal.
coepī, coepisse, coeptūrus sum, def., began.

- cōgnōscō**, ere, cōgnōvī, cōgnitus (con + [g]nōscō, know), *tr.*, recognize, learn, discover, ascertain.
- cōgō**, ere, coēgī, coāctus (con + agō), drive together, collect, force, compel.
- cohors**, cohortis, *f.*, cohort (the tenth part of a legion).
- cohortor**, ārī, ātus sum (con + hortor), *tr.*, exhort, encourage.
- collis**, is, *m.*, hill.
- colō**, ere, coluī, cultus, *tr.*, cultivate, worship.
- commeātus**, ūs, *m.*, provisions, supplies.
- comminus** (con + manus), *adv.*, hand to hand.
- committō**, ere, commīsī, commissus (con + mittō), *tr.*, commit, intrust; join, begin (battle).
- commodē** (commodus, useful), *adv.*, advantageously, easily.
- commoveō**, ēre, commōvī, commōtus (con + moveō), *tr.*, to move, influence, disturb.
- compār**, comparis (con + pār), fitting, suitable.
- comparō**, āre, āvī, ātus (con + parō), *tr.*, prepare, provide.
- compleō**, complēre, complēvī, complētus (con + pleō, fill), *tr.*, fill up, complete.
- complūrēs**, a, many, very many, a great many.
- comprehendō**, ere, comprehendī, comprehēsus (con + prehēdō, seize), *tr.*, seize, arrest.
- con.** See cum.
- concēdō**, ere, concessī, concessum (con + cēdō), *intr.*, yield, grant, allow, permit.
- concidō**, ere, concidī, — (con + cadō), *intr.*, fall, be killed.
- concidō**, ere, concidī, concisus (con + caedō, slay), *tr.*, cut down, kill.
- conciliō**, āre, āvī, ātus, *tr.*, gain, win, procure.
- concilium**, ī, *n.*, assembly, council.
- condemnō**, āre, āvī, ātus (con + damnō), *tr.*, condemn.
- condiciō**, ōnis (condicō, agree), *f.*, agreement, proposal, terms.
- condō**, ere, condidī, conditus (con + dō, put), *tr.*, found, establish.
- condūcō**, ere, condūxī, conductus (con + dūcō), *tr.*, bring together, hire.
- cōnferō**, cōnferre, contulī, conlātus (con + ferō), *tr.*, bring together, gather; sē cōnferre, betake one's self, go.
- cōnferthus**, a, um (cōnferciō, crowd), crowded, dense.
- cōnficiō**, ere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectus (con + faciō), *tr.*, accomplish, finish, complete, furnish, wear out.
- cōnfirmō**, āre, āvī, ātus (con + firmō, strengthen), *tr.*, strengthen, establish, assure, declare, encourage.
- cōnfligō**, ere, cōnflīxī, cōnflīctum, *intr.*, contend, fight.
- cōn fugiō**, ere, cōn fugī, —, *intr.*, flee.
- congressus**, ūs (congregior, meet), *m.*, meeting.
- congruō**, ere, congruī, —, *intr.*, agree, tally.
- coniciō**, ere, coniecī, coniectus (con + iaciō), *tr.*, throw, hurl.
- coniungō**, ere, coniūnxī, coniūnctus (con + iungō), *tr.*, join.
- coniūnx**, coniugis (coniungō), *f.*, wife.

- coniūrātiō, ōnis (coniūrō), *f.*, conspiracy.
- coniūrātus, ī (coniūrō), *m.*, conspirator.
- coniūrō, āre, āvī, ātus (con + iūrō, swear), *intr.*, conspire, plot.
- conlātus. *See* cōnferō.
- conlocō, āre, āvī, ātus (con + locō, place), *tr.*, place, put, station.
- conloquium, ī (conloquor), *n.*, interview, conference.
- conloquor, conloquī, conlocūtus sum (con + loquor, speak), *intr.*, speak together, confer.
- cōnor, āri, ātus sum, *tr.*, attempt, try.
- cōnsanguineus, ī (con + sanguis, blood), *m.*, relative, kinsman.
- cōnscrībō, ere, cōnscrīpsī, cōnscrīptus (con + scrībō), *tr.*, levy, enroll.
- cōnsecrō, āre, avī, ātus (con + sacrō, set apart), *tr.*, consecrate.
- cōnsentiō, ire, cōnsēnsī, cōnsēnsum (con + sentiō, feel), *intr.*, agree, conspire.
- cōnsequor, cōnsequī, cōnsecūtus sum (con + sequor), *tr.*, pursue, overtake, obtain.
- cōnserō, ere, cōnseruī, cōnsertus (con + serō, bind), *tr.*, join (battle).
- cōnservō, āre, āvī, ātus (con + servō), *tr.*, keep safe, preserve.
- cōnsiderō, āre, āvī, ātus, *tr.*, consider, examine, look at closely.
- cōnsidō, ere, cōnsēdī, cōnsessum (con + sidō, seat), *intr.*, settle, take up an abode.
- cōnsilium, ī (cōnsulō), *n.*, plan, advice, prudence.
- cōnsimilis, e (con + similis), very like.
- cōnsistō, ere, cōnstitī, — (con + sistō, place), *intr.*, take a stand, hold a position, stop.
- cōnspectus, ūs (cōnspiciō), *m.*, sight, view.
- cōnspiciō, ere, cōnspēxī, cōnspectus (con + speciō, look), *tr.*, see, perceive.
- cōnstantia, ae (cōnstō, stand), *f.*, firmness.
- cōnstituō, ere, cōnstituī, cōnstitutus (con + statuō), *tr.*, place, erect, construct, station, determine, appoint.
- cōnsuēscō, ere, cōnsuēvī, consuētus (con + suēscō, be accustomed), *tr.*, accustom; *intr.*, be accustomed.
- cōnsuētūdō, inis (cōnsuēscō), *f.*, custom, habit.
- cōnsul, cōnsulis, *m.*, consul.
- cōnsulō, ere, cōnsuluī, cōnsultus, *tr.*, ask advice, consult.
- contendō, ere, contendī, contentum (con + tendō), *intr.*, strive, struggle; hasten, hurry; march.
- contentiō, ōnis (contendō), *f.*, contest, controversy.
- continenter (contineō), *adv.*, continually, constantly.
- contineō, ēre, continuī, contentus (con + teneō), *tr.*, hold in, hold together, restrain, hem in, keep.
- cōntiō, ōnis (conveniō), *f.*, meeting.
- contrā, *adv. and prep. w. acc.*, against, opposite.
- contulī. *See* cōnferō.
- cōnūbium, ī (con + nūbō, marry), *f.*, marriage.
- conveniō, ire, convēnī, conventum (con + veniō), *intr.*, come together, assemble; *impers. convenit*, it is fit, agreed.

convertō, ere, convertī, conversus (con + vertō), *tr.*, turn (about), change; signa convertere, face about.
 convocō, āre, āvī, ātus (con + vocō), *tr.*, call together, summon.
 coorior, īrī, coortus sum (con + orior), *intr.*, rise, break out.
 cōpia, ae, *f.*, supply, abundance; *pl.*, forces, troops.
 Corinthus, ī, *f.*, Corinth.
 Cornēlius, ī, *m.*, the name of a Roman family. See Cossus.
 cornū, ūs, *n.*, horn, flank, wing.
 corōna, ae, *f.*, crown.
 corpus, corporis, *n.*, body.
 corruō, ere, corruī, — (con + ruō, fall), *intr.*, fall, be slain.
 Cossus, ī, *m.*, Aulus Cornēlius Cossus, consul 343 B.C.
 cottidiānus, a, um (cottidiē), daily.
 cottidiē, *adv.*, daily.
 crēdō, ere, crēdidī, crēditum, *tr. and intr.*, *w. dat.*, believe, trust.
 cremō, āre, āvī, ātus, *tr.*, burn.
 creō, āre, āvī, ātus, *tr.*, appoint, choose.
 Crētēs, Crētum, *m. pl.*, Cretans.
 crux, crucis, *f.*, cross, gallows.
 culpō, āre, āvī, ātus (culpa, fault), *tr.*, blame.
 cultus, see colō.
 cum, *prep. w. abl.*, with; *in composition*, con-, co-; *conj.*, when, since, although, because.
 cupidus, a, um (cupiō), desirous, eager.
 cupiō, ere, cupivī or cupiī, cupītus, *tr.*, wish, desire, be eager for.
 cūr, *adv.*, why.
 cūra, ae, *f.*, care.
 Curēs, Curium, *f. pl.*, a Sabine town.
 cūria, ae, *f.*, senate.

cursus, ūs (currō, run), *m.*, course.
 curūlis, e (currus, chariot), curule.
 cūstōdia, ae (cūstōs, guard), *f.*, guard.
 cūstōdiō, īre, cūstōdivī, cūstōditus (cūstōs, guard), *tr.*, watch, guard.

D

damnātiō, ōnis (damnō), *f.*, condemnation.
 damnō, āre, āvī, ātus, *tr.*, condemn, sentence.
 dē, *prep. w. abl.*, from, down from; concerning, in regard to, for; about.
 dea, ae, *f.*, goddess.
 dēbeō, ēre, dēbuī, dēbitus (dē + habeō), *tr.*, owe; *with inf.*, ought.
 decem, *indecl.*, ten.
 dēcernō, ere, dēcrēvī, dēcrētus (dē + cernō, separate), *tr.*, decide, decree.
 dēcertō, āre, āvī, ātum (dē + certō, contend), *intr.*, fight, contend.
 Decius, ī, *m.*, Pūblius Decius Mūs, consul 340 B.C.
 dēclivis, e (dē + clivus, slope), sloping.
 dēcrēvī. See dēcernō.
 dēcurrō, ere, dē(cu)currī, dēcursum (dē + currō, run), *intr.*, run down, hasten down.
 dēditiō, ōnis (dēdō), *f.*, surrender.
 dēdō, dēdere, dēdidī, dēditus (dē + dō), *tr.*, give up, surrender.
 dēfendō, ere, dēfendī, dēfēnsus, *tr.*, defend, protect.
 dēfēnsor, ōris (dēfendō), *m.*, defender.
 dēferō, dēferre, dētulī, dēlātus (dē + ferō), *tr.*, carry off; bestow, confer.
 dēficiō, ere, dēfēcī, dēfectus (dē + faciō), *tr. and intr.*, fail, be lacking, revolt. [thereafter.
 deinceps, *adv.*, successively, next,

deinde (dē + inde), *adv.*, afterwards, next.

dēlābor, dēlābī, dēlāpsus sum (dē + lābor, slip), *intr.*, glide or fall down.

dēlectō, āre, āvī, ātus, tr., please, delight.

dēligō, ere, dēlēgī, dēlēctus (dē + legō, collect), *tr.*, select, choose.

Delphī, ōrum, m., Delphi.

dēmittō, ere, dēmīsī, dēmīssus (dē + mittō), *tr.*, send down, let down; sē dēmittere, jump.

dēmōnstrō, āre, āvī, ātus (dē + mōnstrō, show), *tr.*, point out, show, mention.

dēnique, adv., at last, finally.

dēpōnō, ere, dēposuī, dēpositus (dē + pōnō), *tr.*, lay down, give up.

dēpopulor, ārī, ātus sum (dē + populor), *tr.*, lay waste, ravage.

dēprecātor, ōris (dēprecor, mediate), *m.*, intercessor; eō dēprecātore, through his mediation.

dēscendō, ere, dēscendī, dēscēsum (dē + scandō, climb), *intr.*, descend.

dēscribō, ere, dēscripsī, dēscriptus (dē + scribō), *tr.*, describe.

dēsistō, ere, dēstitī, — (dē + sīstō, stand), *intr.*, cease, leave off.

dēsum, deesse, dēfuī, dēfutūrus (dē + sum), *intr.*, be lacking, fail.

deus, ī, m., god.

dēvincō, ere, dēvīcī, dēvictus (dē + vincō), *tr.*, subdue, conquer.

dēvoveō, ēre, dēvōvī, dēvōtus (dē + voveō), *tr.*, vow, devote.

dexter, dextra, dextrum, right; **dextra, ae, f.**, right hand.

dī-. See **dis-**.

dicō, ere, dīxī, dictus, tr., say, tell, speak; impose (a fine); plead.

dīēs, ēī, m. and f., day.

difficilis, e (dis + facilis), difficult, hard.

difficultās, ātis (difficilis), *f.*, difficulty.

dīligenter (dīligō, esteem). *adv.*, carefully, attentively.

dīligentia, ae (dīligō, esteem), *f.*, carefulness, diligence, industry.

dīmētiōr, īrī, dīmēnsus sum, tr., measure.

dīmīcō, āre, āvī, ātum, intr., fight, contend.

dīmīttō, ere, dīmīsī, dīmīssus (dis + mittō), *tr.*, send off, dismiss, let go.

dīripiō, ere, dīripuī, dīreptus (dis + rapiō), *tr.*, lay waste, pillage, ravage.

dis-, dī-, *inseparable neg. prefix*, apart, not, un-.

discēdō, ere, discēssī, discēssum (dis + cēdō), *intr.*, depart, withdraw, leave.

discipulus, ī (discō), *m.*, pupil.

discō, ere, didicī, —, tr., learn.

discurrō, ere, dis(cu)currī, discursum (dis + currō, run), *intr.*, run in different directions.

dissimilis, e (dis + similis), unlike, dissimilar.

dissimulō, āre, āvī, ātus (dissimilis), *tr.*, conceal, disguise.

distineō, ēre, distinuī, distentus (dis + teneō), *tr.*, keep apart.

distribuō, ere, distribuī, distribūtus (dis + tribuō, assign), *tr.*, distribute, divide.

dīū, adv., long, for a long time; *comp.* dīūtius, *sup.* dīūtissimē.

Dīviciācus, ī, m., a chief of the Haedui.

dīvidō, ere, dīvisī, dīvisus, tr., divide, separate.

dō, dare, dedī, datus, tr., give; **poenās dare,** suffer punishment.
doceō, ēre, docuī, doctus, tr., teach, inform. [by trickery.
dolōsē (dolus, trick), adv., craftily,
domesticus, a, um (domus), domestic; from their own country.
dominus, ī, m., master, lord.
domus, ūs or ī, f., house, home; **domī,** at home; **domum, (to)** home, homeward.
dōnō, āre, āvī, ātus (dōnum), tr., present, give.
dōnum, ī (dō), n., gift.
dubius, a, um, doubtful.
ducentī, ae, a (duo + centum), two hundred. [bring.
dūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, tr., lead, **Duilius, ī, m., Gāius Duilius,** a Roman general, victor over the Carthaginians in a naval battle, 260 B.C.
dum, conj., while, until.
Dumnorix, īgis, m., brother of the Haeduan Diviciacus.
duo, duae, duo, two.
duodecim, indecl., twelve.
duodēvigintī, indecl., eighteen.
dux, ducis (dūcō), m., guide, leader, general.

E

ē. See ex.
ēditus, a, um (ēdō), high, elevated.
ēdō, ēdere, ēdidī, ēditus (ex + dō), tr., give out, give birth to, bear.
edō, edere or ēsse, ēdī, ēsus, tr., eat.
ēdūcō, ere, ēdūxī, ēductus (ex + dūcō), tr., lead out, lead.
offerō, offerre, extulī, ēlātus (ex + ferō), tr., carry out.
effugiō, ere, effūgī, — (ex + fugiō), tr. and intr., escape.

effundō, ere, effūdī, effusus (ex + fundō, pour), tr., pour forth, spread out, overflow.

Ēgeria, ae, f., a nymph reputed to give revelations to Numa.

ēgī. See agō.

ego, meī, pers. pron., I.

ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum, intr., go out, come forth.

eius. See is.

ēliciō, ere, ēlicuī, ēlicitus (ex + laciō, allure), tr., lure forth, bring out, call down.

ēligō, ere, ēlēgī, ēlēctus (ex + legō, choose), tr., select, pick out, choose.

ēmigrō, āre, āvī, ātum (ex + migrō, migrate), intr., emigrate, remove.

enim, conj., for.

ēnūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus (ex + nūntiō), tr., announce, reveal.

eō, īre, iī, itum, intr., go.

eō (is), adv., there, to that place, thither.

eques, equitis (equus), m., horseman; *pl.*, cavalry, cavalrymen.

equester, equestris, equestre (eques), of the cavalry, equestrian.

equitātus, ūs (eques), m., cavalry.

equus, ī, m., horse.

ēripiō, ere, ēripiū, ēreptus (ex + rapiō), tr., snatch away, save.

erō, eris, etc. See sum.

ēruptiō, ōnis (ērumpō, break forth), f., breaking out, sally.

esse. See sum.

ēsse. See edō.

et, conj., and; **et... et,** both... and.

etiam (et + iam), conj., besides, still, **Eurōpa, ae, f.,** Europe. [even.

ēvādō, ere, ēvāsī, ēvāsūm (ex + vādō, go), intr., go out, escape.

ex or **ē**, *prep. w. abl.*, out of, from, of ;
ūnā ex parte, on one side ; **ex itinere**, on the march.
excōgitō, āre, āvī, ātus (**ex + cōgitō**, think), *tr.*, think out, contrive.
exeō, exīre, exīi, exitūrus (**ex + eō**), *intr.*, go out, depart, leave.
exercitō, āre, āvī, ātus (**exerceō**, train), *tr.*, exercise, train.
exercitus, ūs (**exerceō**, train), *m.*, army.
exīstimō, āre, āvī, ātus (**ex + aestimō**, consider), *tr.*, think, suppose, believe.
expeditus, a, um (**expediō**, free), unincumbered, without baggage.
expellō, ere, expulī, expulsus (**ex + pellō**) *tr.*, drive out, expel.
explōrātor, ōris (**explōrō**), *m.*, scout.
explōrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *tr.*, search, ascertain, reconnoiter.
expōnō, ere, exposuī, expositus (**ex + pōnō**), *tr.*, expose, abandon.
expositiō, ōnis (**expōnō**), *f.*, exposure, abandonment.
expugnō, āre, āvī, ātus (**ex + pugnō**), *tr.*, capture, take by storm, storm.
expectō, āre, āvī, ātus (**ex + spectō**), *tr.*, look, wait for, await, expect, wait to see.
extinguō, ere, extīnxī, extinctus (**ex + stinguō**, put out), *tr.*, extinguish, destroy, kill.
exterus, externa, exterum, outer ; *comp.* exterior, *sup.* extrēmus, last, end of.
extrā, prep. w. acc., outside of, beyond.
extrēmus. See **exterus**.

F

faber, fabrī, m., mechanic, workman, artisan.

fabricō, āre, āvī, ātus (**faber**), *tr.*, make, construct, build.
fābula, ae (**for, speak**), *f.*, story.
facile (**facilis**), *adv.*, easily ; *comp.* **facilius, sup.** **facillimē**.
facilis, e (**faciō**), easy.
faciō, ere, fēcī, factus, tr., make, do, form, build ; **verba facere**, speak ; **proelium facere**, fight a battle.
factum, ī (**faciō**), *n.*, deed.
fallō, ere, fefellī, falsus, tr., deceive ; **spem sē fefellisse**, that they were disappointed in their hope.
familia, ae (**famulus, slave**), *f.*, household, vassals.
fāstus, a, um (**fās, right**), legal, court—.
Faustus, ī, m., the shepherd who brought up Romulus and Remus.
fefellī. See **fallō**.
fēmina, ae, f., woman.
ferāx, ferācis (**ferō**), fertile, productive.
ferē, adv., nearly, about, almost.
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, tr., bear, carry ; **lēgem ferre**, propose, institute a law.
ferreus, a, um (**ferrum, iron**), (of) iron ; **ferreae manūs**, grappling-irons.
fertilitās, ātis (**fertilis, fertile**), *f.*, fertility.
ferus, a, um, fierce, wild, barbarous.
fidēs, eī (**fidō, trust**), *f.*, faith, confidence, trust ; **in fidem venīre**, put one's self under the protection of.
fidus, a, um, faithful, loyal.
filia, ae, f., daughter.
filius, ī, m., son.
fīnis, is, m., limit, end, boundary ; *pl.*, territory.
fīnitimus, a, um (**fīnis**), adjoining, neighboring ; *as subst.*, **fīnitimus, ī, m.**, neighbor.

fiō, fierī, factus sum (*used as passive of faciō*), be made, become; **certainior fierī**, be informed.

flāmen, flāminis, m., Flamen, a priest devoted to the worship of one special god.

flūmen, flūminis (fluō), n., river.

fluō, ere, flūxī, fluxus, intr., flow.

foculus, ī (dim. of focus, hearth), m., fire pan, brazier.

fōns, fontis, m., fountain, spring.

fore = futūrum esse.

foret = esset.

fōrma, ae, f., shape, form.

fors, fortis, f., chance; **forte**, by chance; **forte erat effūsus**, happened to have overflowed.

fortis, e, brave.

fortiter (fortis), adv., bravely.

fortūna, ae (fors), f., fortune, good fortune.

forum, ī, n., market place, forum.

fossa, ae (fodiō, dig), f., ditch, trench.

frāter, frātris, m., brother.

frūmentārius, a, um (frūmentum), of grain; **rēs frūmentāria**, supplies of grain, provisions.

frūmentum, ī (fruor), n., grain.

fruor, fruī, frūctus sum, intr., w. abl., enjoy.

fuga, ae, f., flight; **in fugam dare**, put to flight.

fugiō, ere, fūgī, —, intr., flee, run away.

fulmen, inis (fulgeō, flash), n., thunderbolt, lightning.

fūmus, ī, m., smoke.

fūnāle, is (fūnis, cord), n., torch.

funditor, ōris (funda, sling), m., slinger. [madness.]

furor, ōris (furō, rage), m., rage,

fūrtum, ī (fūr, thief), n., theft.

futūrus. See **sum**.

G

G. = Gāius, ī, m., a Roman name.

Galba, ae, m.: (1) a lieutenant of Caesar; (2) a king of the Suesiones.

Gallia, ae, f., Gaul.

Gallus, a, um, Gallic; *as subst.*, **Gallus, ī, m.**, a Gaul.

Garumna, ae, f., a river of Gaul, modern Garonne.

Gaurus, ī, m., a mountain of Campania.

geminus, a, um, twin, two-headed; *as subst.*, **geminī, ōrum, m. pl.**, twins.

Genāva, ae, f., a city of the Allobroges, modern Geneva.

gēns, gentis (gignō, bear), f., tribe, nation, race.

genus, generis (gēns), n., kind, class, species.

Germānus, ī, m., German.

gerō, ere, gessī, gestus, tr., bear, carry, carry on, wage; *pass.*, go on, take place; **mātrēm sē gessit**, bore herself or acted as a mother.

gladius, ī, m., sword.

gracilis, e, slender.

Graecia, ae, f., Greece.

Graecus, ī, m., Greek.

grātia, ae (grātus), f., favor, influence; kindness; **grātiā, w. gen.**, for the sake of, for the purpose of.

grātulor, āri, ātus sum (grātus), tr., congratulate.

grātus, a, um, pleasing, acceptable, agreeable.

gravis, e, heavy, hard.

graviter (gravis), adv., severely.

H

habēō, ēre, habuī, habitus, tr., have, hold; consult (*auspicia*).

Haeduus, ī, m., Haeduan.

Hannibal, alis, m.: (1) a Carthaginian commander defeated by Duilius; (2) a Carthaginian general, son of Hamilcar, 247-183 B.C., defeated by Scipio at Zama, 202 B.C.

hasta, ae, f., spear.

haud, adv., not.

Helvētius, a, um, Helvetian; as subst., Helvētīi, ōrum, m. pl., Helvetians.

hīberna, ōrum (hiems), n. pl., winter quarters.

hīc, haec, hoc, dem. pron., this; the latter; he, she, it.

hiemō, āre, āvī, ātum (hiems), intr., winter, pass the winter.

hiems, hiemis, f., winter.

hinc (hīc), adv., hence; **hinc . . . hinc,** in one place . . . in another, here . . . there.

Hispania, ae, f., Spain.

hodiē (hīc + diēs), adv., to-day.

homō, hominis, m. and f., man, human being.

honor, ōris, m., honor.

hōra, ae, f., hour.

hortor, ārī, ātus sum, tr., urge, encourage.

hortus, ī, m., garden.

hospes, hospitis, m. and f., guest, host.

Hostilius, ī, m., the name of a Roman family; **Hostus Hostilius,** a general in the time of Romulus; **Tullus Hostilius,** third king of Rome.

hostis, is, m., enemy.

Hostus. See **Hostilius.**

hūc (hīc), adv., hither, to this place.

humilis, e (humus), low.

humus, ī, f., ground; **humī,** on the ground.

I

iaciō, ere, iēcī, iactus, tr., throw, hurl; construct (*aggerem*).

iacitō, āre, —, — (iactō, boast), intr., boast, brag.

iam, adv., now, already, soon.

Iāniculum, ī, m., one of the hills of Rome, west of the Tiber.

Iānuārius, ī (Iānus), m., January.

Iānus, ī, m., Janus, an old Latin divinity, represented with two faces.

ibi, adv., there, in that place.

Iccius, ī, m., one of the Remi.

īdem, eadem, idem (is + dem), dem. pron. and adj., the same.

identidem, adv., again and again.

idōneus, a, um, suitable, fit.

īdūs, Īduum, f. pl., the Ides (15th of March, May, July, and October, 13th of the other months).

ignis, is, m., fire.

ignōminia, ae, f., dishonor, disgrace.

ignōrō, āre, āvī, ātus (ignārus, ignorant), tr., not to know.

ille, illa, illud, dem. pron. and adj., that; he, she, it; the former.

imāgō, inis, f., likeness, semblance.

imbellis, e (in neg. + bellum), unwarlike, cowardly.

imbuō, ere, imbuī, imbūtus, tr., wet; inspire.

immineō, ēre, imminuī, —, intr., overhang.

immittō, ere, immīsī, immissus (in + mittō), tr., send into, let into, hurl.

impedimentum, ī (impediō), n., hindrance; *pl.*, baggage.

- impediō, īre, impedīvī, impedītus** (in + pēs), *tr.*, entangle, hinder, impede.
- impellō, ere, impulī, impulsus** (in + pellō), *tr.*, urge, impel, incite.
- impendeō, ēre, —, —** (in + pendeō, hang), *intr.*, overhang.
- imperātor, ōris (imperō), m.**, commander, commander in chief, general.
- imperātum, ī (imperō), n.**, order, command.
- imperium, ī (imperō), n.**, order, command, power, government, rule; **nova imperia**, revolution.
- imperō, āre, āvī, ātum** (in + parō), *intr., w. dat.*, command, order, rule.
- impetrō, āre, āvī, ātus, tr.**, obtain, secure, gain.
- impetus, ūs (impetō, attack), m.**, assault, attack, onset.
- impius, a, um** (in *neg.* + **pius**, reverent), wicked, impious.
- impōnō, ere, imposuī, impositus** (in + pōnō), *tr.*, place in.
- imprōvīsus, a, um** (in *neg.* + **prōvīsus**, foreseen), sudden; **dē imprōvīsō**, unexpectedly, suddenly.
- īmus.** See **īnferus**.
- in-**, *negative inseparable prefix*, un-, not.
- in**, *prep. w. acc. and abl.; w. acc.*, into, against, toward, forward; *w. abl.*, in, on, upon, over.
- incendō, ere, incendiī, incēnsus** (in + candeō, glow), *tr.*, set fire to, burn.
- incidō, ere, incidī, —** (in + cadō), *intr.*, occur.
- incitō, āre, āvī, ātus** (in + citō, move swiftly), *tr.*, urge on, incite, encourage, arouse, rouse.
- inclinō, āre, āvī, ātus, tr. and intr.**, bend, incline, yield.
- inclutus, a, um**, famous.
- incola, ae (incolō), m. and f.**, inhabitant.
- incolō, ere, incoluī, —, tr.**, dwell, live.
- incolumis, e**, unharmed, safe.
- incrēdibilis, e** (in *neg.* + **crēdibilis**, believable), incredible.
- increpitō, āre, āvī, ātus (increpō), tr.**, exclaim, upbraid, taunt.
- increpō, āre, increpuī, increpitus, tr.**, sound, scold, exclaim.
- incūsō, āre, āvī, ātus** (in + **causa**), *tr.*, accuse, blame.
- inde, adv.**, thence, thereupon, then.
- index, indicis (indicō), m.**, sign, mark.
- indicium, ī (indicō), n.**, information; **per indicium**, by informers.
- indicō, āre, āvī, ātus** (in + **dicō**, declare), *tr.*, announce, reveal.
- indīcō, ere, indixī, indictus** (in + **dicō**), *tr.*, proclaim, announce, appoint.
- infēlix, infēlicis** (in *neg.* + **fēlix**, happy), unhappy, ill-fated.
- īnferior.** See **īnferus**.
- īnfero, īnferre, intulī, inlātus** (in + **ferō**), *tr.*, carry in, bring in; **sē īnferre**, betake one's self; **sīgna īnferre**, charge.
- īnferus, a, um**, below; *comp.* **īnferior**, lower, inferior; *sup.* **īnfīmus** or **īmus**, lowest, bottom of, foot of, at the foot of.
- īnfestō, āre, āvī, ātus (īnfestus), tr.**, annoy.
- īnfestus, a, um**, hostile.
- īnfīmus.** See **īnferus**.

- influō, ere, inflūxī, influxum** (in + fluō), *intr.*, flow into, empty into.
ingēns, ingentis, huge, vast.
ingredior, ingredī, ingressus sum (in + gradior, go), *intr.*, go into, enter.
iniciō, ere, iniēcī, iniectus (in + iaciō), *tr.*, put in.
inimicus, a, um (in *neg.* + amīcus), hostile.
iniquus, a, um (in *neg.* + aequus), unfavorable, disadvantageous.
initium, ī (ineō, begin), *n.*, beginning.
iniūria, ae, f., injury, violence.
inopia, ae (inops, without means), *f.*, want, lack.
inquam, def., say; **inquit**, said he.
inrideō, ēre, inrisī, inrisus (in + rideō, laugh), *tr.*, laugh at, jeer, ridicule.
insānus, a, um (in *neg.* + sānus, sound), mad.
insequor, insequī, insecūtus sum (in + sequor), *tr.*, follow, pursue.
insideō, ēre, insēdī, insessus (in + sedeō), *tr.*, occupy.
insidiae, ārum (insideō), *f. pl.*, ambush, treachery.
insidior, arī, ātus sum (insidiae), *intr.*, *w. dat.*, lie in wait for, ambush.
insignis, e (sīgnum), remarkable, distinguished.
insiliō, ire, insilūi, insultus (in + saliō, leap), *tr.*, leap on.
instar, n. indecl., likeness; **instar mūrī**, like a wall.
instituō, ere, institui, institūtus (in + statuō), *tr.*, form, establish.
institutum, ī (instituō), *n.*, purpose, custom, institution.
- instruō, ere, instrūxī, instrūctus** (in + struō, build), *tr.*, arrange, draw up, form.
insula, ae, f., island.
insum, inesse, infui, infutūrus (in + sum), *intr.*, *w. dat.*, be in, be among.
intelligō, ere, intellēxī, intellēctus (inter + legō), *tr.*, learn, perceive, know.
intempestus, a, um (in *neg.* + tempus), stormy.
inter, prep. w. acc., between, among, during; **dare inter sē**, exchange; **cohortātī inter sē**, encouraging one another.
intercēdō, ere, intercessī, intercessum (inter + cēdō), *intr.*, lie between, intervene.
interea (inter + is), *adv.*, meantime, meanwhile.
interficiō, ere, interfēcī, interfectus (inter + faciō), *tr.*, kill.
interim, adv., meanwhile.
interior, interius (inter), inner, interior of; *sup.* intimus.
interscindō, ere, interscidī, interscissus (inter + scindō, break down), *tr.*, cut down, destroy.
intersum, interesse, interfuī, interfutūrus (inter + sum), *intr.*, be among, be present.
intimus. See interior.
intrā (inter), *prep. w. acc.*, in, during.
intrō, āre, āvī, ātus, tr., enter.
intrōducō, ere, intrōdūxī, intrōductus (intrō, within + dūcō), *tr.*, lead in.
intrōrsus (intrō, within + versus), *adv.*, inside, within.
intulī. See inferō.
inūtilis, e (in *neg.* + ūtilis), useless.

- inveniō, ire, invēnī, inventus** (in + veniō), *tr. and intr.*, come upon, find.
- inveterāscō, ere, inveterāvī**, — (in + vēterāscō, grow old), *intr.*, become established.
- invictus, a, um** (in *neg.* + vincō), unconquered.
- invītus, a, um**, unwilling.
- Iovi.** See **Iuppiter**.
- ipse, ipsa, ipsum**, *determ. pron.*, self, himself, herself, itself; he, she, it; very; even.
- irātus, a, um** (irāscor, be angry), angered, in anger.
- is, ea, id**, *determ. pron. and adj.*, he, she, it; this, that; **is quī**, he (one, a man) who.
- iste, ista, istud**, *determ. pron. and adj.*, that (of yours).
- ita** (is), *adv.*, thus, so.
- Italia, ae, f**, Italy.
- itaque** (is), *conj.*, and so, accordingly, therefore.
- item** (is), *adv.*, likewise, also.
- iter, itineris, n.**, journey, march; road, way, right of way; **iter facere**, march; **ex itinere**, on the march; **magnum iter**, forced march.
- iterum**, *adv.*, again, a second time.
- itum, itūrus.** See **eō**.
- iubeō, ēre, iussī, iussus, tr., w. inf.**, order, bid, command.
- iūdicium, ī** (iūdex, judge), *n.*, judgment, trial.
- iūdicō, āre, āvī, ātus** (iūdex, judge), *tr.*, judge.
- iugum, ī** (iungō), *n.*, yoke; **sub iugum mittere**, send under the yoke (*made of spears crossed, in token of complete surrender*).
- iūmentum, ī** (iungō), *n.*, pack animal.
- iungō, ere, iūnxī, iunctus, tr.**, join, fasten together.
- iūnior, comp.** of **iuvenis**.
- Iuppiter, Iovis, m.**, Jupiter, chief of the Roman gods.
- Iūra, ae, f.**, the Jura Mountains, reaching from the Rhine to the Rhone.
- iūsiurandum, iūrisiurandī** (iūs, law + iūrō, swear), *n.*, oath.
- iūstitia, ae** (iūstus, just), *f.*, justice, uprightness.
- iuvenis, e**, young; *comp.* **iūnior**; *as subst.* **iuvenis, is, m.**, young man, youth.
- iuvō, āre, iūvī, iūtus, tr.**, help, aid.

L

- Labiēnus, ī, m.**, one of Caesar's lieutenants.
- labor, ōris, m.**, labor, work.
- labōrō, āre, āvī, ātūrus** (labor), *intr.*, work, toil, suffer, be hard pressed.
- laccessō, ere, laccessīvī, laccessitus, tr.**, attack, harass.
- lacus, ūs, m.**, lake.
- laetus, a, um**, glad.
- laevus, a, um**, left.
- lapis, lapidis, m.**, stone.
- largitiō, ōnis** (largior, lavish), *f.*, liberality; bribery.
- lateō, ēre, latuī**, —, *intr.*, be concealed, lie hid.
- Latinus, a, um**, Latin.
- lātitudō, inis** (lātus), *f.*, width, breadth.
- Latobrigī, ōrum, m. pl.**, a Gallic tribe near the Helvetii.
- latrō, ōnis, m.**, robber, brigand.
- lātus, a, um**, broad, wide.
- lātus.** See **ferō**.

latus, lateris, *n.*, side, flank.
 laudō, āre, āvī, ātus (laus, praise),
tr., praise, commend.
 lēgātīō, ōnis (legō, commission), *f.*,
 embassy, deputation.
 lēgātus, ī (legō, commission), *m.*, am-
 bassador, envoy; lieutenant.
 legiō, ōnis (legō), *f.*, legion.
 legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus, *tr.*, choose.
 Lemannus, ī, lacus Lemannus, Lake
 of Geneva.
 lēnis, e, smooth, gentle.
 levitās, ātis (levis, light), *f.*, light-
 ness, fickleness.
 lēx, lēgis (legō), *f.*, law; lēgem ferre,
 propose, establish a law.
 liber, librī, *m.*, book.
 liber, libera, liberum, free; *as subst.*
 liberī, ōrum, *m. pl.*, children.
 liberō, āre, āvī, ātus (liber), *tr.*, lib-
 erate, free.
 libertās, ātis (liber), *f.*, freedom,
 liberty.
 licet, licēre, licuit, *impers.*, it is
 allowed, permitted.
 lineāmentum, ī (līnea, line), *m.*,
 feature.
 littera, ae (linō, smear), *f.*, letter (of
 the alphabet); *pl.*, letters (epistles),
 documents.
 locus, ī, *m.*; *pl.*, locī and loca, place,
 position.
 longē (longus), *adv.*, far, far off.
 longus, a, um, long, distant.
 lūcus, ī, *m.*, grove.
 lūdibrium, ī (lūdus), *n.*, jest, mock-
 ery.
 lūdicer, lūdica, lūdicum (lūdus),
 sportive, playful.
 lūdus, ī, *m.*, play, sport, game.
 lūna, ae, *f.*, moon.

lupa, ae, *f.*, she-wolf.
 lūstrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *tr.*, purify; re-
 view, inspect.
 lūx, lūcis, *f.*, light, daylight; **primā**
 lūce, at daybreak.
 lūxuria, ae, *f.*, excess, luxury.

M

māchina, ae, *f.*, engine, contrivance.
 magis (*comp. of multum*), *adv.*, more,
 rather.
 magister, magistrī, *m.*, master,
 teacher.
 magistrātus, ūs (magister), *m.*, mag-
 istrate, officer.
 magnitūdō, inis (magnus), *f.*, size,
 greatness.
 magnopere (magnus + opus), *adv.*,
 very greatly.
 magnus, a, um, large, great; *comp.*
 maior, *sup.* maximus; maior nā-
 tū, older; maximus nātū, oldest.
 maior. *See* magnus.
 male (malus), *adv.*, badly; *comp.*
 peius, *sup.* pessimē.
 mālō, mālle, mālui (magis + volō),
tr. and intr., be more willing, prefer.
 malus, a, um, bad, evil, wicked; *comp.*
 peior, *sup.* pessimus.
 Māmurius, ī, *m.*, a Roman smith in
 the time of Numa.
 mandātum, ī (mandō), *n.*, order,
 command.
 mandō, āre, āvī, ātus, *tr.*, order,
 command.
 maneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, *intr.*,
 remain, stay.
 Mānēs, ium, *m. pl.*, the Manes, shades
 of the dead.
 Mānlius, ī, *m.*, Titus Mānlius Tor-
 quātus, consul 343 B.C.

- mānsuētūdō, inis** (**mānsuētus**, tame), *f.*, mildness, clemency.
- manus, ūs, f.**, hand, band; **manūs ferreae**, grappling irons.
- Mārcus, ī, m.**, a Roman name.
- mare, maris, n.**, sea; **marī**, by sea.
- maritimus, a, um** (**mare**), of the sea, maritime.
- Mārs, Martis, m.**, Mars, the Roman god of war.
- māter, mātris, f.**, mother; **mātrēm sē gessit**, bore herself, acted like, a mother.
- mātrimōnium, ī** (**māter**), *n.*, marriage; **in mātrimōnium dūcere**, marry.
- mātūrō, āre, āvī, ātum, intr.**, hasten, hurry.
- maximē** (**maximus**), *adv.*, very greatly, especially.
- maximus.** *See magnus.*
- Maximus, ī, m.**, a Roman cognomen. *See Valerius.*
- mē, meī.** *See ego.*
- medius, a, um**, middle; **per mediōs cūstōdēs**, through the midst of the guards; **quem medium**, the middle of which.
- melior.** *See bonus.*
- melius.** *See bene.*
- memoria, ae, f.**, memory.
- mēns, mentis, f.**, mind.
- mēnsa, ae, f.**, table.
- mēnsis, is, m.**, month.
- mercātor, ōris** (**mercōr**, trade), *m.*, trader, merchant.
- Mercurius, ī, m.**, Mercury, god of trade, and messenger of the gods.
- mergō, ere, mersī, mersus, tr.**, dip, sink.
- metus, ūs, m.**, fear, terror.
- meus, a, um, poss. adj.**, my, mine.
- mihi.** *See ego.*
- mīles, militis, m.**, soldier.
- militāris, e** (**mīles**), military.
- mīlle, indecl. adj. and noun**, thousand; *pl.* **mīllia**, always *noun*; **mīlle passūs, mille passuum**, a Roman mile.
- minimē** (**minimus**). *See parum.*
- minimus, a, um** (*used as sup. of parvus*), smallest, least.
- minor, minus** (*see parvus*), smaller, less; **minor nātū**, younger.
- minus** (*used as comp. of parum*), *adv.*, less; **nihilō minus**, nevertheless; **sī minus**, if not.
- mīrābilis, e** (**mīror**, wonder), wonderful.
- mīrāculum, ī** (**mīror**, wonder), *n.*, wonder, prodigy.
- mīrus, a, um**, wonderful, surprising.
- miser, misera, miserum**, wretched, poor.
- miserē** (**miser**), *adv.*, wretchedly.
- mītīgō, āre, āvī, ātus** (**mītis**, mild + **agō**), *tr.*, soften, civilize.
- mittō, ere, mīsī, missus, tr.**, send, hurl.
- mōbilitās, ātis** (**mōbilis**, changeable), *f.*, fickleness.
- moenia, moenium, n. pl.**, walls, fortifications.
- moneō, ēre, monuī, monitus, tr.**, warn, advise.
- monitus, ūs** (**moneō**), *m.*, warning, counsel, suggestion.
- mōns, montis, m.**, mountain.
- mora, ae, f.**, delay.
- morbū, ī, m.**, sickness, illness; **morbō exstinctus**, died a natural death.
- moriōr, morī, mortuus sum, intr.**, die.
- moror, ārī, ātus sum** (**mora**), *intr.*, delay, hinder.

mors, mortis, f., death.
mōs, mōris, m., custom, habit.
moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus, tr., move, influence; **castra movēre**, break up camp.
mox, adv., soon.
Mūcius, ī, m., the name of a Roman family; **Gāius Mūcius Scaevola**, a Roman who attempted to kill Porsena.
Mūcius, a, um (Mūcius), Mucian.
mulier, mulieris, f., woman, wife.
multa, ae, f., fine, penalty.
multitūdō, inis (multus), f., numbers, multitude.
multō (abl. of multus), adv., much.
multum (multus), adv., much, greatly.
multus, a, um, much; pl., many; **multā nocte**, late at night; **ad multam noctem**, till late at night.
Mūnātius, ī, m., **Lūcius Mūnātius Plancus**, one of Caesar's lieutenants.
mūnīmentum, ī (mūniō), n., defense, fortification.
mūniō, īre, mūnīvī or mūniī, mūnītus, tr., fortify, defend.
mūnītiō, ōnis (mūniō), f., fortification.
mūnus, eris, n., gift, reward.
mūrus, ī, m., wall.

N

nactus. See nancīscor.
nam, conj., for.
nancīscor, nancīscī, nactus sum, tr., get, obtain.
nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, intr., be born, be produced; rise.
nātiō, ōnis (nāscor), f., nation, tribe, people.

nātū (nāscor), in age; **maior nātū**, older; **minor nātū**, younger.
nātūra, ae (nāscor), f., nature, character.
nauta, ae (nāvis), m., sailor.
nāvālis, e (nāvis), of ships, naval.
nāvis, is, f., ship.
-ne, enclitic, sign of an interrogative.
nē, conj., not, so that not, lest; *after verbs of fearing*, that.
nec. See neque.
necō, āre, āvī, ātus (nex), tr., kill, put to death.
nefāstus, a, um (nefās, crime), unhallowed; unpropitious; **diēs nefāstus**, a day on which public business could not be transacted.
negō, āre, āvī, ātus, tr. and intr., deny, say . . . not.
negōtium, ī, n., business, affair; **quicquam negōtī**, any trouble.
nēmō, nēminem (nē + homō), m. and f., no one, nobody.
nemus, nemoris, n., grove.
nepōs, nepōtis, m., grandson, descendant.
neque, nec, conj., and not, but not; **neque . . . neque**, neither . . . nor.
Nerviī, ōrum, m., a powerful tribe of Belgic Gaul.
neuter, neutra, neutrum (nē + uter), neither (of two).
nex, necis, f., death, murder.
niger, nigra, nigrum, black.
nihil, indecl. n., nothing.
nihilō, adv., in no respect; **nihilō minus**, nevertheless. [except.
nisi (nē + sī), conj., if not, unless,
nōbilis, e (nōsco, know), noble.
nōbilitās, ātis (nōbilis), f., nobility, nobles.

noceō, ēre, nocuī, nocitūrus, intr.,
w. dat., hurt, injure, harm.

nocturnus, a, um (nox), by night, in the night.

nōlo, nōlle, nōluī (nē + volō), tr. and intr., not to wish, be unwilling ;
nōlītē, w. infin., do not.

nōmen, nōminis (nōsco, know), n., name.

nōminō, āre, āvī, ātus (nōmen), tr., name, call.

nōn, adv., not.

nōndum, adv., not yet.

nōnnullus, a, um (nōn + nullus), some, several.

Nōrēia, ae, f., a town of the Norici, modern Neumarkt.

Nōricus, a, um, Norican ; ager Nōricus, a country between the Danube and the Alps.

nōs, nostrum, pers. pron., we, ourselves.

noster, nostra, nostrum (nōs), poss. adj., our, ours ; *pl.,* **nostrī, ōrum,** our men, our troops.

novem, indecl., nine.

Noviodūnum, ī, n., a town of the Suessiones.

novus, a, um, new ; novissimum, last ; **novissimum agmen,** the rear.

nox, noctis, f., night ; **multā nocte,** late at night ; **ad multam noctem,** till late at night.

nūdō, āre, āvī, ātus (nūdus, bare), tr., make bare, clear.

nullus, a, um (nē + ūllus), no, not any, none, no one.

num, interrog. particle, implying the answer 'no.'

Numa, ae, m. See Pompilius.

numerus, ī, m., number.

Numida, ae, m., Numidian.

Numitor, ōris, m., king of Alba Longa, grandfather of Romulus and Remus.

numquam (nē + umquam, ever), adv., never.

nunc, adv., now.

nūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus (nūntius), tr., report, announce.

nūntius, ī, m., messenger.

nūper, adv., recently, lately.

nusquam (nē + usquam, anywhere), adv., nowhere, on no occasion.

O

ob, prep. w. acc., for, on account of, because of.

obaerātus, ī (ob + aes, money), m., debtor.

obdūcō, ere, obdūxī, obductus (ob + dūcō), tr., extend, make.

obruō, ere, obruī, obrutus (ob + ruō, rush), tr., overwhelm, bury, crush.

obses, obsidis (obsideō), m., hostage, pledge.

obsideō, ēre, obsēdī, obsessus (ob + sedeō), tr., besiege.

obsum, obesse, obfuī, obfutūrus (ob + sum), w. dat., be against, injure.

obtineō, ēre, obtinuī, obtentus (ob + teneō), tr., possess, obtain, retain.

obveniō, īre, obvēnī, obventum (ob + veniō), intr., come to, meet, come.

occāsus, ūs (occidō, fall), m., setting (of the sun).

occidō, ere, occidī, occisus (ob + caedō, cut down), tr., cut down, kill, slay.

occultus, a, um, hidden ; **in occultō,** concealed.

occupō, āre, āvī, ātus (ob + capiō), tr., take possession of, seize, occupy.

Ōceanus, ī, m., ocean.
Ocelum, ī, n., a town of Cisalpine Gaul.
octō, indecl., eight.
oculus, ī, m., eye.
odium, ī (odī, hate), n., hatred, enmity.
omninō (omnis), adv., altogether, at all.
omnis, e, all, every, whole.
opīniō, ōnis (opīnor, think), f., notion, belief, impression.
oportet, oportēre, oportuit, impers., it is necessary, it is proper.
oppidānus, ī (oppidum), m., inhabitant of a town, townsman.
oppidum, ī, n., walled town.
opprimō, ere, oppressī, oppressus (ob + premō, press), tr., crush, fall upon.
oppugnātiō, ōnis (oppugnō), f., assault, storm, siege.
oppugnō, āre, āvī, ātus (ob + pugnō), tr., attack, besiege.
ops, opis, f., aid; *pl.*, resources, wealth.
optimē (optimus), best, excellently. *See bene.*
optimus, a, um, sup. of bonus.
optiō, ōnis (optō), f., choice.
optō, āre, āvī, ātus, wish, choose.
opus, operis, n., work, labor, fortification.
ōrātiō, ōnis (ōrō), f., speech, words.
ōrdinō, āre, āvī, ātus (ōrdō), tr., arrange, regulate.
ōrdō, ōrdinis, m., line, rank.
Orgetorix, īgis, m., a chief of the Helvetii.
orior, orīrī, ortus sum, intr., rise.
ōrnātus, ūs (ōrnō, adorn), m., attire, decoration.

ōrō, āre, āvī, ātus (ōs), tr., beseech, beg.
ortus. See orior.
ōs, ōris, n., mouth, face.

P

P. = Pūblius.
pācō, āre, āvī, ātus (pāx), tr., pacify, subdue.
pāene, adv., almost, nearly.
palam, adv., openly, publicly.
palūs, ūdis, f., marsh, swamp.
pandō, ere, pandī, passus, tr., spread out; **passīs manibus,** with outstretched hands.
pār, paris, equal (to).
parātus, a, um (parō), prepared, ready.
pāreō, ēre, pārui, pāritūrus, intr. w. dat., obey.
parō, āre, āvī, ātus, tr., prepare, provide.
pars, partis, f., part, side, direction.
parum, adv., little; *comp.* **minus;** *sup.* **minimē.**
parvulus, a, um (parvus), very little; *as subst.* **parvulus, ī, m.,** little fellow.
parvus, a, um, little, small; *comp.* **minor;** *sup.* **minimus.**
passus. See pandō and patior.
passus, ūs, m., pace; **mille passūs, pl. mīllia passuum,** a mile.
pāstor, ōris (pāscō, feed), m., shepherd.
pateō, ēre, patuī, —, intr., be open, extend.
pater, patris, m., father.
patior, patī, passus sum, tr., suffer, allow, endure.
patria, ae (patrius), f., country, native land.

- patrius, a, um (pater), ancestral.
 paucī, ōrum, few.
 paulisper, *adv.*, for a short time.
 paululum (paulus, small), *adv.*, a little, somewhat.
 pāx, pācis, *f.*, peace.
 peccō, āre, āvī, ātus, *intr.*, transgress, offend.
 pecūnia, ae (pecus), *f.*, money.
 pecus, pecoris, *n.*, cattle, herd.
 pedes, peditis (pēs), *m.*, foot soldier; *pl.*, infantry.
 Pedius, ī, *m.*, Quintus Pedius, one of Caesar's lieutenants.
 peior, *comp.* of malus.
 peius, *comp.* of male.
 pello, ere, pepulī, pulsus, *tr.*, drive out, expel, rout, conquer.
 per, *prep.* w. *acc.*, through, over, by, across, by means of.
 peragrō, āre, āvī, ātus (per + ager), *tr.*, wander through, roam over.
 perdūcō, ere, perdūxī, perductus (per + dūcō), *tr.*, lead, lead through, construct.
 perennis, e (per + annus), perpetual, never failing.
 perficiō, ere, perfēcī, perfectus (per + faciō), *tr.*, accomplish, finish, complete.
 perfidus, a, um (per + fidus), faithless, treacherous.
 perīclitor, ārī, ātus sum, *tr.*, make trial of, try.
 perīculum, ī, *n.*, danger.
 perītus, a, um, skillful.
 permittō, ere, permīsī, permissus (per + mittō), *tr.*, give up, intrust, permit.
 permoveō, ēre, permōvī, permōtus (per + moveō), *tr.*, move, arouse, influence, alarm.
 perpetuō (perpetuus, continuous), *adv.*, continually, forever.
 perrumpō, ere, perrūpī, perruptus (per + rumpō, break), *tr.*, break through.
 perspicio, ere, perspēxī, perspectus (per + speciō, see), *tr.*, see through.
 persuādeō, ēre, persuāsī, persuāsum (per + suādeō, persuade), *tr.*, w. *dat.* of *pers.*, persuade, prevail on.
 pertineō, ēre, pertinūī, — (per + teneō), *intr.*, extend, pertain, relate.
 pertrāctus. *See* pertrahō.
 pertrahō, ere, pertrāxī, pertrāctus (per + trahō), *tr.*, drag, lead.
 perveniō, ire, pervēnī, perventum, (per + veniō) *intr.*, arrive at, reach.
 pēs, pedis, *m.*, foot.
 pessimē, *sup.* of male.
 pessimus, *sup.* of malus.
 petō, ere, petīvī or petiī, petītus, *tr.*, aim at, seek, ask, demand, request.
 pietās, ātis (pius, pious), *f.*, devotion, loyalty.
 piger, pigra, pigrum, slow, lazy.
 pignus, pignoris, *n.*, pledge, assurance.
 pīlum, ī, *n.*, javelin.
 pirus, ī, *f.*, pear tree.
 Plancus, ī. *See* Mūnātius.
 plānitiēs, ēī (plānus, flat), *f.*, plain, level ground.
 plēbēs, ēī, or plēbs, plēbis, *f.*, common people.
 plērusque, plēraque, plērumque, *generally in plural*, most, very many.
 plūrimus, a, um (*sup.* of multus), most, very many; plūrimum posse, be very powerful, have most influence, be supreme.
 plūs, *comp.* of multum.

- plūs, plūris** (*comp. of multus*), more; *pl.*, several, more.
- pōculum, ī, n.**, drinking cup.
- poena, ae, f.**, punishment, penalty; **poenās dare**, suffer punishment.
- Poenī, ōrum, m. pl.**, Carthaginians.
- polliceor, ēri, pollicitus sum**, promise.
- Pompēius, ī, m.**, Pompey.
- Pompilius, ī, m.**, Numa Pompilius, second king of Rome.
- pōnō, ere, posuī, positus, tr.**, place, put, pitch (a camp).
- pōns, pontis, m.**, bridge.
- poposcī.** See **poscō**.
- populor, ārī, ātus sum (populus)**, *tr.*, ravage, lay waste.
- populus, ī, m.**, people.
- Porsena, ae, f.**, king of Clusium in Etruria.
- porta, ae, f.**, gate, door.
- portō, āre, āvī, ātus, tr.**, carry, bring.
- portus, ūs, m.**, port, harbor.
- poscō, ere, poposcī, —, tr.**, ask, demand.
- possideō, ēre, possēdī, —, tr.**, hold, occupy.
- possum, posse, potuī, —, be able, can; plūrimum posse, be very powerful.**
- post, adv.**, afterwards, later.
- post, prep. w. acc.**, after, behind.
- postea (post + is), adv.**, afterwards.
- posterus, a, um**, following, next; *comp. posterior; sup. postrēmus*.
- postquam (post + quam), conj.**, after.
- postrīdiē (posterus + diēs), adv.**, on the following day.
- postulō, āre, āvī, ātus, tr.**, demand, ask.
- potēns, potentis, adj. (pres. part. of possum)**, powerful, able.
- potentātus, ūs (potēns), m.**, supreme power, rule.
- potestās, ātis (potis, able), f.**, power, authority, privilege.
- potior, potirī, potitus sum (potis, able), intr., w. abl.**, get possession of.
- prae, prep. w. abl.**, before.
- praebeō, ēre, praebuī, praebitus (prae + habeō), tr.**, furnish, supply.
- praecinō, ere, praecinūī, — (prae + canō, sing), tr.**, play before.
- praeda, ae, f.**, booty, spoil.
- praeficiō, ere, praefēcī, praefectus (prae + faciō), tr.**, set over, put in charge of.
- praelūcēō, ēre, praelūxī, — (prae + lūcēō, shine), intr.**, shine before.
- praemittō, ere, praemīsī, praemissus (prae + mittō), tr.**, send ahead, dispatch.
- praemium, ī, n.**, reward.
- praescribō, ere, praescripsī, praescriptus (prae + scribō), tr.**, direct, order.
- praesidium, ī (praesideō, defend), n.**, guard, defense, garrison.
- praestō, praestāre, praestitī, praestitus (prae + stō, stand), intr.**, stand before, surpass, excel; *tr.*, show.
- praesum, praesesse, praefuī, praefutūrus (prae + sum), intr., w. dat.**, be at head of, be in charge of, command. [besides.
- praetereā (praeter, beyond + is), adv.**, on
- praeveniō, ire, praevēnī, praeventus (prae + veniō), tr.**, come before, outstrip, forestall.

- prātum, ī, n.**, field, meadow.
- prīmō (prīmus), adv.**, at first.
- prīmum (prīmus), adv.**, first; **quam prīmum**, as soon as possible.
- prīmus, a, um**, first; **prīmā lūce**, at daybreak; **prīmus dēvīcit**, was the first to conquer.
- prīnceps, prīncipis (prīmus + capiō), m.**, chief, leader, author.
- prior, prius (prō)**, former, previous.
- priusquam (prius, sooner + quam), conj.**, before, sooner than.
- prīvātus, a, um (prīvō, deprive)**, private.
- prō, prep. w. abl.**, before, in front of, for, in behalf of, in proportion to, in place of; **comp. prior**; **sup. prīmus**.
- Proca, ae, m.**, a king of Alba Longa.
- prōcēdō, ere, prōcessī, prōcessum (prō + cēdō), intr.**, go forward, proceed, advance.
- procul, adv.**, far off, from afar.
- prōcūrō, āre, āvī, ātus (prō + cūrō), tr.**, take care of, attend to; avert.
- prōditīō, ōnis (prōdō, betray), f.**, treachery, treason.
- proelium, ī, n.**, battle.
- profectīō, ōnis (proficīscor), f.**, setting forth, departure.
- proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum (prōficiō, advance), intr.**, set out, go, march.
- profugiō, ere, profūgī, — (prō + fugiō), intr.**, flee, escape.
- prōgredior, prōgredī, prōgressus sum (prō + gradior, go), intr.**, proceed, advance.
- prohibeō, ēre, prohibuī, prohibitus (prō + habeō), tr.**, keep (away) from, prevent.
- prōiciō, ere, prōiēcī, prōiectus (prō + iaciō), tr.**, throw forth, abandon.
- prōmittō, ere, prōmīsī, prōmissus (prō + mittō), tr.**, promise.
- prope, adv.**, near, nearby; **comp. propius**; **sup. proximē**.
- properō, āre, āvī, ātus, intr.**, hasten.
- propīnquitās, ātis (propīnquus, near), f.**, nearness, relationship.
- propior, propius (prope)**, nearer.
- propius (comp. of prope), adv. and prep. w. acc.**, nearer.
- prōpōnō, ere, prōposuī, prōpositus (prō + pōnō), tr.**, set forth, declare, propose.
- propter, prep. w. acc.**, on account of.
- prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfutūrus (prō + sum), intr., w. dat.**, be of service or use to, benefit.
- prōtinus, adv.**, ahead, directly.
- prōturbō, āre, āvī, ātus (prō + turbō, confuse), tr.**, drive away, dislodge, repulse.
- prōvincia, ae, f.**, province.
- prōvolō, āre, āvī, — (prō + volō), intr.**, fly forth, rush out.
- proximē (proximus), adv.**, last, recently.
- proximus, a, um (prope)**, nearest, next; **in proximō**, near by.
- prūdēns, prūdētis (prō + vidēns),** foreseeing, wise.
- prūdentē (prūdēns), adv.**, wisely.
- pūblicus, a, um (populus), public;** **rēs pūblica**, the state, republic.
- Pūblius, ī, m.**, a Roman name.
- pudor, ōris, m.**, sense of shame, honor.
- puella, ae (puer), f.**, girl.
- puer, puerī, m.**, boy.
- pugna, ae, f.**, fight, battle.

pugnō, āre, āvī, ātum (pugnus, fist),
intr., fight; pugnātum est, they
fought.

pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, beauti-
ful, pretty.

Pulcher, Pulchrī, *m.*, P. Claudius
Pulcher, consul 249 B.C.

pulchrē (pulcher), *adv.*, beautifully.

pullārius, ī (pullus), *m.*, keeper of the
sacred chickens.

pullus, ī, *m.*, chicken.

pulsus. See pellō.

Punicus, a, um, Punic, Phoenician,
Carthaginian.

pūniō, ĩre, pūnivī, pūnitus (poena),
tr., punish.

Pyrēnaeus, a, um, (of the) Pyrenees.

Q

quadrāgintā, *indecl.*, forty.

quadrīngentī, ae, a, four hundred.

quaerō, ere, quaesivī, quaesītus, to
seek, ask. [possible.

quam, than; *with ā sup.*, as possible,
quantus, a, um, how great, as.

quārē (quae + rēs): *adv.*, for which
reason, therefore.

quārtus (quattuor), *adj.*, fourth.

quasī (quam + sī), *adv.*, on the
ground that, because.

quattuor, *indecl.*, four.

-que, *enclitic conj.*, and.

quī, quae, quod, *rel. pron.*, who,
which, what, that; quam ob rem,
wherefore, therefore.

quicumque. See quisquam.

quicumque, quaecumque, quodcum-
que, *rel. pron.*, whoever, whatever.

quīdam, quaedam, quoddam or
quiddam, *indef. pron.*, certain, a
certain one, somebody.

quidem, *adv.*, indeed, truly.

quīn, *conj.*, that not; that; from
(*after verbs of hindering*).

quīndecim (quīnque + decem),
indecl., fifteen.

quīngentī, ae, a, five hundred.

quīnque, *indecl.*, five.

Quīntus, ī (quīntus, fifth), *m.*, a
Roman name.

Quirinālis, is, *m.*, Quirinal, one of
the hills of Rome.

Quirīnus, ī, *n.*, the name given to
Romulus after his deification.

quis, quae, quid and quī, quae or
qua, quod, *interrog. and indef.
pron.*, who, which, what; any, any
one, some one.

quisquam, quaequam, quicquam or
quodquam, *indef. pron.*, any, any
one.

quisque, quaeque, quidque or quod-
que, *indef. pron.*, each (one), every
(one).

quīvis, quaevis, quodvis or quidvis
(quī + vis, from volō), *indef.
pron.*, any one you please.

quō (quī), *adv.*, where, whither.

quod (quī), *conj.*, because.

quondam, *adv.*, once, formerly.

quoniam, *conj.*, since, because.

quoque, *adv.*, also, likewise.

R

rapiō, ere, rapuī, raptus, *tr.*, seize, steal.
ratiō, ōnis (reor, think), *f.*, considera-
tion, method.

ratis, is, *f.*, raft.

Rauracī, ōrum, *m.*, a Celtic tribe near
the Rhine.

recidō, ere, recidī, — (cadō), *intr.*,
fall back, fall, come back to.

- recipiō, ere, recēpī, receptus (capiō),**
tr., take back, receive; *sē recipere*,
 betake one's self, retreat.
- reddō, reddere, reddidī, redditus (dō),**
tr., give back, return, render.
- redeō, redire, rediī, reditūrus, intr.,**
 go back, return.
- redintegro, āre, āvī, ātus (integer,**
 whole), *tr.*, restore, renew.
- reditiō, ōnis (redeō), f.,** return.
- redūcō, ere, redūxī, reductus (dūco),**
tr., lead back.
- referō, referre, rettulī, relātus (ferō),**
tr., carry back; *pedem referre*, re-
 treat.
- rēgina, ae (rēx), f.,** queen.
- rēgius, a, um (rēx),** kingly, royal;
aedēs rēgiae, palace.
- rēgnō, āre, āvī, ātum (rēgnum), intr.,**
 be king, reign. [kingdom.
- rēgnum, ī (rēx), n.,** royal power,
- regō, ere, rēxī, rēctus, tr.,** guide, rule.
- relābor, relābī, relāpsus sum (lābor,**
 slip), *intr.*, sink back, subside.
- religiō, ōnis, f.,** piety; *pl.*, rites.
- relinquō, ere, reliquī, relictus (linquō,**
 leave), *tr.*, leave behind, leave.
- reliquus, a, um,** remaining, left, the
 rest of; *nihil reliquī*, nothing left;
in reliquum tempus, for the future.
- remaneō, ēre, remānsī, — (maneō),**
intr., remain, stay.
- remūneror, āri, ātus sum (mūnus),**
tr., repay, reward.
- Remus, ī, m.,** the brother of Romulus.
- Rēmus, ī, m.,** a Reman, one of the
 Remi, a Belgic tribe of Gaul.
- renūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus (nūntiō), tr.,**
 report.
- repellō, ere, reppulī, repulsus (pellō),**
tr., drive back, repulse.
- repente, adv.,** suddenly, unexpectedly.
- reperiō, ire, repperī, repertus (pariō,**
 produce), *tr.*, find, discover, ascer-
 tain.
- reppulī. See repellō.**
- reprehendō, ere, reprehendī, repre-**
hēnsus (prehendō, seize), tr., blame,
 censure.
- reprōmittō, ere, reprōmīsī, reprō-**
missus (prōmittō), tr., promise in
 return.
- rēs, rei, f.,** thing, affair, circumstance;
rēs frūmentāria, provisions, sup-
 plies of grain; *rēs pūblica*, state,
 republic; *quam ob rem*, wherefore,
 therefore.
- rescindō, ere, rescidī, rescissus**
(scindō, break down), tr., break
 down, destroy.
- resistō, ere, restitī, — (sistō, place),**
intr., w. dat., oppose, resist, hold
 one's ground.
- respondeō, ēre, respondī, respōnsus**
(spondeō, promise), tr., reply,
 answer.
- restituō, ere, restitūī, restitūtus**
(statuō), tr., renew, restore.
- retineō, ēre, retinūī, retentus (teneō),**
tr., hold back, keep back, detain,
 retain.
- revertor, revertī, revertī, reversus**
(vertō), intr., turn back, return.
- reviviscō, ēre, —, — (vivō), intr.,**
 be alive again.
- revocō, āre, āvī, ātus (vocō), tr.,**
 recall.
- rēx, rēgis, m.,** king.
- Rhēa, ae, f.,** Rhēa Silvia, the mother
 of Romulus and Remus.
- Rhēnus, ī, m.,** the Rhine.
- Rhodanus, ī, m.,** the Rhone.

rigō, āre, āvī, ātus, *tr.*, wet, moisten.
 rīpa, ae, *f.*, bank (of a river).
 rōbur, rōboris, *n.*, oak; strength.
 rogō, āre, āvī, ātus, *tr.*, ask, beg.
 Rōma, ae, *f.*, Rome.
 Rōmānus, a, um (Rōma), Roman;
as subst. Rōmānus, ī, *m.*, a Roman.
 Rōmulus, ī, *m.*, the reputed founder
 of Rome.
 rosa, ae, *f.*, rose.
 rūmor, ōris, *m.*, rumor, report.
 rūsus (revertor), *adv.*, back, again.
 rūs, rūris, *n.*, the country; rūrī, in
 the country.

S

Sabīnus, ī, *m.* 1. A Sabine. 2. *See*
 Titūrius.
 Sabis, is, *m.*, a river of Belgic Gaul,
 the modern Sambre.
 sacer, sacra, sacrum, holy, sacred;
as subst. sacrum, ī, *n.*, a holy thing,
 religious rite.
 sacerdōs, ōtis (sacer), *m. and f.*,
 priest, priestess.
 sacrificium, ī (sacer + faciō), *n.*,
 sacrifice.
 sacrum. *See* sacer.
 saepe, *adv.*, often; saepius, very
 often.
 saepēs, is, *f.*, hedge, fence.
 sagitta, ae, *f.*, arrow.
 sagittārius, ī (sagitta), *m.*, bowman.
 Saliī, ōrum (saliō, leap), *m.*, dancing
 priests of Mars.
 saltem, *adv.*, at least.
 saltus, ūs (saliō, leap), *m.*, jump;
 ravine.
 Santonēs, um, *m. pl.*, a Celtic tribe
 near the Garonne.
 sarcina, ae, *f.*, bundle, pack.

satis, *adv. and indecl. noun*, enough.
 saxum, ī, *n.*, rock, stone.
 Scaevola, ae (scaeva, left-handed),
m., a surname of Gaius Mucius.
 scapha, ae, *f.*, skiff, boat.
 scientia, ae (sciō), *f.*, knowledge,
 skill.
 sciō, scīre, scīvī or sciī, scītus, *tr.*,
 know, know how.
 scrība, ae (scrībō), *m.*, writer, scribe,
 secretary.
 scrībō, ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, *tr.*, write.
 scūtum, ī, *n.*, shield.
 sē. *See* suī.
 sēcrētus, a, um (sēcernō, separate),
 concealed, hidden, secret. [along.
 secundum (secundus), *prep. w. acc.*,
 secundus, a, um (sequor), following,
 second; favorable.
 secūtus. *See* sequor.
 sed, *conj.*, but.
 sēdecim, *indecl.*, sixteen.
 sedeō, ēre, sēdī, sessum, *intr.*, sit.
 sedīle, is (sedeō), *n.*, seat.
 sēgnis, e, slow, sluggish.
 Segusiāvī, ōrum, *m. pl.*, a tribe of
 Celtic Gaul.
 sella, ae (sedeō), *f.*, seat, chair; sella
 curūlis, a portable chair, opening
 like a camp-stool. Its use belonged
 at first only to the king, but later
 to curule aediles, praetors, consuls,
 dictators, and the Flamines.
 semper, *adv.*, always, ever.
 senātor, ōris (senex), *m.*, senator.
 senātus, ūs (senex), *m.*, senate.
 senectūs, ūtis (senex), *f.*, old age.
 senex, *gen.* senis, old, aged; *comp.*
 senior; *sup.* maximus nātū.
 Senonēs, um, *m. pl.*, a tribe of Celtic
 Gaul.

- sententia, ae (sentiō, discern), *f.*, opinion, decision.
- sepeliō, ĩre, sepelivī, sepultus, *tr.*, septem, *indecl.*, seven. [bury.
- septimus, a, um (septem), *adj.*, seventh.
- septuāgintā, *indecl.*, seventy.
- sepultus. See sepeliō.
- Sēquanus, a, um, Sequanian; *as subst.*
Sēquanus, ĩ, *m.*, a Sequanian, one of the Sequani, a tribe of Belgic Gaul.
- sequor, sequi, secūsus sum, *tr.*, follow.
- servō, āre, āvī, ātus (servus), *tr.*, keep, preserve, save.
- servus, ĩ, *m.*, slave.
- sēsē. See suī.
- sex, *indecl.*, six.
- sī, *conj.*, if; sī minus, if not.
- sibi. See suī.
- sīc, *adv.*, thus, so.
- siccus, a, um, dry; in siccō, on dry ground.
- sīgnificō, āre, āvī, ātus (sīgnum + faciō), *tr.*, signify, declare.
- sīgnum, ĩ, *n.*, sign, signal, standard, ensign; sīgna convertere, face about; sīgna ĩnferre, charge.
- silēns, silentis (sileō, be still), silent, quiet.
- silva, ae, *f.*, wood, forest.
- silvestris, e (silva), wooded.
- similis, e, like, similar.
- simulō, āre, āvī, ātus (similis), *tr.*, pretend.
- sine, *prep. w. abl.*, without.
- singulī, ae, a, one by one, individual, each.
- sinister, sinistra, sinistrum, left.
- societās, ātis (socius), *f.*, alliance.
- sociō, āre, āvī, ātus (socius), *tr.*, join, share.
- socius, ĩ (sequor), *m.*, companion, ally.
- sōl, sōlis, *m.*, sun; sōle ortō, at sunrise.
- soleō, ēre, solitus sum, *intr.*, be accustomed.
- sōlitūdō, inis (sōlus), *f.*, wilderness.
- solitus. See soleō.
- sollicitō, āre, āvī, ātus, *tr.*, stir up, arouse, provoke.
- sōlus, a, um, only, alone, sole.
- somnium, ĩ (somnus), *n.*, dream.
- somnus, ĩ, *m.*, sleep.
- soror, ōris, *f.*, sister.
- spatium, ĩ, *n.*, space, distance, time, opportunity.
- spectāculum, ĩ (spectō, behold), *n.*, sight, show, spectacle.
- speculātor, ōris, *m.*, scout, spy.
- spērō, āre, āvī, ātus (spēs), *tr.*, hope, expect.
- spēs, speī, *f.*, hope.
- sponte (*abl.*), of one's own accord.
- statim (stō), *adv.*, forthwith, immediately.
- statiō, ōnis (stō), *f.*, post, picket, guard.
- statua, ae (statuō), *f.*, image, statue.
- statuō, ere, statuī, statūtus, *tr.*, place, decide, determine.
- stella, ae, *f.*, star.
- stīpendium, ĩ (stīps, gift + pendō, pay), *n.*, pay, tribute.
- streptus, ūs, *m.*, noise.
- studeō, ēre, studuī, —, *intr.*, be eager for, desire.
- studium, ĩ (studeō), *n.*, zeal, eagerness.

stultus, a, um, silly, foolish.
sub, *prep. w. abl. and acc.*: *w. abl.*, under, below, at the foot of; *w. acc.*, under, up to, to the foot of.
subdūcō, ere, subdūxī, subductus (sub + dūcō), *tr.*, bring up.
subitō (subitus, sudden), *adv.*, suddenly.
sublātus. See tollō. [denly.]
submittō, ere, submīsī, submissus (sub + mitto), *tr.*, send, furnish.
subruō, ere, subruī, subrutus (sub + ruō, overthrow), *tr.*, dig under, undermine.
subsequor, subsequī, subsecūtus sum (sub + sequor), *tr.*, follow, pursue.
subsidiū, ī (sub + sedeō), *n.*, aid, relief.
succēdō, ere, successī, successum (sub + cēdō), *tr. and intr.*, come up, approach. [proach.]
successus, ūs (succēdō), *m.*, ap-
Suessiōnēs, um, m. pl., a tribe of Belgic Gaul.
sufficiō, ere, suffēcī, suffectum (sub + faciō), *intr.*, be sufficient.
suī, pers. pron., of himself (herself, itself, themselves); he, she, it; *dat. sibi, acc. and abl. sē, sēsē; inter sē*, to one another.
sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, intr., be; *w. dat. of possession*, have.
summa, ae (summus), *f.*, the whole; leadership, supremacy.
summus. See superus.
sūmō, ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, tr., take, assume, begin (battle).
super, prep. w. acc. and abl., over, upon, in addition to.
superbus, a, um, haughty, proud.
supericiō, ere, superiēcī, superiectus (super + iaciō), *tr.*, throw across.

superior. See superus.
superō, āre, āvī, ātus (superus), *tr.*, surpass, overcome, conquer.
supersedē, ēre, supersēdī, supersesus (super + sedeō), *intr., w. dat.*, be superior, refrain from.
supersum, superesse, superfuī, superfutūrus (super + sum), *intr., w. dat.*, be over, survive.
superus, a, um (super), above; *comp. superior, ius*, upper, former; *sup. suprēmus, summus*, highest, very great, top of.
superveniō, īre, supervēnī, superventum (super + veniō); *intr.*, arrive.
supplicium, ī (supplex, suppliant), *n.*, punishment, death.
suprā, adv. and prep. w. acc., above, before.
suprēmus. See superus.
suscipiō, ere, suscēpī, susceptus (sub + capiō), *tr.*, undertake.
sustentō, āre, āvī, ātus (sustineō), *tr.*, endure, withstand.
sustineō, ēre, sustinūī, sustentus (sub + teneō), *tr. and intr.*, hold up, withstand, sustain.
sustulī. See tollō.
suus, a, um (suī), his, her, its, their; his (her, its, their) own; **suaque omnia**, all their possessions.

T

T. = Titus. [verbs].
tam, adv., so (*w. adjectives and ad-*
tamen, adv., however, yet, never-
 theless.
tantus, a, um (tam), so great,
 such.
Tarpēia, ae, f., a Roman girl in the
 time of Romulus.

- Tatius, ī, m.**, Titus Tatius, a Sabine king, joint ruler with Romulus.
- tē, acc. of tū.**
- tēlum, ī, n.**, missile, weapon.
- temeritās, ātis, f.**, rashness.
- tempestās, ātis (tempus), f.**, storm.
- templum, ī, n.**, temple. [tempest.
- tempus, temporis, n.**, time, occasion.
- tendō, ere, tetendī, tentus and tēnsus, tr.**, spread out, stretch.
- teneō, ēre, tenuī, —, tr.**, hold. [delicate.
- tener, tenera, tenerum, tender, young,**
- terra, ae, f.**, earth, land, country; terrā, by land.
- terreō, ēre, terruī, territus, tr.**, frighten, terrify.
- tertius, a, um (trēs), third.**
- testūdō, inis, f.**, tortoise; shed.
- Teutonī, ōrum or Teutonēs, um, m. pl.**, Teutons, a Germanic people on the Baltic.
- Tiberis, is, m.**, the Tiber.
- tibi, dat. of tū.**
- tībīcen, inis, m.**, piper, flute player.
- timeō, ēre, timuī, —, tr. and intr.**, fear, be afraid of.
- timidus, a, um (timeō), afraid, timid.**
- timor, ōris, m.**, fear.
- Titūrius, ī, m., Quintus Titūrius Sabīnus,** one of Caesar's lieutenants.
- Titus, ī, m.**, a Roman name.
- tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātus, tr.**, lift up, raise; remove, destroy.
- Tolōsātēs, ium, m. pl.**, Tolosates, inhabitants of Tolosa (modern Toulouse).
- tormentum, ī (torqueō, twist), n.**, a military engine for hurling missiles.
- Torquātus, ī (torquis, necklace), m.**, a surname of Titus Manlius. See **Mānlius.**
- tōtus, a, um, whole, all.**
- trādō, ere, trādidī, trāditus (trāns + dō), tr.**, give over, give up, deliver, surrender.
- trādūcō, ere, trādūxī, trāductus (trāns + dūcō), tr.**, lead over, transport.
- trāciō, ere, trāiēcī, trāiectus (trāns + iaciō), tr.**, throw or carry across, pass over, transfix.
- Trallēs, Trallium, f.**, a town of Lydia.
- trāns, prep. w. acc.**, across, over, through.
- trānseō, ire, trānsī, trānsitus (trāns + eō), tr. and intr.**, cross, go over, pass over, go across.
- trānsfugiō, ere, trānsfūgī, — (trāns + fugiō), intr.**, flee over, go over.
- trānsgridior, trānsgridī, trānsgressus sum (trāns + gradior, go), tr.**, go over, pass over.
- trānsiliō, ire, trānsiluī, — (trāns + saliō, leap), tr.**, leap over, jump across.
- trānsversus, a, um (trānsvertō, turn across), transverse; trānsversa fossa,** cross ditch.
- trecentī, ae, a (trēs + centum), three hundred.**
- tredecim (trēs + decem), indecl.**, thirteen.
- trēs, tria, three.**
- tribūnal, ālis (tribūnus), n.**, judgment seat, tribunal.
- tribūnus, ī (tribus, tribe), m.**, tribune, a military officer.
- trīdium, ī (trēs + diēs), n.**, interval of three days.
- trīgintā, indecl.**, thirty.
- triumphus, ī, m.**, triumph.
- tū, tuī, pers. pron.**, you, thou.

tuba, ae, *f.*, trumpet.

tulī. *See* ferō.

Tulingī, ōrum, *m. pl.*, a Germanic tribe near the upper Rhine.

tum, *adv.*, then, in the next place.

tumultus, ī, *m.*, uproar, disturbance.

tunc, *adv.*, then, at that time.

turba, ae, *f.*, throng, crowd.

turpis, e, ugly, disgraceful, infamous.

turris, is, *f.*, tower.

tūtēla, ae (tueor, protect), *m.*, guardian, protection.

tūtus, a, um (tueor, protect), safe.

tuus, a, um (tū), your, yours.

U

ubi, *adv.*, where, when.

ūllus, a, um, any, any one.

ulterior, ulterius, farther; *sup.* ultimus, a, um.

ultrā, *adv. and prep. w. acc.*, beyond, farther.

ūnā (ūnus), *adv.*, together with.

unde, *adv.*, whence.

ūndecim (ūnus + decem), *indecl.*, eleven.

undique, *adv.*, from or on all sides.

ūniversus, a, um (ūnus + vertō, turn), whole, entire.

ūnus, a, um, one.

urbs, urbis, *f.*, city.

ūsus, a, um. *See* ūtor.

ūsus, ūs (ūtor), *m.*, use, advantage, benefit, help; ūsuī esse, be of service.

ut, utī, (1) *adv.*, as when; (2) *conj.*, that, in order that, so that.

uter, utra, utrum, which (of two), which one.

uterque, utraque, utrumque, each (of two), both.

utī. *See* ut.

ūtī. *See* ūtor.

ūtilis, e (ūtor), useful.

utinam, *adv.*, O that, would that, may. [*employ.*

ūtor, utī, ūsus sum, *intr., w. abl.*, use, uxor, ōris, *f.*, wife.

V

vacuus, a, um, empty, destitute of, vacant.

vadum, ī, *n.*, shoal, ford.

vāgītus, ūs (vāgiō, cry), *m.*, crying, squalling.

Valerius, ī, *m.*, Mārcus Valerius Maximus Corvīnus, consul 343 B.C.

validus, a, um (valeō, be strong), strong, sturdy.

vāllum, ī, *n.*, wall, rampart, earth-works.

vāstō, āre, āvī, ātus (vāstus), *tr.*, lay waste, ravage.

vāstus, a, um, vast, enormous.

vēlōcītās, ātis (vēlōx), *f.*, speed, swiftness.

vēlōx, vēlōcis, swift, quick.

velut, velutī, *adv.*, as if, just as if.

venia, ae, *f.*, favor, permission.

veniō, īre, vēnī, ventum, *intr.*, come; in fidem venīre, put one's self under the protection of.

vēnor, ārī, ātus sum, *tr.*, hunt, chase.

verbum, ī, *n.*, word; verba facere, speak.

vereor, ērī, veritus sum, *tr.*, fear, be afraid of.

vergō, ere, —, —, *intr.*, lie toward, incline.

veritus. *See* vereor.

vērō (vērus, true), *adv.*, in fact, indeed, however.

- vertex, verticis (vertō, turn), *m.*,
summit, crest.
- vērūm (vērū, true), *adv.*, certainly,
but.
- vēscor, vēscī, —, *def.*, *w. abl.*, eat.
- Vesta, *ae, f.*, goddess of the hearth,
and hence of the family and state.
Her sacred fire, kept continually
burning in her temple near the
Forum, was watched by six priest-
esses, called Vestals.
- vester, vestra, vestrum (vōs), your,
yours.
- vestis, *is, f.*, garment, clothing.
- vetō, āre, vetuī, vetitus, *tr.*, forbid.
- vetus, veteris, old, ancient; *comp.*
vetustior; *sup.* veterrimus.
- vēxillum, ī, *n.*, a military ensign.
- via, *ae, f.*, way, road, street, jour-
ney.
- vīcī. *See* vincō.
- vīcīnus, a, um (vīcus), neighboring,
near.
- victor, ōris (vincō), *m.*, conqueror,
victor.
- victōria, *ae (victor), f.*, victory.
- victus, victūrus. *See* vincō.
- vīcus, ī, *m.*, village.
- videlicet (videō + licet), *adv.*, of
course, that is.
- videō, ēre, vīdī, vīsus, *tr.*, see; *pass.*,
seem, appear.
- vigilia, *ae, f.*, watching, watch (a
fourth part of the night).
- vīgintī, *indecl.*, twenty.
- vinciō, īre, vīnxī, vīnctus, *tr.*, bind.
- vincō, ere, vīcī, victus, *tr.*, conquer,
overcome.
- vinculum, ī (vinciō), *n.*, chain, fetter;
in or ex vinculis, in chains.
- vindicō, āre, āvī, ātus, *tr.*, punish,
inflict punishment.
- vīnea, *ae, f.*, a military shed.
- vīnum, ī, *n.*, wine.
- vīnxī. *See* vinciō.
- vir, virī, *m.*, man.
- vīrēs. *See* vīs.
- virgō, virginis, *f.*, virgin, maiden, girl.
- Viromandūī, ōrum, *m. pl.*, a tribe of
Belgic Gaul.
- virtūs, virtūtis (vir), *f.*, manhood,
virtue, bravery, courage.
- vīs, vim, *f.*, power, force, number; *pl.*
vīrēs, strength.
- vīta, *ae, f.*, life.
- vīvō, ere, vīxī, —, *intr.*, live.
- vix, *adv.*, hardly, barely.
- vīxī. *See* vīvō.
- vocō, āre, āvī, ātus (vōx), *tr.*, call,
summon.
- Vocontīī, ōrum, *m. pl.*, a tribe of Gaul.
1. volō, velle, voluī, —, wish, desire,
be willing.
2. volō, āre, āvī, ātūrus, *intr.*, fly.
- voluntārius, a, um (voluntās), will-
ing, voluntary.
- voluntās, ātis (1. volō), *f.*, desire,
consent, favor.
- vōs, *pl. of tū.*
- voveō, ēre, vōvī, vōtus, *tr.*, vow,
promise.
- vōx, vōcis, *f.*, voice; *pl.*, words.
- vulgō (vulgus, multitude), *adv.*, gen-
erally, everywhere.
- vulnerō, āre, āvī, ātus (vulnus), *tr.*,
wound.
- vulnus, vulneris, *n.*, wound.
- vultur, vulturis, *m.*, vulture.
- vultus, ūs, *m.*, expression, looks,
countenance.

VOCABULARY

ENGLISH — LATIN

[Numbers refer to Sections.]

A

able, potēns, potentis; be able, possum, posse, potuī.
 about to, be, *active periphrastic conjugation* (437); *fut. participle*.
 above, superus.
 absent, be, absum, āfuī, āfutūrus.
 abundance, cōpia, ae, f.
 accomplish, cōficiō, cōficere, cōfēcī, cōfectus.
 account of, on, *abl. of cause*; ob, propter, *w. acc.*
 across, trāns, per, *w. acc.*; (a bridge) across the river, in flūmine.
 adjoining, finitimus, a, um.
 administer, administrō, āre, āvī, ātus.
 advance, prōcēdō, ere, prōcessī, prōcessum; prōgredior, prōgredi, prōgressus sum.
 advantage, ūsus, ūs, m.
 advice, cōsiliū, ī, n.
 advise, moneō, ēre, monuī, monitus.
 affair, rēs, rei, f.
 afraid, be, timeō, ēre, timuī, —.
 after, *prep.*, post, *w. acc.*; *conj.*, postquam.
 afterwards, *adv.*, postea.
 against, in, contrā, *w. acc.*; be against, obsum, obesse, obfuī, obfutūrus.

agreeable, grātus, a, um.
 aid, auxilium, ī, n. [*w. dat.*]
 aid, adsum, adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus,
 aim, petō, ere, petivī or petiī, petitus.
 alarm, permoveō, ēre, permōvī, permōtus.
 all, omnis, e; tōtus, a, um.
 alliance, amīcitia, ae, f.
 allow, patior, patī, passus sum; permittō, ere, permīsi, permissum; concedō, ere, concessī, concessum.
 ally, socius, ī, m.
 alone, sōlus, a, um.
 already, iam.
 although, cum, *w. subjv.*; *abl. abs.*, 315.
 always, semper.
 am, sum, esse, fuī, futūrus.
 ambassador, lēgātus, ī, m.
 among, inter, apud, *w. acc.*; be among, insum, inesse, infuī, infutūrus; intersum, interesse, interfuī, interfutūrus, *w. dat.*
 ample, amplus, a, um.
 ancient, vetus, veteris.
 and, et, -que, atque; and not, neque.
 animal, animal, animālis, n.
 announce, nūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus; ēnūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus.
 another, alius, a, ud; to one another, inter sē; another's, aliēnus, a, um.

answer, respondeō, ēre, respondi, respōnsus.

any, any one, ūllus, a, um; aliquis, aliqua, aliquid *or* aliquod; quisquam, quicquam; quīvis, quaevis, quodvis.

appoint, cōstituō, ere, cōstituī, cōstitūtus.

approach, adventus, ūs, *m.*; aditus, ūs, *m.*

approach, appropīnquō, āre, āvī, ātum, *w. dat.*; accēdō, ere, accessī, accessurus, *w. ad and acc.*

Ariovistus, Ariovistus, ī, *m.*

arm, armō, āre, āvī, ātus.

arms, arma, ōrum, *n. plur.*

army, exercitus, ūs, *m.*; army on the march, agmen, agminis, *n.*

around, circum, *w. acc.*

arouse, incitō, āre, āvī, ātus; permōveō, ēre, permōvī, permōtus.

arrange, īnstruō, ere, īnstrūxī, īnstrūctus.

arrival, adventus, ūs, *m.*

arrive, perveniō, īre, pervēnī, perventum.

arrow, sagitta, ae, *f.*

art, ars, artis, *f.*

ascertain, reperiō, īre, repperī, reperitus.

ask, rogō, āre, āvī, ātus; petō, ere, petīvī *or* petīī, petītus; mandō, āre, āvī, ātus.

assemble, conveniō, īre, convēnī, conventus.

at, ad, *w. acc.*; sign of *abl. of time.*

Athens, Athēnae, ārum, *f. plur.*

attack, impetus, ūs, *m.*

attack, oppugnō, āre, āvī, ātus; lacessō, ere, lacessīvī, lacessītus.

attempt, cōnor, āri, ātus sum.

authority, auctōritās, ātis, *f.*; potestās, ātis, *f.*

await, exspectō, āre, āvī, ātus.

away, be, absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus.

B

bad, malus, a, um.

baggage, impedimenta, ōrum, *n. plur.*

band, manus, ūs, *f.*

bank (of river), rīpa, ae, *f.*

barbarous, barbarus, a, um.

battle, proelium, ī, *n.*; pugna, ae, *f.*; line of battle, aciēs, aciēī, *f.*

be, sum, esse, fuī, futūrus.

bear, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus.

beautiful, pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum.

beautifully, pulchrē.

because, quod; *abl. of cause*; because of, propter, *w. acc.*

before, prō, *w. abl.*; ante, *w. acc.*

beg, petō, ere, petīvī *or* petīī, petītus; rogō, āre, āvī, ātus.

begin, coepī, coepisse, coeptūrus sum; begin battle, proelium committō, ere, commīsī, commissus.

behalf of, in, prō, *w. abl.*

behind, post, *w. acc.*

Belgae, Belgae, ārum, *m.*

believe, exīstimō, āre, āvī, ātus; crēdō, ere, crēdidī, crēditum, *w. dat.*

below, īferus, a, um.

benefit, prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfutūrus, *w. dat.*

benefit, ūsus, ūs, *n.*

besiege, oppugnō, āre, āvī, ātus; ob-sideō, ēre, obsēdī, obsessus.

best, optimus, a, um; *adv.*, optimē.

betake one's self, cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, conlātus (*refl.*).

between, inter, *w. acc.*

bid, iubeō, ēre, iussī, iussus.
bind, vinciō, īre, vīnxī, vīnctus.
bird, avis, is, *f*.
black, niger, nigra, nigrum.
blame, culpō, āre, āvī, ātus.
body, corpus, corporis, *n*.
book, liber, librī, *m*.
booty, praeda, ae, *f*.
both . . . and, et . . . et.
bottom of, īmus, a, um.
boundary, finēs, ium, *m. plur.*
boy, puer, puerī, *m*.
brave, fortis, e.
bravely, fortiter.
bravery, virtūs, ūtis, *f*.
break up camp, castra movēre.
bridge, pōns, pontis, *m*.
brief, brevis, e.
bring, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus; portō, āre, āvī, ātus; **bring in**, īferō, īferre, intulī, inlātus; **bring together**, cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, conlātus.
broad, lātus, a, um.
brother, frāter, frātris, *m*.
build, aedificō, āre, āvī, ātus; faciō, ere, fēcī, factus.
building, aedificium, ī, *n*.
burn, incendō, ere, incendi, incēnsus.
but, sed, at; autem (*postpositive*).
by, *sign of abl.*; ā or ab, *w. abl.*; **by means of**, *abl. of means*; per, *w. acc.*

C

Caesar, Caesar, Caesaris, *m*.
call, vocō, āre, āvī, ātus; appellō, āre, āvī, ātus; **call together**, convocō, āre, āvī, ātus.
camp, castra, ōrum, *n. plur.*
can, possum, posse, potuī.

capture, capiō, ere, cēpī, captus; expugnō, āre, āvī, ātus.
care, cūra, ae, *f*.
carefully, cum cūrā.
carefulness, diligentia, ae, *f*.
carry, portō, āre, āvī, ātus; ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus; **carry back**, referō, referre, rettulī, relātus; **carry on**, gerō, ere, gessī, gestus.
Carthage, Carthāgō, inis, *f*.
case, causa, ae, *f*.
cause, causa, ae, *f*.
cavalry, equitātus, ūs, *m.*; equitēs, um, *m. plur.*; (**of the**) cavalry, equester, equestris, equestre.
Celt, Celta, ae, *m*.
certain, a . . . one, quīdam, quaedam, quoddam or quiddam.
chain, vinculum, ī; **in chains**, ex vinculis.
chance, cāsus, ūs, *m*.
change, convertō, ere, cōvertī, cōversus.
charge, signa īferō, īferre, intulī, inlātus.
charge of, be in, praesum, praesesse, praefuī, praefutūrus, *w. dat.*; **put in charge of**, praeficiō, ere, praefēcī, praefectus, *w. dat.*
chief, princeps, principis, *m*.
children, liberī, ōrum, *m. plur.*
choose, dēligō, ere, dēlēgī, dēlēctus.
circumstance, rēs, rei, *f*.
citizen, cīvis, is, *m. and f*.
citizenship, cīvitās, ātis, *f*.
city, urbs, urbis, *f*.
cohort, cohors, cohortis, *f*.
collect, cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctus.
column, agmen, agminis, *n*.
come, veniō, īre, vēnī, ventum; **come around**, circumveniō, īre, circum-

vēnī, circumventus; **come near**, accēdō, ere, accessī, accessūrus; **come together**, conveniō, ire, convenī, conventus; **come up**, perveniō, ire, pervēnī, perventus.

command, imperium, ī, *n.*

command, iubeō, ēre, iussī, iussus; imperō, āre, āvī, ātum; mandō, āre, āvī, ātus; praesum, praesesse, prae-fuī, praefutūrus (*v. dat.*).

commander, dux, ducis, *m.*; imperātor, ōris, *m.*

commit, committō, ere, commīsī, commissus.

common people, plēbs, plēbis, *f.*

companion, socius, ī, *m.*

compel, cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctus.

complete, compleō, complēre, complēvī, complētus.

concerning, dē, *v. abl.*

condemn, damnō, āre, āvī, ātus.

confer, conloquor, conloquī, conlocūtus sum.

confidence, fidēs, eī, *f.*

congratulate, grātulor, ārī, ātus sum.

conquer, superō, āre, āvī, ātus; vincō, ere, vīcī, victus.

conspiracy, coniūrātiō, ōnis, *f.*

conspirator, coniūrātus, ī, *m.*

consul, cōnsul, cōnsulis, *m.*

contend, contendō, ere, contendī, contentus; dimicō, āre, āvī, ātus.

contracted, angustus, a, um.

convert, convertō, ere, convertī, conversus.

Corinth, Corinthus, ī, *f.*

country, terra, ae, *f.*; patria, ae, *f.*; rū, rūris, *n.*; **in the country**, rūrī.

courage, animus, ī, *m.*

cross, trānseō, ire, trānsī, trānsitus.

crowd, vulgus, ī, *n.*; multitudō, inis, *f.*

cry, clāmor, ōris, *m.*

cup, pōculum, ī, *n.*

custom, cōnsuetūdō, inis, *f.*

cut down, occidō, ere, occīdī, occīsus.

D

daily, cottidiānus, a, um; *adv.*, cottidiē.

danger, perīculum, ī, *n.*

dare, audeō, ēre, ausus sum.

daughter, filia, ae, *f.*

day, diēs, diēī, *m.*

daybreak, at, primā lūce.

daylight, lūx, lūcis, *f.*

dear, cārus, a, um; grātus, a, um.

dearly, cārē.

death, mors, mortis, *f.*

deed, factum, ī, *n.*

deep, altus, a, um.

defeat, calamitās, ātis, *f.*

defend, dēfendō, ere, dēfendī, dēfēnsus.

defense, praesidium, ī, *n.*

delay, moror, ārī, ātus sum.

delight, dēlectō, āre, āvī, ātus.

deliver (= set free), liberō, āre, āvī, ātus; (= hand over) trādō, trādere, trādīdī, trādītus.

Delphi, Delphī, ōrum, *m.*

demand, postulō, āre, āvī, ātus; petō, ere, petīvī or petīī, petītus.

depart, discēdō, ere, discessī, discessum.

dependent, cliēns, clientis, *m.*

depth, altitūdō, inis, *f.*

desire, cupiō, ere, cupīvī or cupīī, cupītus.

desirous (of), cupidus, a, um.

determine, cōstituō, ere, cōstituī, cōstitūtus.

die, morior, morī, mortuus sum; cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsūrus.

difficult, difficilis, e.
 diligence, diligentia, ae, f.
 direct, administrō, āre, āvī, ātus.
 disaster, calamitās, ātis, f.
 discover, reperiō, īre, repperī, re-
 disgraceful, turpis, e. [pertus.
 dismiss, dimittō, ere, dīmīsī, dīmissus.
 dispatch, praemittō, ere, praemīsī,
 praemissus.
 disposition, animus, ī, m.
 dissimilar, dissimilis, e.
 ditch, fossa, ae, f.
 do, faciō, ere, fēcī, factus; agō, ere,
 ēgī, āctus.
 document, litterae, ārum, f. plur.
 door, porta, ae, f.
 down from, dē, w. abl. [w. dat.
 draw near, appropinquō, āre, āvī, ātum,
 draw up, instruō, ere, instrūxī, in-
 strūctus.
 drive away, pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsus.
 during, inter, w. acc.

E

each (one), quisque, quaeque, quid-
 que; each (of two), uterque, utra-
 que, utrumque.
 eager, ācer, ācris, ācre; eager for,
 cupidus, a, um (w. gen.).
 eagerly, ācriter; cum studiō.
 earthworks, vāllum, ī, n.
 easily, facile.
 easy, facilis, e.
 eight, octō.
 employ, ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, w. abl.
 encourage, hortor, ārī, ātus sum;
 cohortor, ārī, ātus sum; incitō,
 āre, āvī, ātus.
 end, finis, is, m.
 enemy, hostis, is, m. and f.
 enjoy, fruor, fruī, frūctus sum, w. abl.

enough, satis, indecl.
 ensign, sīgnum, ī, n.
 entangle, impediō, īre, impediū, im-
 peditus.
 equal, pār, paris.
 equestrian, equester, equestris, eques-
 tre.
 equip, armō, āre, āvī, ātus.
 establish, cōfirmō, āre, āvī, ātus.
 Europe, Eurōpa, ae, f.
 even, express by ipse, a, um.
 ever, semper.
 every, omnis, e.
 evil, malus, a, um.
 exceedingly, express by superlative.
 except, nisi.
 exchange, inter sē dare.
 exhort, cohortor, ārī, ātus sum.
 expect, exspectō, āre, āvī, ātus.
 expel, pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsus.

F

face about, sīgna convertō, conver-
 tere, convertī, conversus.
 facing, adversus, a um; prep., adver-
 sus, w. acc. [w. dat.
 fail, dēsum, deesse, dēfuī, dēfutūrus,
 faithful, fidus, a, um.
 fall, cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsūrus.
 falling, cāsus, us, m.
 famous, express by ille, illa, illud.
 far, far off, longē.
 farmer, agricola, ae, m.
 father, pater, patris, m.
 favor, grātia, ae, f.
 fear, timeō, ēre, timuī, —; vereor,
 ērī, veritus sum.
 fertile, ferāx, ferācis.
 few, paucī, ae, a (plur.).
 field, ager, agrī, m.
 fierce, ācer, ācris, ācre; asper, aspera,

asperum ; ferus, a, um.
fiercely, ācritēr.
fight, pugnō, āre, āvī, ātum ; **fight a battle**, proelium facere.
fill up, compleō, complēre, complēvī, complētus.
finally, dēnique.
find, inveniō, īre, invēnī, inventus ; **reperiō**, īre, repperī, repertus.
finish, cōnficiō, ere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectus.
fire, ignis, is, *m.* ; **set fire to**, incendō, ere, incendiī, incēnsus.
first, p̄rimus, a, um ; **at first**, p̄rimō.
fit, idōneus, a, um.
five, quīnque.
flank, latus, lateris, *n.*
flee, fugiō, ere, fūgī, —.
flight, fuga, ae, *f.* ; **put to flight**, in fugam dare.
follow, sequor, sequī, secūtus sum.
following, posterus, a, um.
food, cibus, ī, *m.*
foot, pēs, pedis, *m.* ; **at the foot of**, sub, *w. abl.* ; **to the foot of**, sub, *w. acc.*
foot-soldier, pedes, peditis, *m.*
for, *sign of dat.* ; ob, propter, *w. acc.* ; p̄rō, *w. abl.*
forbid, vetō, āre, vetuī, vetitus.
force, cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctus.
forces, cōpiae, ārum, *f.*
forest, silva, ae, *f.*
form, capiō, ere, cēpī, captus ; **instruō**, ere, instrūxī, instrūctus.
former, ille, illa, illud.
fort, castellum, ī, *n.*
fortifications, mōenia, ium, *n. plur.*
fortify, mūniō, īre, mūnivī or mūniī,
fortune, fortūna, ae, *f.* [mūnītus.
forty, quadrāgintā.
four, quattuor.
fourth, quārtus, a, um.

free, liber, libera, liberum.
free, liberō, āre, āvī, ātus.
freedom, libertās, ātis, *f.*
frequently, saepe.
friend, amīcus, ī, *m.*
friendship, amicitia, ae, *f.*
frighten, terreō, ēre, terruī, territus.
from, *sign of abl.* ; ā or ab, ē or ex, dē, *w. abl.*
future, for the, in reliquum tempus.

G

garden, hortus, ī, *m.*
garrison, praesidium, ī, *n.*
gate, porta, ae, *f.*
gather, cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, conlātus.
Gaul (the country), Gallia, ae, *f.* ; **(inhabitant)**, Gallus, ī, *m.*
general, dux, ducis, *m.* ; imperātor, ōris, *m.*
gentle, lēnis, e.
gift, dōnum, ī, *n.*
girl, puella, ae, *f.*
give, dō, dare, dedī, datus ; **give back**, reddō, ere, reddidī, redditum ; **give up**, dēdō, ere, dēdidī, dēditus ; **permittō**, ere, permisi, permissus ; **trādō**, ere, trādidī, trāditus.
glad, laetus, a, um.
go, eō, īre, iī, itum ; **proficiscor**, ī, profectus sum ; **go across or over**, trānseō, īre, trānsiī, trānsitus ; **go back**, redeō, redire, rediī, reditūrus ; **go forward**, p̄rocēdō, ere, p̄rocessī, p̄rocessum ; **go near**, accēdō, ere, accessī, accessūrus ; **go out**, exeō, exire, exiī, exitūrus ; **let go**, dimittō, ere, dimisi, dimissus ; **be going to**, *active periphrastic conjugation* (437).

god, deus, *ī, m.*
 goddess, dea, *ae, f.*
 good, bonus, *a, um.*
 graceful, gracilis, *e.*
 grain, frūmentum, *ī, n.*; supplies of
 grain, rēs frūmentāria, rei frūmen-
 tāriae, *f.*
 great, magnus, *a, um*; great many,
 complūrēs, *ia, plur.*; so great,
 tantus, *a, um.*
 greatness, magnitūdō, *inis, f.*
 Greece, Graecia, *ae, f.*
 Greek, Graecus, *ī, m.*
 ground, on the, humī.
 guard, praesidium, *ī, n.*
 guest, hospes, hospitis, *m.*

H

habit, cōsuētūdō, *inis, f.*
 hand, manus, *ūs, f.*
 Hannibal, Hannibal, *is, m.*
 happen, accidō, *ere, accidī, —.*
 harass, laccessō, *ere, laccessivī, laces-*
situs.
 harbor, portus, *ūs, m.*
 hard, difficilis, *e.*
 hardly, vix.
 harm, noceō, *ēre, nocuī, nocitū-*
rus, w. dat.
 hasten, mātūrō, *āre, āvī, ātum*; con-
 tendō, *ere, contendī, contentum.*
 haughty, superbus, *a, um.*
 have, habeō, *ēre, habuī, habitus*; *dat.*
of possession; have to, *passive peri-*
phrastic conjugation (438-9).
 he, is; hīc; ille; he who, is quī.
 head, caput, capitis, *n.*; be at the
 head of, praesum, praesse, praefuī,
 praefutūrus, *w. dat.*
 hear, audiō, *īre, audivī, auditus.*
 height, altitūdō, *inis, f.*

help, adsum, adesse, adfui, adfutūrus,
w. dat.
 help, auxilium, *ī, n.*; ūsus, *ūs, m.*
 Helvetians, Helvētī, ōrum, *plur.*
 her, hers, eius; suus, *a, um*; her
 (own), suus, *a, um.*
 herself, *see self.*
 high, altus, *a, um.*
 hill, collis, *is, m.*; up the hill, ad-
 versō colle.
 himself, *see self.*
 hindrance, impedimentum, *ī, n.*
 his, eius; huius; illius; suus, *a, um.*
 hither, hūc.
 hold, teneō, *ēre, tenuī, tentus*; hold
 back, retineō, *ēre, retinuī, retentus*;
 hold together, contineō, *ēre, con-*
tinuī, contentus; hold up, sustineō,
ēre, sustinuī, sustentus.
 home, domus, *ūs or ī, f.*; at home,
 domī.
 honor, pudor, ōris, *m.*
 hope, spērō, *āre, āvī, ātus.*
 hope, spēs, speī, *f.*
 horn, cornū, *ūs, n.*
 horse, equus, *ī, m.*
 horseman, eques, equitis, *m.*
 hostage, obses, obsidis, *m. and f.*
 hour, hōra, *ae, f.*
 house, domus, *ūs or ī, f.*
 however, autem; tamen.
 hundred, centum.
 hurl, iaciō, *ere, iēcī, iactus*; coniciō,
ere, coniecī, coniectus.
 hurry, contendō, *ere, contendī, con-*
tentum; mātūrō, *āre, āvī, ātum.*

I

I, ego, meī.
 Ides, Idūs, Iduum, *f. plur.*
 if, sī; if not, nisi.

impede, impediō, ire, impediū, impeditus.

in, *sign of abl.*; in, *w. abl.*; be in, insum, inesse, inful, infuturus.

incite, incitō, āre, āvī, ātus.

increase, augeō, ēre, auxī, auctus.

industry, diligentia, ae, *f.*

infamous, turpis, e.

infantry, peditēs, um, *m. plur.*

influence, grātia, ae, *f.*; auctoritās, ātis, *f.*; have most influence, plūrimum posse.

influence, permovere, ēre, permōvī, permōtus.

inform, certiōrem faciō, ere, fecī, factus.

inhabit, incolō, ere, incolū, —.

inhabitant, incola, ae, *m.*

injure, noceō, ēre, nocuī, nocitūrus, *w. dat.*; obsum, obesse, obful, obfutūrus, *w. dat.* [esse, *w. dat.*

intend, in animō habēre; in animō into, in, *w. acc.*

intrust, committō, ere, commīsī, commissus; permittō, ere, permīsī, permissus.

island, īnsula, ae, *f.*

it, is, ea, id.

Italy, Ītalia, ae, *f.*

its, eius; suus, a, um.

J

January, Iānuārius, ī, *m.*

javelin, pilum, ī, *n.*

join, iungō, ere, iūnxī, iūctus; join battle, proelium committō, ere, commīsī, commissus.

joint, artus, ūs, *m.*

journey, iter, itineris, *n.*

judgment, iūdicium, ī, *n.*

K

keen, ācer, ācris, ācre.

keep, servō, āre, āvī, ātus; keep (away) from, prohibeō, ēre, prohibuī, prohibitus.

kill, necō, āre, āvī, ātus; interficiō, ere, interfēcī, interfectus; occidō, ere, occidī, occisus.

kindness, grātia, ae, *f.*

king, rēx, rēgis, *m.*

know, sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus; intellegō, ere, intellēxī, intellēctus; *perf.* of cōgnōscō, ere, cōgnōvī, cōgnītus.

L

Labienus, Labiēnus, ī.

labor, labor, ōris, *m.*; opus, operis, *n.*

lack, inopia, ae, *f.*

lack, careō, ēre, caruī, caritūrus, *w. abl.*

lacking, be, dēsum, deesse, dēful, dēfutūrus, *w. dat.*

land, terra, ae, *f.*; native land, patria, ae, *f.*

large, magnus, a, um; amplus, a, um.

last, at, dēnique.

late at night, multā nocte; till late at night, ad multam noctem.

latter, hīc, haec, hoc.

law, lēx, lēgis, *f.*

lazy, piger, pigra, pigrum.

lead, dūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus; lead across or over, trādūcō, ere, trādūxī, trāductus; lead back, redūcō, ere, redūxī, reductus; lead out, ēdūcō, ere, ēdūxī, ēductus.

leader, dux, ducis, *m.*; prīnceps, prīncipis, *m.*

learn, intellegō, ere, intellēxī, intellēctus; discō, ere, didicī, —; learn of, cōgnōscō, ere, cōgnōvī, cōgnītus.

leave, *intrans.*, discēdō, ere, discessī, discessum; exeō, exīre, exiī, exitūrus.
trans., leave, leave behind, relinquō, ere, reliquī, relictus.

left, sinister, sinistra, sinistrum.

left (= remaining), reliquus, a, um; **nothing left**, nihil reliquī.

legion, legiō, ōnis, *f.*

lest, nē, *w. subjv.*

let, *sign of imper. or subjv.*; let go, dīmittō, ere, dīmīsī, dīmīssus.

letter (of alphabet), littera, ae, *f.*; (epistle), litterae, ārum, *f. plur.*

liberate, liberō, āre, āvī, ātus.

liberty, libertās, ātis, *f.*

lieutenant, lēgātus, ī, *m.*

life, vīta, ae, *f.*

lift up, tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātus.

light, lūx, lūcis, *f.*

like, similis, e.

like, amō, āre, āvī, ātus.

line of battle, aciēs, ēī, *f.*

little, parvus, a, um.

live, vivō, ere, vixī, —.

long, longus, a, um; *adv.*, diū.

lord, dominus, ī, *m.*

love, amō, āre, āvī, ātus.

low, humilis, e.

loyal, fidus, a, um.

M

mad, īnsānus, a, um.

make, faciō, ere, fēcī, factus.

man, vir, virī, *m.*; homō, hominis, *m.*
and f.; a man who, is quī.

manage, administrō, āre, āvī, ātus.

manhood, virtūs, ūtis, *f.*

many, *plural of* multus, a, um; **very many**, complūrēs, complūria.

march, iter, itineris, *n.*; **on the march**, ex itinere.

march, proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum; iter faciō, ere, fēcī, factus; contendō, ere, contendī, contentum.

Marcus, Mārcus, ī, *m.*

master, magister, magistrī, *m.*; dominus, ī, *m.*

may, *sign of wish*; utinam, *w. subjv.*

means of, by, *abl. of means*; per, *w. acc.*

mention, dēmōnstrō, āre, āvī, ātus.

merchant, mercātor, ōris, *m.*

Mercury, Mercurius, Mercurī, *m.*

messenger, nūntius, ī, *m.*

middle of, mediū, a, um.

milē, mille passūs; *plur.*, millia passuum.

mind, animus, ī, *m.*; mēns, mentis, *f.*;

have in mind, in animō habēre; in animō esse, *w. dat.*; **turn the mind to**, animadvertō, ere, animadvertī, animadversus.

mine, meus, a, um.

misfortune, cāsus, ūs, *m.*

money, pecūnia, ae, *f.*

month, mēnsis, is, *m.*

moon, lūna, ae, *f.*

more, plūs, plūris; *sign of comparative.*

moreover, autem (*postpositive*).

most, *sign of superlative.*

mountain, mōns, montis, *m.*

move, moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus.

much, multus, a, um; *adv.*, multum, multō.

multitude, multitūdō, inis, *f.*

must, *passive periphrastic conjugation, w. dat. of agent* (438–9).

my, meus, a, um.

myself, *see self.*

N

name, nōmen, nōminis, *n.*

name, appellō, āre, āvī, ātus.

narrow, angustus, a, um.
 nation, nātiō, ōnis, *f.*; gēns, gentis, *f.*
 native land, patria, ae, *f.*
 near, ad, apud, *w. acc.*; come near, go
 near, accēdō, ere, accessī, acces-
 nearest, proximus, a, um. [sūrus.
 need, be in need of, careō, ēre, caruī,
 caritūrus, *w. abl.*
 neighbor, finitimus, ī, *m.*
 neighboring, finitimus, a, um.
 neither, neuter, neutra, neutrum.
 neither . . . nor, neque . . . neque.
 never, numquam.
 nevertheless, tamen.
 new, novus, a, um.
 next, proximus, a, um; posterus,
 a, um.
 night, nox, noctis, *f.*; late at night,
 multā nocte.
 nineteen, ūndēvīgintī.
 no, nōn; no one, none, nūllus, a, um;
 nēmō, *dat.* nēmīnī.
 nor, neque.
 north wind, aquilō, ōnis, *m.*
 not, nōn; and not, but not, neque;
 not to, nē, *w. subjv.*; if not, nisi;
 that not, nē, *w. subjv.*
 nothing, nihil, *indecl.*
 notice, animadvertō, ere, animadvertī,
 animadversus.
 now, nunc, iam.
 number, numerus, ī, *m.*; multitudō,
 inis, *f.*

O

O that, utinam, *w. subjv.*
 obey, pāreō, ēre, pārū, —, *w. dat.*
 obtain, obtineō, ēre, obtinū, obtentus.
 occupy, occupō, āre, āvī, ātus.
 of, *sign of gen.*; dē, *w. abl.*
 often, saepe.
 old, vetus, veteris; senex, senis.

older, maior nātū.
 on, in, *w. abl.*
 one, ūnus, a, um; one who, is quī;
 one . . . another, alius . . . alius; the
 one . . . the other, alter . . . alter; to
 one another, inter sē.
 only, sōlus, a, um.
 opportunity, spatium, ī, *n.*
 oppose, resistō, ere, restitī, —, *w. dat.*
 order to, in, ut, *w. subjv.*
 order, iubeō, ēre, iussī, iussus; imperō,
 āre, āvī, ātum; mandō, āre, āvī,
 ātus.
 Orgetorix, Orgetorīx, īgis, *m.*
 other, alius, alia, aliud; (of two),
 -alter, a, um.
 ought, dēbeō, ēre, dēbuī, dēbitus;
 oportet, ēre, oportuit, *impers.*;
passive periphrastic conjugation
 (438-9).
 our, ours, noster, nostra, nostrum;
 our men, nostrī, ōrum, *m. plur.*
 ourselves, nōs, nostrum; ipsī, ae, a.
 out of, ē or ex, *w. abl.*
 over, in, *w. abl.*; trāns, *w. acc.*; be
 over, supersum, superesse, superfuī,
 superfutūrus, *w. dat.*
 overcome, superō, āre, āvī, ātus.
 overtake, cōsequor, cōsequī, cōn-
 secūtus sum.
 owe, dēbeō, ēre, dēbuī, dēbitus.

P

pace, passus, ūs, *m.*
 part, pars, partis, *f.*
 peace, pāx, pācis, *f.*
 pear tree, pirus, ī, *f.*
 people, populus, ī, *m.*
 perceive, intellegō, ere, intellēxī, in-
 tellēctus.
 perish, cadō, erē, cecidī, cāsūrus.

permit, permittō, ere, permīsi, permissum; concēdō, ere, concessī, concessum.

persuade, persuādeō, ēre, persuāsi, persuāsum, *w. dat.*

pitch (camp), pōnō, ere, posuī, positus.

place, locus, ī, *m.*; *plur.*, locī *or* loca; in that place, ibi; to this place, hūc.

place, pōnō, ere, posuī, positus; conlocō, āre, āvi, ātus; cōstituō, ere, cōstituī, cōstitutus.

plan, cōnsilium, ī, *n.*

plead (a cause), dicō, ere, dixī, dictus.

please, dēlectō, āre, āvi, ātus.

pleasing, grātus, a, um.

pledge, obses, obsidis, *m. or f.*

plow, arō, āre, āvi, ātus.

point out, dēmōnstrō, āre, āvi, ātus.

Pompey, Pompēius, ī, *m.*

poor, miser, misera, miserum.

possess, obtineō, ēre, obtinuī, obtentus.

possession, take possession of, occupō, āre, āvi, ātus; **get possession of**, potior, potiri, potitus sum, *w. abl.*

possible, the . . . -est possible, as . . . as possible, quam, *w. superl. of adj.*; as soon as possible, quam primum.

power, potestās, ātis, *f.*; imperium, ī, *n.*; vis, *acc.*, vim.

powerful, potēns, potentis; **be very powerful**, plūrimum posse.

praise, laudō, āre, āvi, ātus.

prefer, mālō, mälle, māluī, —.

prepare, parō, āre, āvi, ātus; **compare**, parō, āre, āvi, ātus.

present, be, adsum, adesse, adfui, adfuturus; intersum, interesse, interfui, interfuturus.

preserve, servō, āre, āvi, ātus.

pretty, pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum.

proceed, cōsequor, cōsequi, cōsecutus sum.

promise, polliceor, ēri, pollicitus sum.

proper, be, oportet, ēre, oportuit, *impers.*

protect, dēfendō, ere, dēfendi, dēfensus.

protection, praesidium, ī, *n.*; fidēs, eī, *f.*; **put one's self under the protection of**, in fidem venire, *w. dat.*

proud, superbus, a, um.

provide, parō, āre, āvi, ātus; **compare**, parō, āre, āvi, ātus.

province, prōvincia, ae, *f.*

provisions, commeātus, ūs, *m.*; rēs frumentāria, rei frumentāriae, *f.*

prudence, cōsilium, ī, *n.*

public, publicus, a, um.

punish, pūniō, ire, pūnivī, pūnitus.

punishment, poena, ae, *f.*

pupil, discipulus, ī, *m.*

purpose of, for the, ad, *w. acc. of gerundive.*

pursue, cōsequor, cōsequi, cōsecutus sum.

put to flight, in fugam dō.

Q

queen, rēgīna, ae, *f.*

quickly, celeriter.

quickness, celeritās, ātis, *f.*

R

race (= nation), gēns, gentis, *f.*

raise, tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātus.

rampart, vāllum, ī, *n.*
 rank, ōrdō, ōrdinis, *m.*
 ravage, vāstō, āre, āvī, ātus. [tum.
 reach, perveniō, īre, pervēnī, perven-
 rear, novissimum agmen, *n.*
 reason, causa, ae, *f.*
 receive, accipiō, ere, accēpī, accep-
 tus; recipiō, ere, recēpī, receptus.
 recognize, cōgnōscō, ere, cōgnōvī,
 cōgnitus.
 redoubt, castellum, ī, *n.*
 relief, subsidium, ī, *n.*
 remain, maneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsūm;
 remaneō, ēre, remānsī, remānsūrus.
 remaining, reliquus, a, um.
 remove, tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātus.
 render, reddō, ere, reddidī, redditus.
 reply, respondeō, ēre, respondī, re-
 spōnsus.
 report, nūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus; ēnūntiō,
 āre, āvī, ātus; renūntiō, āre, āvī,
 ātus.
 republic, rēs pūblica, reī pūblīcae, *f.*
 reputation, auctōritās, ātis, *f.*
 request, petō, ere, petivī *or* petīī,
 petitus.
 require, postulō, āre, āvī, ātus.
 resist, resistō, ere, restitī, —, *w. dat.*
 respect, vereor, ērī, veritus sum.
 respects, in all, omnibus rēbus.
 rest of, reliquus, a, um.
 restrain, contineō, ēre, continuī, con-
 tentus.
 retain, obtineō, ēre, obtinuī, obten-
 tus; retineō, ēre, retinuī, retentus.
 retreat, recipiō, ere, recēpī, receptus
 (*refl.*); pedem referō, referre, ret-
 tulī, relātus.
 return, *intr.*, redeō, redīre, redīī,
 reditūrus; revertor, revertī, re-
 vertī, reversus; *trans.* (= give

back), reddō, reddere, reddidī,
 redditus.
 reveal, ēnūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus.
 reward, praemium, ī, *n.*
 Rhine, Rhēnus, ī, *m.*
 Rhone, Rhodanus, ī, *m.*
 right, dexter, dext[e]ra, dext[e]rum.
 river, flūmen, flūminis, *n.*
 road, via, ae, *f.*; iter, itineris, *n.*
 rock, saxum, ī, *n.*
 Roman, Rōmānus, a, um; *as subst.*,
 Rōmānus, ī, *m.*
 Rome, Rōma, ae, *f.*
 rose, rosa, ae, *f.*
 rough, asper, aspera, asperum.
 rouse, incitō, āre, āvī, ātus.
 rout, pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsus.
 rule, regō, ere, rēxī, rēctus; im-
 perō, āre, āvī, ātum, *w. dat.*
 run away, fugiō, ere, fūgī, —.

S

safe, tūtus, a, um.
 sailor, nauta, ae, *m.*
 sake of, for the, causā, *w. gen.*; ut,
w. subjv.
 sally, ēruptiō, ōnis, *f.*
 same, idem, eadem, idem.
 save (= preserve), servō, āre, āvī,
 ātus; (= rescue), ēripiō, ere, ēri-
 puī, ēreptus. [*def.*
 say, dicō, ere, dixī, dictus; inquam,
 scare, terreō, ēre, terruī, territus.
 scout, explorātor, ōris, *m.*
 sea, mare, is, *n.*
 seat, sedile, is, *n.*
 second, secundus, a, um; for the
 second time, iterum.
 see, videō, ēre, vidī, vīsus.
 seek, petō, ere, petivī *or* petīī, petitus;
 quaerō, ere, quaesivī, quaesītus.

- seize, occupō, āre, āvī, ātus ; capiō, ere, cēpī, captus.
- select, dēligō, ere, dēlēgī, dēlēctus.
- self, himself, herself, itself, themselves, ipse, a, um (*intens.*) ; suī (*refl.*) ; myself, yourself, ourselves, ipse (*intens.*) ; *pers. pron.* (*refl.*).
- senate, senātus, ūs, *m.*
- send, mittō, ere, mīsi, missus ; send ahead, praemittō, ere, praemīsi, praemissus ; send off, dīmittō, ere, dīmīsi, dīmissus.
- Sequani, Sēquanī, ōrum, *m. plur.*
- set fire to, incendō, ere, incendi, incēsus.
- set out, proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum.
- set over, praeficiō, ere, praefēcī, praefectus, *w. acc. and dat.*
- seven, septem.
- seventy, septuāgintā.
- severely, graviter.
- sharp, ācer, ācris, ācre.
- she, ea ; illa.
- ship, nāvis, is, *f.*
- short, brevis, e.
- shout, clāmor, ōris, *m.*
- show, dēmōnstrō, āre, āvī, ātus.
- sick, aeger, aegra, aegrum.
- side, latus, lateris, *n.* ; from or on all sides, undique.
- sight, cōspectus, ūs, *m.*
- sign, sīgnum, ī, *n.*
- similar, similis, e.
- six, sex.
- size, magnitūdō, inis, *f.*
- skillful, perītus, a, um.
- slaughter, caedēs, is, *f.*
- slave, servus, ī, *m.*
- slay, occīdō, ere, occīdī, occīsus.
- slender, gracilis, e.
- slow, piger, pigra, pigrum.
- small, parvus, a, um.
- smooth, lēnis, e.
- snatch away, ēripiō, ere, ēripiū, ēreptus.
- so, ita ; tam (*w. adjs. and advs.*) ; so great, tantus, a, um ; and so, itaque ; so as not, nē, *w. subjv.*
- soldier, miles, militis, *m.*
- sole, sōlus, a, um.
- some (one), quis, quae (qua), quid (quod) ; aliquis, aliqua, aliquid (aliquod) ; some . . . others, alii . . . alii ; some in one direction, some in another, alii aliam in partem.
- son, filius, fili or filiī, *m.*
- son-in-law, gener, generī, *m.*
- soon, iam ; mox ; as soon as, quam primum.
- space, spatium, ī, *n.*
- speak, dicō, ere, dixī, dictus ; speak together, conloquor, conloquī, conlocūtus sum.
- spear, hasta, ae, *f.*
- speech, ōrātiō, ōnis, *f.*
- speed, celeritās, ātis, *f.*
- spirit, animus, ī, *m.*
- spoil, praeda, ae, *f.*
- stand before, praestō, praestāre, praestitī, —.
- star, stella, ae, *f.*
- state, civitās, ātis, *f.* ; rēs pūblica, reī pūblīcae, *f.*
- station, cōlocō, āre, āvī, ātus ; constitūō, ere, cōstitui, cōstitūtus.
- stay, maneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsūm.
- storm, oppugnō, āre, āvī, ātus ; take by storm, expugnō, āre, āvī, ātus.

story, *fābula*, *ae, f.*
 strange, *aliēnus*, *a, um.*
 street, *via*, *ae, f.*
 strength, *vis*, *vim, f.*
 strengthen, *alō*, *ere, aluī, alitus or altus.*
 strive, *contendō*, *ere, contendī, contentum.*
 strong, *validus*, *a, um.*
 struggle, *contendō*, *ere, contendī, contentum.*
 sturdy, *validus*, *a, um.*
 such, *tālis*, *e* ; *tantus*, *a, um.*
 suffer, *patior*, *patī, passus sum* ; *labōrō*, *āre, āvī, ātus.*
 suitable, *idōneus*, *a, um.*
 summer, *aestās*, *ātis, f.*
 summon, *convocō*, *āre, āvī, ātus.*
 supplies, *commeātus*, *ūs, m.* ; **supplies of grain**, *rēs frūmentāria, f.*
 supply, *cōpia*, *ae, f.*
 suppose, *existimō*, *āre, āvī, ātus* ; *arbitror*, *ārī, ātus sum.*
 surpass, *tr.*, *superō*, *āre, āvī, ātus* ; *intr.*, *praestō*, *praestāre, praestitī, —.*
 surrender, *dēditio*, *ōnis, f.*
 surrender, *trādō*, *trādere, trādidī, trāditus* ; *dēdō*, *dēdere, dēdidī, dēditus.*
 surround, *circumveniō*, *īre, circumvēnī, circumventus.*
 survive, *supersum*, *superesse, superfuī, superfutūrus.*
 sustain, *sustineō*, *ēre, sustinūī, sustentus.*
 swift, *vēlōx*, *vēlōcis.*
 swiftly, *celeriter.*
 sword, *gladius*, *ī, m.*

T

table, *mēnsa*, *ae, f.*
 take, *capiō*, *ere, cēpī, captus* ; **take**

away, *tollō*, *ere, sustulī, sublātus* ;
take by storm, *expugnō*, *āre, āvī, ātus* ; **take possession of**, *occupō*, *āre, āvī, ātus.*
 teacher, *magister*, *magistrī, m.*
 tell, *dīcō*, *ere, dīxī, dictus.*
 temple, *templum*, *ī, n.* ; *aedēs, aedis, f.*
 ten, *decem.*
 tender, *tener*, *tenera, tenerum.*
 territory, *finēs, finium, m. plur.*
 than, *quam* ; *abl. after comparative.*
 that, *demonstr.*, *is, ea, id* ; *ille, illa, illud* ; *rel.*, *quī, quae, quod.*
 that, in order that, so that, *ut, w. subjv.* ; *after verbs of fearing*, *nē, w. subjv.* ; **that not**, *nē, w. subjv.* ; **would that**, *utinam.*
 their (own), theirs, *suus*, *a, um* ; *eōrum, eārum.*
 themselves, *see self.*
 then, *tum.*
 thence, *inde.* [*lated.*]
 there, *ibi* ; *introductory, not therefore*, *itaque.*
 thereupon, *inde.*
 they, *ii, eae, ea* ; *illī, illae, illa.*
 thing, *rēs, reī, f.*
 think, *existimō*, *āre, āvī, ātus* ; *arbitror*, *ārī, ātus sum.*
 third, *tertius*, *a, um.*
 thirty, *trīgintā.*
 this, *hīc, haec, hoc.*
 thou, *tū.*
 thousand, *mille (indecl.)* ; *plur.*, *millia or milia.*
 three, *trēs, tria* ; **three hundred**, *trecentī, ae, a.*
 through, *per, w. acc.*
 throw, *iaciō*, *ere, iēcī, iactus* ; *coniciō*, *ere, coniecī, coniectus.*

thus, ita.

Tiber, Tiberis, is, *m.*

time, tempus, temporis, *n.*; spatium, *ī*, *n.*; for a long time, diū.

to, sign of *dat.*; ad, in, *w. acc.*; sign of *subjv. of purpose.*

to-day, hodiē.

top of, summus, a, um.

toward (s), ad, *w. acc.*

tower, turris, is, *f.*

town, oppidum, *ī*, *n.*

trader, mercātor, ōris, *m.*

Tralles, Trallēs, Trallium, *m. pl.*

transport, trāducō, ere, trādūxī, trāductus.

treat, agō, ere, ēgī, āctus.

trench, fossa, ae, *f.*

trial, iūdicium, *ī*, *n.*

tribe, gēns, gentis, *f.*

troops, cōpiae, ārum, *f. pl.*

trust, fidēs, eī, *f.*

[*w. dat.*

trust, crēdō, ere, crēdidī, crēditum,

try, cōnor, āri, ātus sum.

turn about, convertō, ere, convertī, conversus; **turn back**, revertor, revertī, revertī, reversus; **turn the mind to**, animadvertō, ere, animadvertī, animadversus.

twelve, duodecim.

twenty, vīginti.

two, duo, duae, duo.

U

ugly, turpis, e.

unfavorable, aliēnus, a, um.

unless, nisi.

unlike, dissimilis, e.

unwilling, be, nōlō, nōlle, nōlūi, —

upon, in, *w. acc. and abl.*

urge, cohortor, āri, ātus sum; **urge on**, incitō, āre, āvī, ātus.

use, ūsus, ūs, *m.*; **be of use to**, prōsum, prōdesse; prōfui, prōfutūrus, *w. dat.*

use, ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, *w. abl.*

V

van, primum agmen, primā agminis, *n.*

vassal, cliēns, clientis, *m.*

very, *adj. or adv. in superl.*; *intens.*, ipse, a, um.

view, cōspectus, ūs, *m.*

village, vicus, *ī*, *m.*

virtue, virtūs, ūtis, *f.*

W

wage, gerō, ere, gessī, gestus; **wage**

war upon, bellum inferō, inferre, intulī, inlātus, *w. dat.*

wait for, exspectō, āre, āvī, ātus.

wall, mūrus, *ī*, *m.*

walls, moenia, moenium, *n. pl.*

war, bellum, *ī*, *n.*

warn, moneō, ēre, monuī, monitus.

waste, lay, vāstō, āre, āvī, ātus.

watch, vigilia, ae, *f.*

way, via, ae, *f.*

we, nōs, nostrum.

weapon, tēlum, *ī*, *n.*; *plur.*, arma, ōrum, *n.*

wear out, cōficiō, ere, cōfēcī, cōfectus.

well, bene; **well known**, nōbilis, e.

what (*rel.*), quī, quae, quod; (*interrog.*), quis, quae, quid.

when, ubi, cum.

where, ubi.

which (*rel.*), quī, quae, quod; (*interrog.*), quis, quae, quid;

which of two, uter, utra, utrum.

white, albus, a, um.

who (<i>rel.</i>), qui, quae ; (<i>interrog.</i>), quis, quae.	withstand, sustineō, ēre, sustinui, sustentus.
whole, tōtus, a, um ; omnis, e.	woman, fēmina, ae, <i>f.</i> ; mulier, mulieris, <i>f.</i>
why, cūr.	wood (= forest), silva, ae, <i>f.</i>
wicked, malus, a, um.	work, labor, ōris, <i>f.</i> ; opus, operis, <i>n.</i>
wide, lātus, a, um.	work, labōrō, āre, āvi, ātūrus.
width, lātitudō, inis, <i>f.</i>	would that, utinam, <i>w. subjv.</i>
wild, ferus, a, um.	wound, vulnus, vulneris, <i>n.</i>
will, volō, velle, voluī, — ; will not, nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —.	wound, vulnerō, āre, āvi, ātus.
willing, be, volō, velle, voluī, — ; be more willing, mālō, mälle, māluī, —.	wretched, miser, misera, miserum.
wine, vīnum, ī, <i>n.</i>	write, scribō, ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus.
wing, cornū, ūs, <i>n.</i>	
winter, hiems, hiemis, <i>f.</i>	Y
winter quarters, hiberna, ōrum, <i>n. pl.</i>	year, annus, ī, <i>m.</i>
wisely, prūdenter.	yet, tamen.
wish, cupiō, ere, cupīvī, cupītus ; volō, velle, voluī, —.	you, tū, vōs.
with, <i>sign of abl.</i> ; cum, <i>w. abl.</i> ; apud, <i>w. acc.</i> [cessum.	young, iuvenis, is.
withdraw, discēdō, ere, discessī, dis-	your, yours, tuus, a, um ; vester, vestra, vestrum.
within, <i>sign of abl. of time.</i>	yourself, tū, vōs ; ipse.
without, sine, <i>w. abl.</i> ; be without, careō, ēre, caruī, caritūrus, <i>w. abl.</i>	Z
	zeal, studium, ī, <i>n.</i>

INDEX

(Numbers refer to Sections. References to matter contained in footnotes are given by citing the page and the number of the note: in such cases p. = page, n. = note. The only other abbreviation used, vs., = 'distinguished from.' The Index, it is expected, will be supplemented by the Table of Contents, pages 7-9.)

- ā** vs. **ab**, p. 70, n. 1.
- Ablative**, of agent, 141-142; absolute, 315-317; of cause, 117-118; of comparison, with and without **quam**, 259-260; of description, 302-303; of instrument, 93-94; with **in**, p. 24, n. 2; of manner, 147-148; of means, 93-94; of measure of difference, 266-267; of place whence, 236, *a*: 237; of separation, 210-211; of specification, 156-157; of time when, 130-131; with **ūtor**, **fruo**, **fungo**, **potior**, **vēscor**, 336-337.
- Ablative singular**, in **-ī**, in adjectives of third declension, 155, 1; in **-ī** and **-e**, in nouns of third declension, 122, 3.
- Accent**, general rules for, 20; of genitive singular of nouns in **-ius** and **-ium**, 74, 1; of vocative singular of nouns in **-ius** and of **filius**, 74, 2; of perfect forms in second conjugation, 106; of present passive of fourth conjugation, 215, 2.
- Accusative**, of direct object, 45: 46, 2; of duration of time and extent of space, 244-245; of limit of motion, 236, *a*: 237; as subject of infinitive, 184, 1; 329: 429-430; with **in**, p. 29, n. 2; with **ob** and **propter** to express cause, p. 71, n. 2.
- Accusative singular** in **-im**, in third declension, 122, 3.
- Active periphrastic conjugation**, 437: 529.
- Adjectives**, agreement of, see *Agreement*; comparison of, 256-257: 264-265; demonstrative, 201-202; interrogative, 216-217; possessive, 292-293: 296; position of, 32; predicate, general rule for, 32: 33-34; predicate, with complementary infinitive, 183, *c*: 184, 3; construed with dative, 162-163; denote only part of word modified, p. 133, n. 1; used as nouns, 203; with genitive singular in **-ius** and dative singular in **-ī**, 209.
- Adverbs**, formation of, 279; comparison of, 280.
- Agent**, expressed by **ā** or **ab** with the ablative, 141-142.
- Agreement**, of adjectives, general rules for, 32: 33-34: 63: 65; of possessive adjectives, 293; of predicate adjective, in general, 32: 33-34; of predicate adjective with complementary infinitive, 183, *c*: 184, 3; of appositive, 57-58; of participles, 152, 2; of relative pronoun, 196, *b*: 197; of verbs, in general, 45, 4: 46, 1; of person of verb in relative clause with that of antecedent, 288.
- aliquis**, 301, 4: 515.
- alius**, declension of, 209.

- Alphabet, 2-4.
- alter**, declension of, 209.
- Antecedent, defined, 196, *a-b*; determines person of the verb of the relative clause, 288.
- Apodosis, 413.
- Apposition, appositive, 57-58: p. 119, n. 1.
- Article, missing in Latin, p. 16, n. 2.
- Base, 25: 52, 2: 69, 2, 4: 112, 1, 3: 122, 2.
- bonus**, comparison of, 272.
- careō**, ablative with, 211.
- Cases, names of, 24. See also *Ablative, Accusative, Dative, Genitive, Locative, Vocative*.
- Cause, ablative of, 117-118; expressed by **ob** and **propter** with accusative, p. 71, n. 2; expressed by **cum** with the subjunctive, 386: 387, 2.
- Command, affirmative, expressed by imperative, 399; negative, expressed by **nōlī** or **nōlīte** with infinitive, 399.
- Comparative, with special signification 'too' or 'rather,' 268. See also *Comparison*.
- Comparison, of adjectives, 256-257: 264-265; of adverbs, 280; irregular, of adjectives, 272; ablative of, 259-260.
- Complex sentences, 349: 413; in indirect discourse, 427-430.
- Compound verbs, dative with, 393-394; dative and accusative with, 393.
- Concessive clauses, with **cum** and subjunctive, 386-387.
- Concord, see *Agreement*.
- Conditional sentences, 413-421.
- Conditions, general classification of, 414; contrary to fact, 416; future, 418-419; simple, 415; summarized, 420; expressed by ablative absolute, 315-316; expressed by participle, 421.
- Conjugation, 23: 26.
- Conjugations, the four, how distinguished, 85.
- Consonants, 2; pronunciation of, 7: 14.
- Contrary to fact conditions, 416; contrary to fact wishes, 423-424.
- cum**, preposition, with ablative, in expressions of manner, 147-148; appended to pronouns, 287.
- cum** clauses, especially with the subjunctive, 386-387.
- Dative, of indirect object, 57-58; of possession, with **sum**, 230-231; of service or purpose, 294-295; with adjectives, 162-163; with compound verbs, 393-394; with compound verbs, together with the accusative, 393; with verbs of special meaning, 342-343.
- Declension, 24.
- Degree of difference, expressed by ablative, 266-267.
- Demonstratives, 201-203; less used in Latin than in English, p. 155, n. 1: p. 186, n. 1.
- Deponent verbs, 333-335: 528; perfect passive participle of, active in meaning, 335.
- Description, ablative and genitive of, 302-303.
- Difference, degree of, expressed by the ablative, 266-267.
- Diphthongs, 4: 8: 17, 4.
- Direct object, see *Object*.
- Discourse, indirect, see *Indirect discourse*.
- dō**, quantity of vowel **a** in, p. 30, n. 1.
- domī**, 235, 2.
- domus**, 222, 2: 501.

- Duration of time, expressed by the accusative, 244-245.
- ē* vs. *ex*, p. 70, n. 1.
- Enclitics, 20, 4. See *-ne* and *-que*.
- Endings, case, 25: 112; personal, 43, 1: 87, 1: 92, 1: 106, 1: 139, 2-3: 146, 1: 173, 1: 348, 2.
- eō*, 234: 525.
- 'exceedingly,' expressed by the superlative degree, 268.
- Exhortation, subjunctive of, 399.
- Extent of space and time, expressed by the accusative, 244-245.
- extrēmus*, 'the end of,' p. 133, n. 1.
- Fearing, object clause after verb of, 384-385.
- ferō*, 527.
- fiō*, 526.
- fruur*, with ablative, 336-337.
- fungor*, with ablative, 337.
- Future conditions, 418-419.
- Future perfect tense, formation of, 98, 1: 99.
- Future wishes, 423-424.
- Gender, rules of, 27-28: 29: 128: 223.
- Genitive, general rule for use of, 38; of description, 302-303; partitive, 250-251; of the whole, 250-251.
- Gerund and gerundive, 404-406. See *Purpose*.
- hic*, 201: 203; vs. *ille*, 203; vs. *is*, 203; as demonstrative of the first person, 208, 1.
- 'his' and 'her' omitted, p. 27, n. 2.
- Historical present, p. 125, n. 3.
- Historical tenses, 372.
- Hopeless wishes, 423-424.
- humī*, 235, 2.
- i-* stems, of nouns, in third declension, 123; of adjectives, in third declension, 155, 1: 161, 3.
- idem*, 189.
- ille*, 202-203; vs. *hic*, 203; vs. *is*, 203; = 'that famous,' position of, 203.
- Imperative, use of, 399; shortened form of, in certain verbs (*dīc*, *dūc*, *fac*, *fer*), 398.
- Impersonal use of verbs, 432.
- imū*s, 'the bottom of,' p. 133, n. 1.
- in*, with the ablative, p. 24, n. 2: 235, 3: 237, 1; with the accusative, p. 29, n. 2: 237, 2.
- Indefinite pronouns, 300-301.
- Indicative active, table for formation of, 99.
- Indirect discourse, 327-330: 369-370; infinitive and subjunctive *in*, in complex sentences, 427-430.
- Indirect object, see *Object*.
- Infinitive, formation and meanings of, 322; general remarks on the use of, 183-184; as subject, 183, *c*: 184, 1; complementary, 183, *b*: 184, 2; in indirect discourse, 328-330: 429-430; subject of, in the accusative, 183, *c*: 184, 1; predicate adjective with complementary infinitive, 183, *c*: 184, 3; in substantive clause, 378.
- Inflection defined, 23.
- Instrument, ablative of, 93-94.
- Interrogative adjective and pronoun, 216-217.
- ipse*, 207; vs. *sē*, 286, 4.
- Irregular comparison of adjectives, 272.
- is*, declension of, 188; meanings of, 190-191; vs. *suus*, 293, 2: 286, 3; as antecedent of relative pronoun, 196, *c*.
- iste*, declension of, 208; used as the demonstrative of the second person, 208.
- Locative, 235: 237.

mālo, 362: 524.

Manner, expressed by ablative, or by the ablative with **cum**, 147-148. 'many great,' etc., = 'many and great,' etc., p. 34, n. 1: p. 62, n. 1. Means, ablative of, 93-94.

Measure of difference, expressed by the ablative, 266-267.

medius, 'the middle of,' p. 133, n. 1.

mille, 242: 243, 3.

Moods, 26, 1. See *Imperative, Indicative, Infinitive, Subjunctive*.

-ne, enclitic, 20, 4; in questions, 40.

nē, negative particle, not used with the imperative, 399; used with the subjunctive of exhortation, 399; used with the subjunctive of wish, 424.

Negative, with the subjunctive of exhortation, 399; with wishes, 424.

neuter, declension of, 209.

nōli or **nōlite**, with the infinitive in negative commands (prohibitions), 399.

nōlo, 362: 524.

Nominative, 34, 1; in predicate adjective with complementary infinitive, 183, c: 184, 3.

nōnne, in questions, 40, 2.

nūllus, declension of, 209.

Numbers, 26, 5.

Numerals, 241-243.

Object, direct, in the accusative, 45: 46, 2; indirect, in the dative, 57: 58, 2; indirect, with compound verbs, 393-394; direct and indirect both, with compound verbs, 393.

Object clauses, see *Substantive clauses*.

Omission, of subject, 45, 3-4; of the possessive adjectives, p. 27, n. 2.

Order of words, general rules for, 32: 82: p. 24, n. 3; position of adjectives, 32; position of the vocative, p. 27, n. 1.

Participles, agreement of, see *Agreement*; formation of, 307; tenses of, 309; uses of, 152: 308: 311: 421; of deponent verbs, 334; perfect, of deponent verbs, active in sense, 335; as protasis of conditional sentences, 311: 421.

Partitive genitive, 250-251.

Parts, principal, see *Principal parts*; how given in this book, p. 49, n. 1.

Parts of speech, 22.

Passive periphrastic conjugation, 438-439: 530.

Perfect tense, vs. imperfect tense, 92; endings of, 92, 1; formation of, 99.

Periphrastic conjugation, active, 437: 529; passive, 438-439: 530.

Person of verb, remarks on, 45; how indicated, 43.

Personal endings, see *Endings*.

Personal pronouns, 284-285; **cum** appended to, 287.

Persons, 26, 4.

Place whence, how expressed, 236: 237, 3.

Place where, how expressed, 235: 237, 1.

Place whither, how expressed, 236: 237, 2.

Pluperfect tense, formation of, 98, 1: 99.

plūs, declension of, 273.

Possession, dative of, with **sum**, 230-231.

Possessive adjectives, 292-293: 296; omitted, p. 27, n. 2.

Possessives omitted, p. 27, n. 2.

possum, 274: 522.

potior, with the ablative, 337.

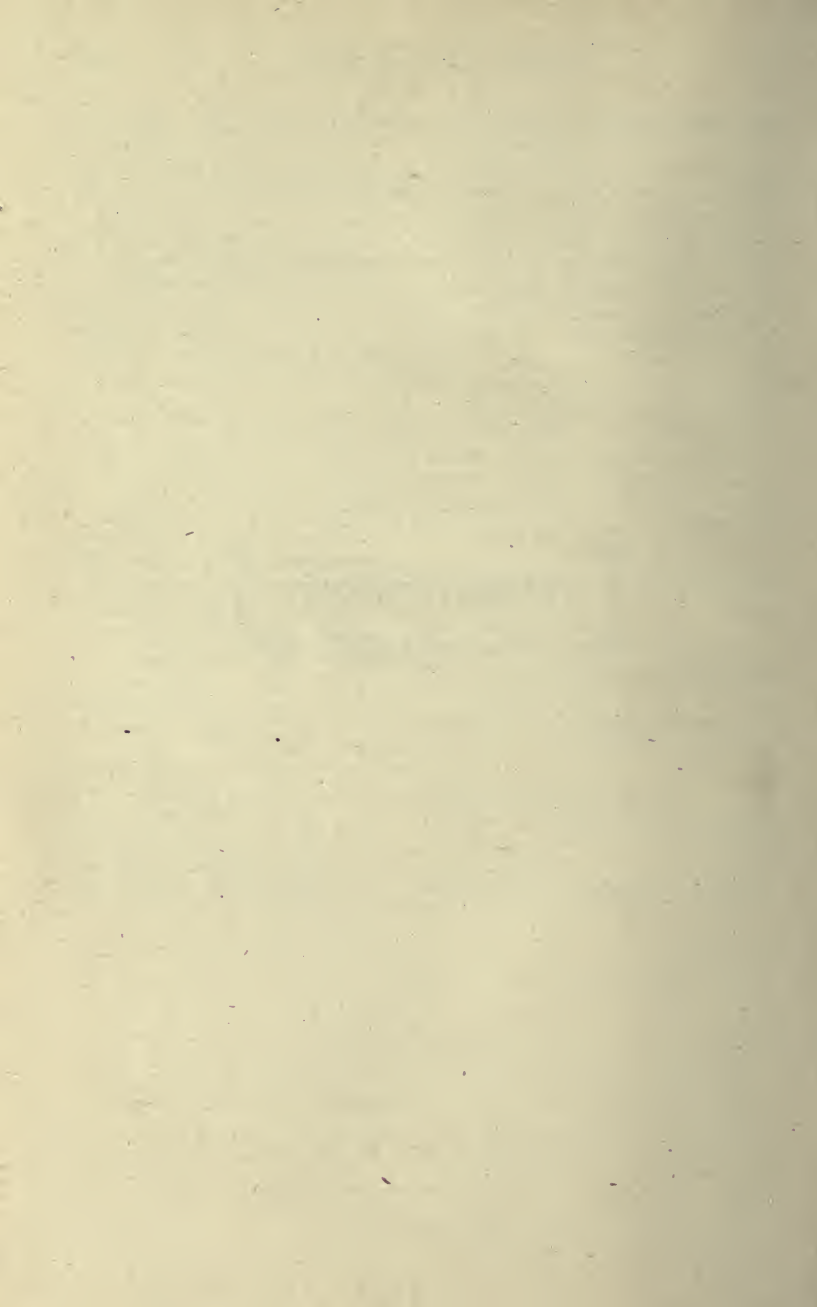
Predicate adjective, in general, 32-33: 34, 2; with complementary infinitive, 183, c: 184, 3.

Predicate agreement, of adjective and noun, 32-33: 34, 2; with complementary infinitive, 183, c: 184, 3.

- Primary tenses, 372.
- Principal parts of verbs, 86; how given in this book, p. 49, n. 1.
- Prohibitions, 399.
- Pronouns, demonstrative, 201-203; indefinite, 300-301; interrogative, 216-217; personal, 284-285; reflexive, 284: 286; relative, 195; agreement of, 196-197; in indirect discourse, 428; **cum** appended to, 287.
- Pronunciation, 5-8.
- prōsum**, 391: 523.
- Protasis, 413; expressed by ablative absolute, 315-317; expressed by participle, 311: 421.
- Purpose, expressed by **ad** with the accusative of the gerund or the gerundive, 406, 3; expressed by the dative, 294-295; expressed by the genitive of the gerund or the gerundive with **causā**, 406, 3; expressed by the subjunctive, 350-351; expressed by relative clauses in the subjunctive, 363-364; expressed by the supine, 433-435.
- quam**, 'than,' in expressions involving a comparative, 259-260.
- Quantity, general rules for, 16-19; in fifth declension, genitive singular, p. 122, n. 1.
- que**, position of, 20, 4: p. 80, n. 1.
- Questions, with **-ne** and **nōnne**, 40; indirect, in the subjunctive, 369-370; indirect, vs. indirect statements, 369.
- quī**, 195. See *Relative pronoun*.
- quidam**, 301, 5.
- quis**, interrogative, 216-217; indefinite, used especially with **sī**, **nisi**, **nē** and **num**, 301, 1.
- quisque** vs. **omnis**, 301, 2.
- 'rather,' expressed by the comparative degree, 268.
- Reflexive pronouns, 284: 286; **cum** appended to, 287; use of, in indirect discourse, p. 160, n. 1.
- Relative clauses of purpose, in the subjunctive, 363-364.
- Relative pronoun, declension of, 195; meanings and use of, 195-196; agreement of, 196-197; antecedent of, 196, *a*; antecedent of, often **is**, 196, *c*; **cum** appended to, 287; used at beginning of sentences or clauses where English uses the demonstrative, p. 155, n. 1: p. 186, n. 1.
- Result, expressed by subjunctive, 356-358.
- revertor**, forms of, p. 189, n. 1.
- rūrī**, 235, 2-
- sē** vs. **ipse**, 286, 4.
- Secondary tenses, 372.
- Separation, how expressed, 210-211.
- Sequence of tenses, 371-374.
- Service, dative of, 294-295.
- Simple conditions, 415.
- sōlus**, declension of, 209.
- Space, extent of, expressed by the accusative, 244-245.
- Specification, ablative of, 156-157.
- Speech, parts of, 22.
- Stem, defined, 25; of third declension, 111: 112, 1; of verb, 43: 86: 122, 2.
- Subject, normal case of, 33: 34, 1; of infinitive, in the accusative case, 184: 329: 429-430; may be omitted, 45, 3.
- Subjunctive, of exhortation, 399; in indirect discourse, in complex sentences, 427: 429-430; of purpose, in clauses with **ut** or **nē**, 350-351; of purpose, in relative clauses, 363-364; of result, 356-358; in wishes, 423-425.
- Subordinate clauses in indirect discourse, 427: 429-430.
- Substantive clauses, with infinitive, 378: 380; with the subjunctive,

- 378-380; with verbs of fearing, 384-385.
- suī, suus**, 286, 2, 3.
- sum**, 521; with dative of possession, 230-231.
- summus**, 'the top of,' p. 133, n. 1.
- Superlative, with special signification 'exceedingly' or 'very,' 268.
- Supine, 433-435.
- suus** vs. **is**, 293, 2.
- Syllables, 10-15; quantity of, 18-19; accent of, 20.
- Tenses, named, 26, 2; primary, 372; historical or secondary, 372; perfect vs. imperfect, 92; sequence of, 371-374; in subjunctive clauses of result, 357, *b*, *c*; in subjunctive clauses of purpose, 357, *b*, *c*.
- Time, extent of, expressed by the accusative, 244-245; clauses expressing, 386: 387, 1; time when, expressed by the ablative, 130-131.
- 'too,' expressed by the comparative degree, 268.
- tōtus**, declension of, 209.
- Translation, hints for, 136.
- ūllus**, declension of, 209.
- ūnus**, declension of, 209.
- uter**, declension of, 209.
- uterque**, declension of, 209.
- utinam**, in wishes, 424-425.
- ūtor**, ablative with, 336-337.
- Verbal noun vs. verbal adjective, 403.
See *Gerund*.
- Verbs, compound, construed with the dative, 393-394, or with dative and accusative, 393; conjugations of, 85; construed with the dative, 342-343; principal parts of, 86; principal parts of, how given in this book, p. 49, n. 1; stems of, 86; transitive, construction with, 46, 2; used impersonally, 432. See *Agreement*.
- 'very,' expressed by the superlative degree, 268.
- vēscor**, with the ablative, 337.
- vetus**, ablative singular of, in **-e**, p. 83, n. 1.
- Vocative, 24, 5: 69, 3; position of, p. 27, n. 1: p. 40, n. 1.
- Vocative singular, of nouns in **-ius** and of **filius**, 74, 2.
- Voices, 26, 3: 138.
- volō**, 524.
- Vowel, characteristic, of the four conjugations, 146, 2.
- Vowels, 3; pronunciation of, 5-6; quantity of, 16-17.
- Whole, genitive of, 250-251.
- Wishes, expressed by subjunctive, 423-425; negative in, 424; **utinam** in, 424-425.
- Words, order of, see *Order of words*.

ADVERTISEMENTS



PEARSON'S LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION

By HENRY CARR PEARSON, Horace Mann School,
Teachers College, New York.

Complete	
Part II, Based on Caesar	
Part III, Based on Cicero	

THIS book combines a thorough and systematic study of the essentials of Latin syntax with abundant practice in translating English into Latin; and affords constant practice in writing Latin at sight. It meets the most exacting college entrance requirements.

¶ Part I is a summary of the fundamental principles of Latin grammar and syntax, and contains clear, concise explanations of many points that are troublesome to the ordinary pupil. It is divided into graded lessons of convenient length, each lesson including English-Latin exercises for practice. References to all the leading grammars are also given.

¶ Part II contains short, disconnected English sentences and some continuous narrative based on Books I-IV of Caesar's Gallic War. Part III presents material for translation into Latin based upon Cicero. There are also exercises for general review preparatory to college entrance examinations.

¶ A valuable feature of the book is the Review Lessons, introduced at intervals. These contain lists of important words for vocabulary study, and together with the summaries of grammatical principles afford excellent material for review work and practice in sight translation. For purposes of emphasis and intensive study, typical Latin sentences, illustrating important grammatic usages, idioms, and phrases are placed at the head of each chapter based on Books I and II of Caesar and the first Catilinian oration of Cicero.

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

PEARSON'S GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION

By HENRY CARR PEARSON, Horace Mann School,
Teachers College, New York.

THIS book combines a thorough and systematic study of the essentials of Greek syntax with abundant practice in translating connected idiomatic English into Greek; and affords constant practice in writing Greek at sight.

¶ Part I contains, in graded lessons, the principal points of Greek syntax which require especial emphasis, the unusual and the non-essential being purposely omitted. These lessons are designed for use at the beginning of the second year's study of Greek, thereby serving as a partial review of the first year's work and as an introduction to the composition work in connection with the reading of Xenophon's Anabasis.

¶ Part II contains short, simple English sentences, based on Books I-IV of the Anabasis, designed to be used daily in connection with the reading of the text.

¶ Part III contains connected English prose, based on Books I-IV of the Anabasis. This is carefully graded, so that the student who performs faithfully the work outlined will be able to pass the entrance examination to any college.

¶ Review lessons are introduced at intervals, containing a list of the important words and an enumeration of the principal constructions used in the preceding sentences. These reviews enable the student to make definite preparation for sight work by giving him valuable practice in the off-hand use of words and principles of grammar.

¶ The book is provided with an English-Greek vocabulary and contains a selection of recent college entrance examination papers in Greek prose composition.

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

LATIN GRAMMARS

By ALBERT HARKNESS, Ph.D., LL.D., Professor
Emeritus in Brown University

Complete Latin Grammar,

Short Latin Grammar .

THESE text-books represent the latest advances in philological science, and embody the results of the author's large experience in teaching, and of his own linguistic studies, together with the suggestions and advice of eminent German specialists in the field of historical and comparative grammar.

¶¶ Throughout each volume the instruction has been adapted to present methods and present needs. A special effort has been made to develop the practical side of grammar, to make it as helpful as possible to the teacher in explaining the force of involved constructions in Latin authors, and to the learner in understanding and appreciating the thought in a complicated Latin sentence.

¶¶ The **COMPLETE LATIN GRAMMAR** is designed to meet the needs of Latin students in both schools and colleges. Simplicity and clearness of presentation, as well as of language, form leading characteristics of the work. Attention is directed particularly to the arrangement of material, and to the treatment of etymology, syntax, moods and tenses, subjunctive, indirect discourse, and hidden quantity.

¶¶ The **SHORT LATIN GRAMMAR** is intended for those who prefer to begin with a more elementary manual, or for those who do not contemplate a collegiate course. In its preparation the convenience and interest of the student have been carefully consulted. The paradigms, rules, and discussions have in general been introduced in the exact form and language of the Complete Latin Grammar, by which it may at any time be supplemented. The numbering of the sections in the two books is also alike.

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

FOR LANGUAGE STUDY

DECOURBEY'S FRENCH VERB BLANKS,

A simple device, containing forty-eight blanks, bound together in a single pad. Each primitive tense is grouped with the tenses derived from it, and both the French and the English names of the tenses are given. With the help of one of these blanks the average pupil can write out a verb in about five minutes.

McCOLLOM'S GERMAN VERB FORM .

These tabular forms, containing forty-eight blanks to the pad, simplify and systematize the study of the German verb by facilitating the change of a verb from one voice to the other, by enabling the pupil to grasp easily the substitutions for the passive voice, and by providing abundant material for drill.

INGLIS'S LATIN COMPOSITION EXERCISE BOOK

Gives a systematic training indispensable to a thorough comprehension of the language. Preceding the blanks on which the student is to write the exercises, are pages containing the symbols of correction, and a summary of the chief principles of grammar and syntax, accompanied by references to the standard Latin grammars.

REILEY'S PRACTICAL EXERCISES ON THE LATIN VERB

These blanks provide for the writing of over one hundred verbs and have been prepared to combine rapidity with thoroughness, to economize the time of both teacher and pupil, and to present the verb in such a way that its acquisition will be both easy and permanent.

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

A NEW CICERO

Edited by ALBERT HARKNESS, Ph.D., LL.D., Professor Emeritus in Brown University ; assisted by J. C. KIRTLAND, Jr., Professor in Phillips Exeter Academy ; and G. H. WILLIAMS, Professor in Kalamazoo College, late Instructor in Phillips Exeter Academy

Nine Oration Edition .

Six Oration Edition .

FOR convenience this edition of Cicero has been published in two forms. The larger edition includes the four orations against Catiline, the Manilian Law, Archias, Marcellus, Ligarius, and the Fourteenth Philippic. The smaller edition contains the first six of these orations, which are those required by the College Entrance Examination Board, and by the New York State Education Department.

¶ Before the text of each oration is a special introduction, which is intended to awaken the interest of the student by furnishing him with information in regard to the oration.

¶ The general introduction presents an outline of the life of Cicero, a brief history of Roman oratory, a chronological table of contemporaneous Roman history, a short account of the main divisions of the Roman people, the powers and the duties of magistrates, of the senate of the popular assemblies, and of the courts of justice.

¶ The notes give the student the key to all really difficult passages, and at the same time furnish him with such collateral information upon Roman manners and customs, upon Roman history and life, as will enable him to understand, appreciate, and enjoy these masterpieces of Roman oratory. The grammatical references are to all the standard Latin grammars.

¶ The vocabulary gives the primary meanings of words, with such other meanings as the student will need in translating the orations. Special attention is devoted to the important subject of etymology. There are many maps and illustrations.

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR

Edited by ALBERT HARKNESS, Ph.D., LL.D.,
Professor Emeritus in Brown University; assisted by
CHARLES H. FORBES, A.B., Professor of Latin
in Phillips Academy, Andover, Mass.

Complete Edition . . .

Four Book Edition . . .

THIS edition of Caesar's Commentaries is now issued in two forms. Besides the complete edition containing the entire seven books of the Gallic War, there is also an edition in which the first four books are published separately. As these four books of Caesar are those generally read by students in preparing for college, and constitute the minimum requirements of the College Entrance Examination Board, and of the New York State Education Department, this smaller volume satisfies the demands in many schools at less than the usual cost. Both editions present the necessary pedagogic apparatus, with parallel references to the standard Latin grammars.

¶ The introduction contains an outline of the life of Caesar, a description in brief of the scenes of his military operations in Gaul, Germany, and Britain, and a short treatise on the military system of the Romans, together with a list of valuable works on the subjects discussed in the introduction.

¶ In the notes, such difficult subjects as the subjunctive mood, and indirect discourse, have been treated with unusual clearness. In the earlier books frequent comparisons have been made between the direct and the indirect forms of discourse, and between kindred constructions. The notes to the Second Book are sufficiently full for students who begin with that book.

¶ The vocabulary gives special attention to etymology, but the treatment is made as simple as possible, with the sole aim of aiding the student in understanding and appreciating the significant elements of words. The illustrations constitute one of the most striking features of the work.

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY.

JANES'S SECOND YEAR LATIN FOR SIGHT READING

Edited by A. L. JANES, Instructor in Latin, Boys' High
School, Brooklyn

THIS book has been prepared to meet the Latin sight reading requirements of the College Entrance Examination Board, and is intended to follow the intensive reading of Books I and II of Caesar's Gallic War. All words which Professor Lodge in *The Vocabulary of High School Latin* has shown should be mastered by the end of the second year are printed in full-faced type in the text where they first occur. The footnotes include the meanings of the less usual words, unusual meanings of common words, hints on derivation and translation, and synonyms.

BARSS'S THIRD YEAR LATIN FOR SIGHT READING

Edited by J. EDMUND BARSS, Latin Master,
Hotchkiss School, Lakeville, Conn.

THE purpose of this work is identical with that of *Janes's Second Year Latin for Sight Reading*, which it is intended to follow. The treatment of vocabulary, idiom, and construction is therefore much the same as in the earlier volume, but since the pupil has now acquired the greater power of reading at sight, the assistance afforded in the way of footnotes and vocabulary is not quite so extensive. The book covers more than twice the amount specified by the requirements.

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

A TERM OF OVID

Edited by CLARENCE W. GLEASON, A.M.
(Harvard), of the Volkmann School, Boston

BY THE SAME AUTHOR

Greek Primer	
Greek Prose Composition for Schools	
Story of Cyrus	
Xenophon's Cyropaedia	

THE ten stories from the *Metamorphoses* included in this book are: Atalanta's Last Race; Pyramus and Thisbe; Apollo's Unrequited Love for Daphne; How Phaëton Drove his Father's Chariot; The Death of Orpheus; The Touch of Gold; Philemon and Baucis; The Impiety and Punishment of Niobe; The Flood; Perseus and Andromeda.

¶ There is a distinct advantage in using these selections from Ovid as a stepping-stone from Caesar to Virgil. Written in an entertaining manner, they not only make the student acquainted with the legends of the gods and heroes, but also lessen the greatest gap in a continuous Latin course by familiarizing him with the vocabulary of Virgil in easier verse. In the present volume are all but 300 of the words found in the first book of the *Aeneid*.

¶ The work contains about 1,420 lines of text, with full notes on the text and on scansion, and a vocabulary. The first hundred lines are divided into feet for scansion, with the accents and caesuras marked. The first three stories are accompanied by a parallel version in the order of ordinary Latin prose, with the quantities indicated. There are also synonyms of words not usual in prose, and of common words in extraordinary uses.

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

VIRGIL'S AENEID

Edited by HENRY S. FRIEZE, late Professor of Latin, University of Michigan. Revised by WALTER H. DENNISON, Professor of Latin, University of Michigan

First Six Books Complete
Complete Text Edition .

IN its present form this well-known work has been thoroughly revised and modernized. It is published in two volumes: one containing the first six books, the other the entire twelve books—an arrangement especially convenient for students who read more than the minimum College Entrance Requirements in Latin. Both volumes are printed on very thin opaque paper, thus making each an extraordinarily compact and usable book.

¶ The introduction has been enlarged by the addition of sections on the life and writings of Virgil, the plan of the Aeneid, the meter, manuscripts, editions, and helpful books of reference.

¶ The text has been corrected to conform to the readings that have become established, and the spellings are in accord with the evidence of inscriptions of the first century A.D. To meet the need of early assistance in reading the verse metrically, the long vowels in the first two books are fully indicated.

¶ The notes have been thoroughly revised, and largely added to. The old grammar references are corrected, and new ones added. The literary appreciation of the poet is increased by parallel quotations from English literature. The irregularities of scansion in each book are given with sufficient explanations.

¶ The vocabulary has been made as simple as possible, and includes only those words occurring in the Aeneid. The illustrations and maps, for the most part, are new and fresh, and have been selected with great care, with a view to assisting directly in the interpretation of the text.

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

BEGINNER'S GREEK BOOK

By ALLEN ROGERS BENNER, Professor of Greek, Phillips Academy, Andover, and HERBERT WEIR SMYTH, Ph.D., Eliot Professor of Greek Literature, Harvard University

THE use of this book should enable the average class to begin reading Xenophon's *Anabasis* without much difficulty before the end of the first year. Only the grammar, forms, and constructions needed in the first year of Greek are presented.

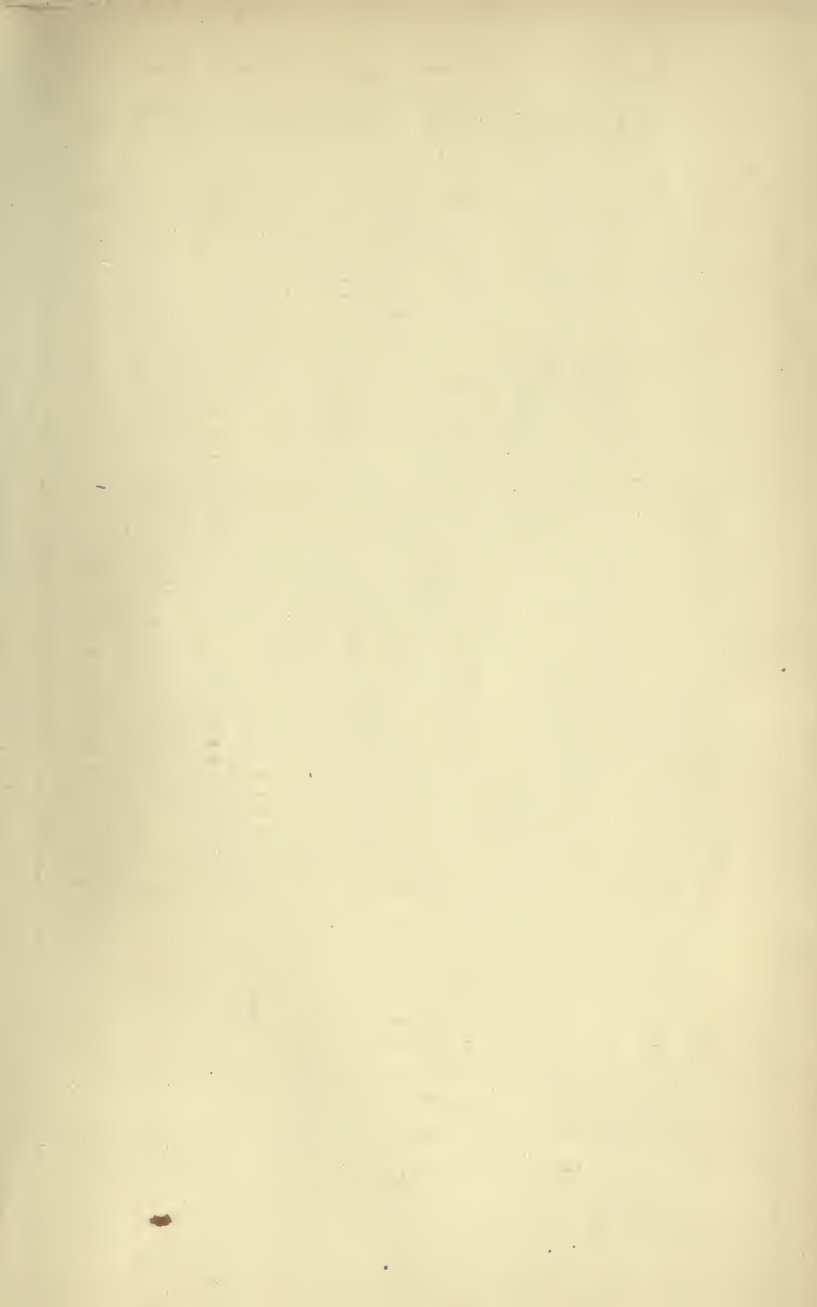
¶ The main part is divided into 60 lessons or chapters, each consisting of a number of grammatical principles, clearly illustrated by examples, a special vocabulary, and Greek-English and English-Greek exercises for translation. The vocabularies contain only such words as are used by Xenophon, with preference given to the commoner words of the *Anabasis*.

¶ Only the more significant paradigms and rules of syntax are emphasized. Thus the present, future, and aorist tenses of the verb are introduced early; but the perfect tenses are postponed to later lessons. Infinitives, even in indirect discourse, participles, and compound verbs have an early place. In the first 50 lessons the prefix of a compound verb is regularly separated from the verb proper by a hyphen.

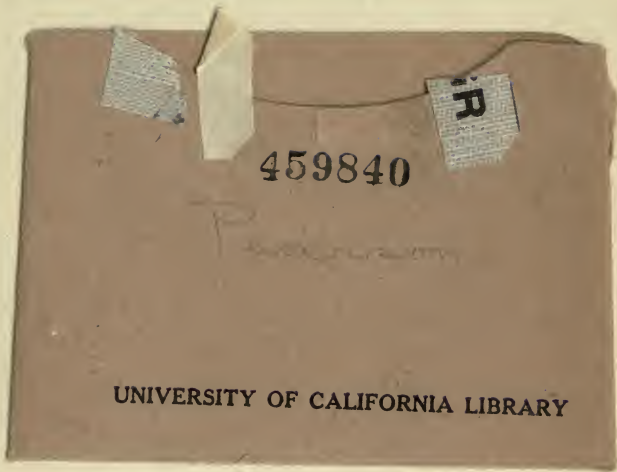
¶ The essential rules of syntax are enforced by repetition of examples in successive exercises. Paradigms of certain words that are unusual in the *Anabasis* are not given, if at the same time these words involve special difficulties. The dual number has been retained in the paradigms, although it may easily be disregarded, as it has not been used in the exercises.

¶ At the close of the book are a few simplified selections from the *Anabasis* which are designed for those students who are not ready to begin reading the original text, after completing the lessons. Summaries of forms and syntax, verb lists, vocabularies, and an index are included.

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY



YB 36257



459840

P. ...

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

